REPORT RESUMES

ED 010 346 48
A DICTIONARY OF SANGO.
BY- SAMARIN, WILLIAM J. TABER, CHARLES R.
HARTFORD SEMINARY FOUNDATION, CONN.
REPORT NUMBER NDEA-VI-327 PUB DATE JAN 65
CONTRACT OEC-4-14-003
EDRS PRICE MF-$0.54 HC-$14.48 362P.

DESCRIPTORS- *DICTIONAIRES, *SANGO, *REFERENCE BOOKS, *BASIC VOCABULARY, *LANGUAGE INSTRUCTION, HARTFORD, CONNECTICUT

THIS ENGLISH-SANGO DICTIONARY IS A COMPANION VOLUME TO "A GRAMMAR OF SANGO," ED 003 925. SANGO IS A TRADE LANGUAGE OF SUB-SAHARAN AFRICA AND IS A BRANCH OF THE NIGER-CONGO FAMILY. ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES OF SANGO TERMS ARE USED AND MANY NOTES ARE ADDED TO MAKE UNDERSTANDING CLEARER. (JC)

ED010396

U. S. DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH, EDUCATION AND WELFARE
Office of Education
This document has been reproduced exactly as received from the person or organization originating it. Points of view or opinions stated do not necessarily represent official Office of Education position or policy.

A DICTIONARY OF SANGO

Contract No. OE-4-14-003

Author: Charles R. Taber, M.A.

Project Director: William J. Samarin, Ph.D.

Hartford Seminary Foundation

Hartford, Connecticut

January, 1965

TABLE OF CONTENTS

INTRODUCTION iii

General Considerations iii

Purpose of the Dictionary iv

Sources v

Procedure in Compilation vii

Acknowledgements xiv

Symbolization xvi

Bibliography xviii

FRENCH LEXICAL SETS xxi

SANGO ENGLISH DICTIONARY 1

-A- 1

-B- 5

-B'- 23

-C- 24

-D- 31

-E- 40

-F- 43

-G- 51

-H- 66

-I- 73

-J- 75

-K- 76

-L- 99

-M- 110

-N- 129

-O- 148

-P- 150

-Q- 160

-R- 161
-S- 163
-T- 176
-U- 189
-V- 190
-W- 194
-Y- 199
-Z- 207
-C- 213
ENGLISH-SANGO DICTIONARY 215
-A- 215
-B- 225
-C- 235
-D- 246
-E- 252
-F- 256
-G- 263
-H- 268
-I- 273
-J- 276
-K- 277
-L- 278
-M- 283
-N- 289
-O- 291
-P- 294
-Q- 302
-R- 303
-S- 309
-T- 322
-U- 329
-V- 331
-W- 332
-X, Y- 337

INTRODUCTION

General considerations

This dictionary is intended to be a companion volume to the one entitled A Grammar of Sango,* which was written in 1963 by William J. Samarin. Since the Sango language and its use are described at some length in the Grammar (i-iii), nothing further will be said in this volume.

Prior to the compilation of the present dictionary, several bilingual or polylingual word lists and glossaries were in existence at various times, as the result of the efforts of administrators, such as Eboué, of Protestant missionaries, especially the Inter-Missions Language Committee, and of Catholic missionaries, notably Tisserant. But for several reasons none of these can be considered a fully satisfactory dictionary.

The oldest lexicographical effort available is that of Félix Eboué (1918) entitled Langues sango, banda, baya, mandjia. After a brief grammatical sketch and semantically-grouped word list for each language, and a section of parallel columns of "phrases usuelles," there are 48 pages of parallel columns of single words in French glossed in each of the other languages. The deficiencies of this approach from the point of view of lexicography are evident.

A much more voluminous list was compiled a number of years ago (but never published) by the Inter-Missions Language Committee. In the two parts, Sango-English and English-Sango, an effort was made to distinguish various senses of certain words, and in a few cases illustrative examples were given. But, apart from the practical disadvantage that this glossary was never made generally available, it suffered greatly from lack of rigor in selection and definition. Many terms are included which are used only in Protestant missions literature, but which are not in general use among native speakers of standard Sango. Many of these neologisms are either ad hoc creations by the missionaries or borrowings from various African languages, notably Yakoma and Ngbandi, which are related to Sango. Thus the lack of rigorous selectivity impaired the usefulness of this work. These remarks are based on the writer's memory, since no copy of the dictionary was available to him.

---

* Full bibliographical references for all works cited in the Introduction are given in the Bibliography at the end of the Introduction

By all odds the best existing list is that included in Tisserant's (1950) *Sango, langue véhiculaire de l'Oubangui-Chari*. This consists of 42 pages of Sango-French lists and 179 pages of French-Sango lists. Most words are defined by a gloss followed by an illustrative example. The orthography is fair, in that it provides for the most functional phonemic contrasts. The most serious flaw is the absence of any indication of tone. Contrasts for which the functional load is relatively small are ignored, such as that between /e/ and /ɛ/, /o/ and /ɔ/, and in some words /mb/ is transcribed /b/ initially. Double vowels are not noted, and the distinctions between /l/ and /r/ seem in places arbitrary, though this may be a matter of what informant was used. On the other hand, a non-existent distinction is created between /z/ and [ž], spelled j. Various adaptations are evident in the direction of conformity to standard French orthography: *ou* for /u/, *gu* for /g/ before *i* and *e*, double *s* between vowels, and so forth. But even in this work, the attestation is insufficient, different senses are not discriminated with enough care, and there are not nearly enough phrases defined.

It follows from above remarks that the present effort, preliminary though it is, is much needed.

Purpose of the dictionary

Since this work is being done under a contract with the United States Government, it is aimed primarily for use by speakers of English wishing to learn Sango. Consequently, both halves of the dictionary have been prepared with this audience in mind. Thus, Sango terms are glossed rather fully in the Sango-English half, illustrative examples are used freely, and a good many notes are added to make understanding and use clearer. It is assumed that the user, knowing English, will come to this part of the dictionary with the question, "What does this term, seen or heard in Sango, mean?" The English-Sango half, on the other hand, is intended to answer the correlative question, "How does one say X in Sango?" Here, the illustrative examples are given in English and glossed in Sango.

Thus, the speaker of English is consciously favored. But this by no means makes the dictionary useless to a speaker of Sango wishing to learn English. He can consult the Sango-English part to find out how to say in English what he knows in Sango, and the English-Sango part to find out the meaning of English words that he runs across. Thus, it is hoped that both speakers of English and speakers of Sango will find this work useful in their efforts at mutual understanding.

Sources

A dictionary can be no better than its sources. That is to say that the lexicographer is not an author nor an authority, not a legislator nor an innovator, but simply a compiler of what he finds in actual use among people who speak the language. If he consults the speech of persons who use a language well, he will at least have a basis on which to construct a sound dictionary. But if his sources are suspect, no amount of ability or diligent effort on his part can make a good dictionary. A lexicographer, since he is not an inventor, is at the mercy of the real experts: those individuals who, by the fact that they are accepted as such by their language community, give evidence that they speak the language correctly. It thus becomes a matter of paramount importance to establish a reliable corpus from which to work, by exercising informed discrimination. The sources of this dictionary are described in the following paragraphs.

The bulk of the corpus used for this dictionary is the same one which was described by Samarin (1963 p. iv-vii, xi-xiii) as constituting the basis of the grammar. Nothing further will be said here except to state that this corpus consisted of approximately 37,000 citation slips representing

490 Sango and 508 French terms taken from 63 texts by almost as many speakers.

This corpus was inadequate for our purposes in two different ways. First, a good many words were insufficiently attested in the file. That is, either there were only one or two slips, or the slips available did not furnish a sufficient basis for determining accurately the sense or senses of the word. Second, a number of other sources had to be consulted in an attempt to supplement the lexicon. The discussion which follows concerns especially Sango terms, since the French list presented its own problems which will be discussed in the next section.

The first effort was to listen carefully to a number of tapes which had not been included in the original corpus, culling citations to meet the two requirements outlined above. But the law of diminishing returns quickly made this endeavor inefficient. Very few new terms were discovered by this means.

Second, in the course of working through the material, either Dr. Samarin or I from time to time remembered words which we had heard previously, and listed them to be checked for currency and correctness. For the most part, these words were checked by mail with Mr. Nambozouina, who had worked with us on the grammar and had been given some instruction as to what was desired of him. A number of words were added in this way.

Third, Mr. Nambozouina, in addition to answering questions about words which were insufficiently attested in the corpus or which we submitted to him, furnished a fair number of words which were not previously in the file. These came in the course of conversation, or phonological or lexical checking while working on the grammar, or in the process of explaining words which were submitted to him, or especially in response to a list of basic French words which he was asked to gloss in Sango. In addition to making additions to the list, it must be said that Mr. Nambozouina's testimony helped to eliminate a number of words which were in the list but were found not to conform to current Sango usage. These included a number of nonce borrowings from various local languages.

Finally, a serious effort was made to sample the literature, both

Protestant and Catholic. A good number of pages of both kinds of written texts were read at random, and new words were listed. Time did not permit checking these with Mr. Nambozouina, but a spot check with two native speakers of Sango who were available, Mme Gallin and Mme Soni, produced results which on the whole must be considered negative. That is, in very few cases did they accept as standard Sango words submitted to them from these sources. In many cases they registered a complete lack of recognition, even though they are native speakers of Yakoma. This is not, of course, conclusive proof that these words are not valid. But at least it precluded their inclusion in the dictionary. Should a careful investigation on the field reveal that these words, or some of them, are currently used, they should of course be incorporated in any future revisions.

The points just mentioned underline the fact that it is ultimately not satisfactory to compile a dictionary away from the field. Especially on a short-term project such as this one, the amount of time consumed by an exchange of correspondence made it impractical to use the abilities of Mr. Nambozouina to the extent which had been hoped. At a great many points, a moment's spot check with a good informant or two would have answered questions which must here remain unanswered. It is of course illegitimate for me to attempt to answer them ex cathedra or on the basis of personal memory of usage previously heard. Only unimpeachable data from a native source would do. As a result, this dictionary is distinctly a preliminary effort. Every effort has been made to make accurate and reliable what has been included, but there are gaps which should be filled by further work.

Procedure in compilation

The procedure followed may be conveniently discussed under the rubrics of (a) selection, (b) determination of what was to constitute an entry, (c) discrimination of senses, (d) formulation of definitions, and (e) construction of the English-Sango section.

In making a selection of items to be included, the first step was to make a careful inventory of all the items which were available, whether from the corpus or one of the auxiliary sources mentioned above, Sango and French. All citations of every candidate word were included in a single alphabetical file, under a set of colored head slips which specified how many citations came from which source. As new citations of old words and new words turned up, they were included.

The next step was to make the actual selection of those intems which would ultimately be included. For Sango terms, all that was required was evidence that the term was in current use, and enough illustrative examples of the right kind to permit a determination of the meaning and range of usage. As was mentioned above, Mr. Nambozouina served as informant and arbiter in most cases, though in a few cases the help of Mme Gallin and Mme Soni was crucial. As a result, a certain number of terms were eliminated as not constituting good usage.

This procedure worked with a minimum of trouble for Sango words. But the selection of the French words which were to be included presented a much greater difficulty. In an effort to establish sound criteria of selection, a study was made of the statistical incidence of the French loan words in the corpus in relation to a number of variables: the kind of text involved, the nature of the topic under consideration, and the sex, age, religion, and degree of acculturation and bilingualism of the speaker (Taber 1964). As a result of this study, a number of approaches were successively tried and discarded.

First, it was tentatively decided to include all French words which appeared in four or more of the seven kinds of texts. Then there were added those words which appeared in any of the three kinds of texts (ethnographic, conversations, and fables) which had shown the lowest frequency of French words. Also to be included were the entire set of numerals (up to mille), days of the week, and months of the year. But the result appeared quite arbitrary: a number of words appeared which by no stretch of the imagination could be considered as currently in use, while a number of words which we knew to be in use were omitted. Thus, the purely random approach through statistical incidence was discarded.

Next, it was decided to put apart in separate lists all words which fitted into readily described semantic sets (the taxonomies of various sorts, numerals, days of the week, months of the year, tools, names of human occupations, etc.), and to include in the general listing only those terms which (a) appeared from the corpus to be in general use, and (b) could not fit into a neat category. But this in turn proved unsatisfactory, as a number of words which would have been relegated to the glossary were found to require, for cultural reasons, fairly extensive treatment.

The final decisions, which was adopted and is embodied in this dictionary, was a compromise between the two previously mentioned approaches. The following categories are included:

(a) All words appearing in four or more kinds of texts. This includes 9 nouns, 12 verbs, 4 adjunctives, and 9 connectives and particles.

(b) Of those additional words appearing in one or more of the ethnographic, conversation, or fable texts, the majority were included: 31 nouns out of 46, 13 verbs out of 16, 3 adjunctives out of 7, and 5 connectives and particles out of 7. The ones which were eliminated were either picked up in the special lists mentioned below, or dropped as not sufficiently current.

(c) Of additional words appearing in the corpus, those were included which in my judgment required, for cultural or other valid reasons, a more extended treatment than would be possible in a simple glossary. These included 83 nouns, 15 verbs, and 2 adjunctives.

There are, then, 123 nouns, 40 verbs, 9 adjunctives, and 14 connectives and particles which are included in the general listing, for a total of 186 items. Because in a few cases phrases are defined separately, the number of entries is slightly higher than this. In some of the complex entries, morphemes appear which are not separately defined, since they do not appear to be used alone. Such items are à coudre and à écrire, which are appended to machine, législative which appears in assemblée législative, d'identité which forms a phrase with carte as the head, and so forth.

In separate lists appear: numerals, days of the week, and months of the year. These are listed so as to permit giving a phonetic transcription of the way they are usually pronounced.

No other French words appear in any list. But for the benefit of the user of this dictionary, it will be said here that speakers of Sango use the appropriate French term, in approximately the French pronunciation, when they have occasion to refer to any activity or social, economic, political, or cultural domain which is basically of European origin: tools, instruments, occupations, modern medicine, education, government, and so forth. Many of the terms are quite generally known, while others are known only to bilinguals or to individuals who specialize in a given activity. It should be said that French words appear in illustrative examples and as glosses to English words in the English-Sango portion of the dictionary which are not entered in the Sango-English portion. It was judged that the way in which they are cited gives sufficient indication of their sense.

The compromise solution outlined above is in some senses arbitrary, but, especially in the absence of the possibility of a field investigation, it seemed pragmatically to work out better than any alternative.

In describing the procedure followed in determining what was to constitute an entry, two factors must be mentioned. First, once the selection had been completed, French terms were treated in every way exactly as were the Sango ones. That is, they were considered to be full-fledged members of the Sango lexicon. Second, since Sango has no morphological processes corresponding to the Indo-European ones of derivation and compounding (Samarin 1963 p. 127-8, 169), the next level above the morpheme is the phrase. Thus, the determination of what was to constitute an entry, beyond the simple basic list of morphemes, was simply a determination of which phrases could be said to function lexically as single items. Three criteria were applied: (1) phrases were required to have an invariable form with a constant meaning, (2) in general they were required to exhibit some semantic qualities which could not be deduced from a simple addition of their constituents, and (3) in some cases they exhibited a sort of ellipsis by the omission of an internal connective, as when kɔ́á li 'hair' appears without an expected tí between the nouns. As a result, a good many phrases have been defined as entries separate from their constituent morphemes. In cases where phrases customarily begin with a connective, the connective does not appear in the entry but is shown in the illustrative examples.

The orthography used for Sango terms is the phonemic one established by Samarin (1963). Where divergent pronunciations are known to us through the data, they are indicated immediately after the entry in phonetic transcription enclosed in square brackets [ ]. In a number of cases, terms are entered for which the meaning could be checked by correspondence but for which no phonological verification was possible. These are spelled as in the sources, though some symbols are normalized: ou becomes [u] or [w], etc. Such items are marked by a single following asterisk (*), as in gɛngi*. No attempt is made to mark tone, since the sources do not mark it. French entries are spelled in standard orthography, and followed by two asterisks (**), then by a phonetic transcription of pronunciations found in the corpus or from Mr. Nambozouina, the transcription being enclosed in square brackets [ ].

Alphabetization follows the system outlined below: (1) segmental phonemes and letters are assimilated, as between Sango and French items; (2) the order is a, b, c, d, e, ɛ, f, g, h, i, j, k, l, m, n, o, ɔ, p, q, r, s, t, u, v, w, y, z, č; (3) the symbols č and ʔ are used to represent the phonetic entities usually so symbolized, i.e. alveopalatal affricate and glottal stop, which appear only in ideophones; (4) all entries are alphabetized ignoring intervening spaces, so that *mɔa* comes between *mɔ* and *mɔ ɛkɛ*; (5) a nasalized vowel follows an oral vowel, segmentals being the same; (6) as a secondary criterion, high tone precedes low tone, all letters being equal, i.e. *mɛ́* precedes *mɛ* and *gondá* precedes *gonda*

The discrimination of the sense or senses of each word proceeded by a series of inductive approximations. The citation slips for the term under investigation were spread out on a table and sorted into as many piles as possible on an impressionistic basis of the shades of meaning displayed. Then the piles were combined, resorted, and recombined, until each pile could be said to exhibit a fairly uniform semantic content. In general, an effort was made to avoid over-discriminating, so that closely related senses are usually considered to be a single sense. Incidentally, it is not always easy, in the absence of either historical evidence or the reactions of native speakers, to determine which cases represented divergent meanings of a single term, and which ones represented homonyms. For example, are hú 'to breathe' and hú 'to spread, to prosper' the same verb with different meanings, or two different verbs? On the whole, the tendency was to split rather than to join, in the interest of clarity. As a result of this tendency to split and of the one mentioned above to avoid discrimination of senses, the number of words with many different senses under a single entry is relatively small.

In writing the definitions, each one was typed first on a colored slip or set of slips and entered into the file at the head of the appropriate examples. These definition slips were then put together to constitute the basis for the final manuscript of the dictionary.

A very important feature of the defining procedure was that words were grouped and defined at the same time as often as possible. Thus, sets of synonyms were compared and contrasted, and this study was used to find any valid basis for discrimination. An example of this was the set finóo, mawa, pási, pɔnɔ́, sáná, vundú, which covers in various ways the semantic field of suffering. A somewhat similar situation existed when there were sets which, while not strictly synonomous, shared a major semantic element, as for example bíríbiri, bière, duma, hárágé, ngbágo, samba, and vin, which are all alcoholic beverages. Likewise báságbó, béta, dengbe, kángá, lekpa, tágba, woga, and zaranga are all antelopes. In some cases, taxonomic sets could be treated together: terms of kinship, for example, as well as the terminology of political and administrative divisions. This study of groups of words led to a finer discrimination, and, through cross-references, to making the dictionary more useful for a study of the semantic structure of the language as well as of the structure of culture and society. In most cases, a fairly full description of the set is given under one particular term, and cross-references are included under the other members of the set.

The style of the definitions is deliberately flexible, though in most cases the form of a (theoretically) substitutable phrase is used. Where, in a few cases, a single word is adequate, it is given. Where a series of near synonyms better defines the range of usage of an entry, the definition takes this form. Where the required information would transcend the limits of a single manageable phrase, a first approach is made through a phrase, which is then followed by further phrases or even sentences. The definition proper is followed, in most cases, by illustrative sentences, glossed. Where both literal and free glosses seem to be required to make the example intelligible, both are included. It will be noted that in many instances, a simple verb is glossed in the past tense, even when no awe is present. This is in keeping with the finding (Samarin 1963 p. 156) that the unmarked verb often expresses completed action. The purpose of the examples is to show in what kinds of semantic, syntactic, and socio-cultural contexts the entry term is used. Caution should be exercised in using a term in a situation widely different from those shown in the examples. It should be noted that the indication "used only in ..." in a definition means that this limitation holds true in the corpus and/or in the explanations and illustrations furnished by Mr. Nambozouina. No personal judgment is involved.

Following the examples, in a number of instances, is further information. In some cases, as was mentioned above, an entire set is discussed at some length under a representative term. In other cases, notes are added to situate the word culturally or otherwise. This is most often done when the term under study is of great cultural importance, especially when the simple denotation given in the definition proper would not reveal its importance. In a few instances, notably in the discussion of kinship under famille, these notes become brief ethnographic essays in an encyclopaedic style.

Finally come the cross-references pointing either to synonyms or to related words under which further pertinent information is given.

A rigorous attempt was made to exclude all subjective or normative judgments. The definitions were required to arise out of the usage actually found on the slips, which represented ordinary speech.

No status labels of any sort are used in this dictionary. Since Sango is a pidginized language in a somewhat unstable state, (though this judgment must be interpreted with caution), and a lingua franca lacking the cultural and social connotations present in more developed languages, it is at present impossible to make valid statements such as are found in dictionaries of larger languages: colloquial, substandard, local dialect, etc. Such judgments as are expressed by the speakers themselves are inconsistent and often contradictory.

In some cases, e.g. connectives and pronouns, reference is made to the *Grammar of Sango*, where more information is given than could be summarized in a dictionary. The form of the references is (*Grammar* p. 135).

Simultaneously with the writing of the definitions, a further step was taken: English-Sango index slips were made, using as head words the English glosses of the Sango words, to serve as the basis for the English-Sango half of the dictionary. After this process was completed, Eaton's *English-French-German-Spanish Word Frequency Dictionary* and Roget's *Thesaurus* were consulted so as to ensure both that all pertinent semantic categories were adequately represented and that the words which a speaker of English would be likely to look for were entered with at least a cross-reference. In the English-Sango portion, the information is more condensed. As much as possible, duplications are avoided by an extensive use of cross-references. Persons wishing to find more information may look under the appropriate Sango terms which are used to gloss English entries.

During the entire period of writing definitions, much experimenting was done to find out what would be the best format. Several pages were done in each of a number of formats, until the present one was developed.

Acknowledgements

This dictionary was made possible by a grant (No. OE-4-14-003) from the United States Department of Health, Education, and Welfare, through its Bureau of Educational Assistance Programs, by the authority of Title VI, Section 602, Public Law 85-864 (otherwise known as the National Defense Education Act). But many others contributed in various ways to the successful completion of the project, and it is a pleasure to make the following acknowledgements.

First, appreciation is due to the Hartford Seminary Foundation, which provided office space, furniture and other equipment, and which also administered the funds. The constant close cooperation of the administration of the school was of valuable assistance throughout the duration of the project.

All those groups, organizations, and individuals who were mentioned in the grammar likewise contributed materially to the completion of the dictionary: those who provided funds and hospitality for Dr. Samarin in his field trip in 1962, when the corpus was collected, not only made the grammar possible, but also the present work. The ladies of the Bethel Baptist Church of Hartford underlined the 37,000 slips which were used for the dictionary as well as those used for the grammar, at a cost of much time and effort.

Dr. H. A. Gleason, Jr., both in a seminar on lexicography and in many casual conversations, provided many valuable ideas and tips which find expression in the form of this dictionary. To Dr. Martin Joos I owe the valuable suggestion concerning the use of Eaton's polylingual Word Frequency Dictionary and the Roget's Thesaurus for checking the coverage of the English-Sango section, as well as several useful procedural ideas. Thanks are also especially due to Mme Gallin-Douathe, wife of the Ambassador from the Central African Republic to the United States and the United Nations, and Mme Agnès Soni, niece of the Ambassador, who generously took time to answer questions about a number of terms and who contributed a number of their own.

Mr. Simon-Pierre Nambozouina, in spite of the great handicap of distance, made an absolutely invaluable contribution: it was he who, before his return to the Central African Republic and later by correspondence, responded

to my innumerable questions about meaning, usage, and so forth. He contributed many terms, explained many, gave illustrative examples where these were lacking, rejected some words, and otherwise served effectively as the sensitive and discriminating informant without which nothing of value could have been done.

Finally, special appreciation is due to Dr. William J. Samarin. His contribution as Principal Investigator in the project was much more than a nominal one. Out of his linguistic competence and personal knowledge of Sango, he generously gave many hours to discussions in which ideas were developed and procedures clarified. He ransacked his own files for information which was incorporated into the file. His constant alertness to new information, espedially in the contacts with Mme Gallin and Mme Soni, was invaluable. It was indeed a privilege and a pleasure to work under his direction.

Symbolization

In addition to the orthographies and transcriptions which have already been mentioned (p. xi), the following expressions and symbols are used throughout the dictionary:

Abbreviations:

Adj : an adjective (English)
Adv : an adverb (English)
An : an adjunctive usually used to modify a noun (Sango)
Au : a universal adjunctive (Samarin 1963 p. 62)
Av : an adjunctive usually used to modify a verb (Sango)
C : a connective (Sango), a conjunction (English)
CP : a connective phrase (Sango)
esp. : especially
I : an interjection
lit. : literally
N : a noun
opp. : opposite, opposite of
P : pronoun

Prep : a preposition (English)

SP : a sentence particle (Sango)

Syn. : synonym, synononous with

V : a verb

Symbols:

* : preceding a form, means that this is a hypothetical, artificial, or non-existent form

* : following a form, means that the phonology has not been checked with an informant

** : following a form, means that it is French

[ ] : enclose phonetic transcriptions

{ } : enclose illustrative examples

( ) : in definitions, enclose parenthetical explanatory matter

( ) : in forms or examples, enclose optional elements

... : between parts of a complex form, indicates the possibility of other elements intervening in a sentence

: : separates explanation and gloss in a definition, and illustration and gloss in an example (within braces)

- : separates the various phrases, clauses, and parts of a definition

Numerals : with a period immediately following, mark the separate senses of an entry

without a period, immediately after a cross-reference, mark which reference and sense is meant when there is possibility of confusion

Underline : marks the specific form of the entry referred to; also used to mark Latin scientific nomenclature

" " : indicate an analogic reference to familiar grammatical categories (i.e. Indo-European) which are not to be pressed in Sango grammar

/ : between forms, e.g. ti/ni indicates alternation of the forms

Bibliography

Note : In addition to the Bible books cited, many more have been translated by the Inter-Missions Language Committee. These are the books actually sampled, as mentioned in the discussion of selection (p.).

Diocèse de Bangui. Missel : Messes - Prières - Bia ti Nzapa, Issy-les-Moulineaux, Imprimerie Saint-Paul, 1957

Eaton, Helen S. An English-French-German-Spanish Word Frequency Dictionary, New York, Dover Books, 1940

Eboué, A. F. Langues sango, banda, baya, mandjia, Paris, Emile Larose, Librairie-Editeur, 1918

Mawson, C. O. Sylvester and Katharine Aldrich Whiting. Roget's Pocket Thesaurus, New York, Pocket Books, Inc., 1946

Mbeti ti Esaie, tr. by Inter-Missions Language Committee, experimental mimeographed edition, n.d.

Murdock, George P. et al. Outline of Cultural Materials, 4th ed. revised, New Haven, Human Relations Area Files, 1961

Samarin, William J. "The Vocabulary of Sango," Word, Vol. XVII, 1961, pp. 16-22.

________. "Une lingua franca centrafricaine," Colloque sur le multilinguisme, Brazzaville, Commission de Coopération Technique en Afrique, 1962, pp. 257-65

________. A Grammar of Sango, Hartford Seminary Foundation (in pursuance to a contract with the United States Office of Education), 1963

________. "Self-annulling Prestige Factors among Speakers of a Creole Language," unpublished paper delivered at the Conference on Sociolinguistics, University of California at Los Angeles, May 11-13, 1964

Seligman, Brenda Z. (ed.). Notes and Queries on Anthropology, sixth ed. revised and rewritten by a Committee of the Royal Anthropological Institute of Great Britain and Ireland, London, 1951

Taber, Charles R. *French Loan Words in Sango : a Statistical Analysis of Incidence*, Hartford, to appear in the Hartford Series in Linguistics

Testament ti Fini, tr. by missionaries of the Baptist Mid-Missions, London, British and Foreign Bible Society, 1951

Tisserant, P. Ch. *Catalogue de la flore de l'Oubangui-Chari*, Toulouse, Imprimerie P. Julia, 1950

________. *Sango : langue véhiculaire de l'Oubangui-Chari*, Issy-les-Moulineaux, Les Presses Missionnaires, 1950

PRECEDING PAGE BLANK-NOT FILMED

FRENCH LEXICAL SETS

Numerals

un, une [ɛ̨́, ɛ̨, ín, in-]
deux [dé, dez-]
trois [trwáa, turuwá, trwaz-]
quatre [kátre, kátere, katr-]
cinq [sɛ́ŋke, sɛ̨́kɛ, sɛ̨k-]
six [síis, siz-]
sept [sɛ́ɛt, sɛ́te, sɛ́ti, sɛt-]
huit [wíte, wit-]
neuf [nö́fu, nɛ́fu, nɛƀ-]
dix [díis, diz-]
onze [ɔ̨́ɔ̨z, ɔ̨́ze, ɔ̨z-]
douze [dúze, duz-]
treize [trɛ́ze, trɛ́zi, trɛz-]
quatorze [katɔ́rze]
quinze [kɛ̨́ze]
seize [sɛ́ze]
vingt [vɛ̨́ɛ̨, vɛ̨t-, vɛ̨]
trente [trą́te, tránte]
quarante [karą́te, karánte]
cinquante [sɛ̨ką́te, sɛŋkánte]
soixante [swasą́te, swasánte]
cent [są́ą, są, sąt-]
mille, mil [míil, míle]

Days of the Week

lundi [lɛ̨díi]
mardi [mardíi]
mercredi [mɛrkrɛdíi, mɛrkredíi]
jeudi [zedíi]
vendredi [vądredíi, vandredíi]
samedi [samedíi]
dimanche [dimą́ąs, dimási]

Months of the Year

janvier [ząvyée]
février [fevriyée]
mars [márse]
avril [avríil]
mai [mɛ́, mé]
juin [zwɛ̨́ɛ̨, zwɛ̨́ɛ̨, zwɛ̨́]
juillet [zwiyée, zwiyée]
août [úte]
septembre [sɛptámbre]
octobre [ɔktɔ́bre]
novembre [nɔvámbre]
décembre [desámbre]

In speaking Sango, French terms are constantly introduced with approximately the French pronunciation for such denotata as: tools, instruments, and machines; occupations; fruits and vegetables; and any kind of technical terminology whatsoever.

- A -

accident** [aksidą́ą] N : an accident, especially one resulting from work or a mishap with a vehicle

adorónu N : a coarse, impure rock salt consisting in part of sodium chloride and sodium carbonate, mined in the Sahara and imported into the Central African Republic by Muslim traders from the Chad {adorónu aɛkɛ mbéní yíngɔ́ só alíngbi tí wɔ́kɔ yí fadé, mais alíngbi tí tɔ́ na kása mais yąma pɛpɛ : adorónu is a kind of salt which softens things fast, and can be used in cooking vegetables but not meat} - see *yíngɔ́*, which is the general term for salt

ádu ní, ádu títɛnɛ C : correlated with *ka*, and introducing the protasis of a condition contrary to fact : if {ádu ní ála, ka í língbi títɛnɛ í báa finóo míngi : if it were just them, then we would be able to say we had experienced much suffering} {ádu títɛnɛ, wále tí mbi aɛkɛ na kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́, ka mbi na lo í causer : if my wife were at home, then she and I would chat} - probably based on *du* V 2 - see also *tongana*

aider** [edée] V : to render assistance, especially of a physical or material nature, to help {mbi dutí na hôpital, mais mbéní famille ade aaider mbi pɛpɛ : I was in the hospital, but no member of the family has yet given me help}

ála P : 1. third person plural pronoun : they, them, their, theirs {ála dutí na tɛ́rɛ́ tí da : they sat beside the house} {mbi húnda na ála : I asked them} {da tí ála : their house} {só tí ála : that is theirs} - see *mbi* for the pronoun system (*Grammar* p. 135-138)

2. second person plural pronoun : you, your, yours {ála gá o : you all come on} {mbi ɛkɛ éré ála : I'm calling you all} {éré tí ála : your names} {só tí ála : this is yours} - Protestant literature uses *í*, Catholic literature used *é - see *mbi* for the pronoun system

allez** [alé] I : interjection expressing suddenness, rapid succession, or resolution {allez í ngbá tí continuer : well then, we still continue} {lo sí gígí, allez, lo gá pendere wále awe : she came out, and suddenly she had become a beautiful woman}

andáa [andáa, kandáa] C : 1. really, in reality, in effect, as a matter of fact {lo báa tongana yąma aɛkɛ da, andáa yąma aɛkɛ pɛpɛ : he looks to see if there is any meat in it, but as a matter of fact there is no meat} {andáa mɔ ɛkɛ tongasó ? : so you are really like that?} {mɔ kę títɛnɛ ála súru li tí mabɔ́kɔ tí mɔ, andáa mɔ yí títɛnɛ kɔ́á agá amú mɔ : if you refuse to let them vaccinate your shoulder, you are in reality saying that death can come and get you}
2. it turns out that {depuis só, andáa, oignon abe awe : in the meantime, it turns out that the onions have browned} - (Grammar p. 66)

ánde Av : later, at some future time - used with or without fadé before the verb {aɛkɛ mú ánde mérɛngɛ́ tí kɔ́li bale otá : later they'll take thirty boys} {fadé lo mú na mbi ánde : he'll give it to me at some future time} - distinguished from fadé in lacking the element of speed

ándo Av : formerly, a while ago, recently {mbi tɛnɛ ándo na mɔ, wále tí mbi aɛkɛ na hôpital : I told you a while ago that my wife is in the hospital} {ála sára ándo sioní yí míngi : formerly, they used to do very bad things} - distinguished from giriri and kózo ní in not being used pre-clausally - giriri is a more remote past, and kózo ní introduces an element of order or sequence

áni P : in the usage of Protestant missions and some persons who learned Sango from the Protestant missions, the first person plural pronoun : we, us, our, ours {áni bóngbi tí dó lengé : we gathered to dance the lengé} {Nzapá amú na áni : God gave (it) to us} {kótará tí áni : our ancestors} {Tí áni awe : ours is finished} - í is in more general use - see mbi for the pronoun system - (Grammar p. 135-138) apprenti** [aprątíi] N : an apprentice learning a European trade - esp. a truck driver's flunky, also called bátá kóngbá

arabe** [aráab, arábu] N : 1. an Arab - most often, a Muslim from the Chad who, though a Negro, considers himself an Arab - Chad Muslims are usually businessmen, especially importers or transporters
2. the Arabic language

arrêter** [aratée] V : 1. to cease, to desist, to stop {lo arrêter lo : he stopped him} {mbi arrêter : I stopped} - when an action is specified which is stopped, zía is used
2. to arrest {tongana zo aɛkɛ nzí na bí, mbi arrêter lo : when someone steals at night, I arrest him} - when the subject of the verb is a noun, so that the subject marker a- would be required, the initial vowel of this verb is assimilated to the subject marker - in other words, there is no overt difference between the verb with or without the subject marker in some cases, while in others the verb without the subject marker appears without any initial vowel

ása V : to dig shallowly, to scratch with the hands {mbi ása li tí mbi : I scratched my head} {lo aśa dú tí lú kása : he dug the hole (with his hands) to plant vegetables} - kɔtɔ is used only of scratching, kpaka means to scrape, and zí implies a much deeper penetration and the use of an implement

assemblée, assemblée législative** [asąblée lezislatíiv] N : the national legislature elected by universal adult suffrage - a member is called député - see république for the administrative organization of the country

áta N : 1. a grandmother on either side - tará 1 is a syn. - see famille for the kinship system
2. a grandchild, usually female - see famille for the kinship system
3. a term of affection used mutually by a young person and an older woman {gá, áta, kpaka tɛ́rɛ́ tí mbi : come, child, scrape my body} {áta, mɔ yí mbi sára yę ? : grandmother, what do you want me to do?}
syn. tará 2

attention [tąsyǫ̂ǫ] I : watch out, take care! {attention mɔ zía mbéní vin da pɛpɛ : take care not to put in any more wine}

attention** N : care, attention - used only in sára attention

aú N : 1. uncle, esp. one's mother's brother - syn. kɔ́ya 1 - see famille for the kinship system
2. used as a term of respect in addressing a mature man {aú, mú na mbi mbo tí mbi : uncle, give me my dog} - syn. kɔ́ya 2

aussi** [osíi] Av : also, too {mbi aussi, mbi fatiguer : I also am tired} {í wara nginza tí í aussi : we've received our money also} - syn. ngá - both aussi and ngá can be used together in hybrid reinforcement

auto** [otóo, wotóo] N : an automobile, most often a passenger car - kutukutu is a general term applying to all automotive vehicles - camion is a truck

autocar** [otokáar, káar] N : a bus, either urban or cross-country - busses represent the principal means of long-distance public transportation, though many people travel by truck - see camion - see also kutukutu, the general term for automotive vehicles

awe : see we

- B -

bá N : an oath - usually in the verbal expression dé bá (fadé í dé bá da : we'll swear upon it) - more formal and solemnly binding than zé ndo

ba V : to bend, to be bent, to stoop, to be crooked (lo ba wę ní : he bent the iron) (pekɔ́ tí lo aba : his back is bent) (kéké aba : the stick is crooked) - ba suggests a single major bend, while kiríkiri suggests a series of switches and zigzags - see also dénge and kuku

báa V : 1. to perceive visually : to see, to notice, to catch sight of, to glance, to stare, to look at, to examine (dole abáa mbirímbirí pepɛ : the elephant couldn't see straight) (même mɔ gá na pópó tí dole tongasó, dole abáa mɔ pepɛ : even if you go right in the midst of the elephants, they won't notice you) (lo kpé tí báa kámba : he ran to see the snares) (lo báa tongana yąma aɛkɛ na yá ní : he looked to see if there was an animal in it) (mais íta mɔ báa bongó só : but sister, look at this cloth) (mbi wále mbi changer bongó pepɛ, ázó aɛkɛ báa mbi : I, the woman, I don't change clothes, people stare at me) (tongana mɔ goe na hôpital, ála báa kobéla tí mɔ : when you go to a hospital, they examine your illness) - see also báa na lé, báa nɛ́ɛ

2. to perceive in a more general way (tongana mɔ séra tongasó, fadé mɔ ɛkɛ báa anzɛrɛ mingi : if you do like this, you'll see that it tastes good) (tongana ála báa, ála gá tí súru ndó tí mabɔ́kɔ só, il faut que ála kpé pepɛ : when you hear that they are coming to prick fingers, you must not run away) - see also má, tara

3. to look for, to find (fadé mbi báa yí tí kirí na question tí mɔ : I'll look for and find something to answer your question) - see also gí, wara

4. to obtain in visible form (í ɛkɛ báa nginza encore : we still get money) - see also wara

5. to meet someone socially, to enter into face-to-face relations with someone, to call upon (mais lo báa mbi ɔ́kɔ pɛpɛ : but he didn't see, i.e. call upon me, at all) (gá í goe, mɔ báa aú tí mɔ : come, let's go, you'll meet your uncle) - see also báa lɛ́ tí, báa tɛ́rɛ́, tɛ́

6. to realize, to understand (tongana ála báa, mɔ ɛkɛ na nginza mingi pɛpɛ, ála yí da pɛpɛ : when they realize you don't have much money, they won't agree) (mɔ báa awe? : do you understand?) - see also má

7. to think, to feel that, to consider as, to be of the opinion that (mbi báa, na lége tí ámbéní wále só Nzapá amú na ála tí dú mɛ́rɛngɛ́, só aɛkɛ kusára tí ála : I think, as far as women to whom God has given to bear children are concerned, that this is the work of women) (mbi báa yí só aɛkɛ kótá yí : I consider that this is a big thing) - see also báa ... tɛnɛ, báa tongana, penser

8. a device to get the attention of someone : look, look here, see here, hey! (báa, só lo : look, that's him) (báa kótá caisse só, mbi bi na sése : look, this big crate, I threw it on the ground)

9. in future form, with ominous sense : to see (fadé í báa na yá tí nze só : we'll see during this very month!)

báa finóo V : to experience physical suffering or pain (í báa finóo míngi, ngbangatí ála mú zaza, títɛnɛ ála sɔ í : we experienced much suffering, because they took whips to hurt us) - see also finóo, báa pási, hú ponó

báa lé tí V : to encounter socially (íta, nzala tí mɔ asára mbi míngi, tí báa lé tí mɔ : brother, I have a great desire for you, to see you face to face) - see also báa 5, báa tɛ́rɛ́

báa li tí V : to have a dream, a vision (tongana babá tí mbi alángó na bí sí lo báa li tí lo, lo báa mamá tí lo só akúi : when my father slept at night and dreamed, he saw his mother who had died) - see also mosúmá, súmá báa mbadi V : to practise divination - syn. *sára* *mbadí*

báa na lé V : to see for oneself, to see first-hand (zía lo gá na ndo só, fadé í na lo í goe na yáká ní, fadé lo báa na lé tí lo : let him come here, he and I will go to the field, he'll see for himself) - see also *báa* 1

báa ndá V. : to seek to ruin someone's reputation (lo báa ndáa mbi : he is seeking to ruin my reputation)

báa ndo V : to see, to be able to see (mbéní kɔ́li ɔ́kɔ aɛkɛ, mais lo báa ndo pɛpɛ : there was a certain man, but he couldn't see) - see also *báa* 1

báa ndo tí kúí V : to aim at the vital spot (tongana lo wara dole, lo mú ngombe, lo báa ndo tí kúí, lo fáa lo : when he found an elephant, he took a gun, he aimed at the vital spot, and he killed it)

báa ndo, yí tí : see *yí* *tí* *báa* *ndo*

báa nzɛ V : to have a menstrual period - see *bángó* *nzɛ*

báa pási V : to suffer, especially as a result of burdensome toil (mbi báa pási alíngbi pɛpɛ : I experienced suffering beyond measure) - see also *báa* *finóo*, *hú* *pɔnɔ́*, *finóo*, *pɔnɔ́*, *sáná*, *pási*

báa ... tɛnɛ V : to think, to conclude, to be of the opinion (mbi báa mbi tɛnɛ, kɔ́li kóé aɛkɛ wara bilharzie : I was of the opinion that men also got the liver-fluke disease) - see also *báa* 7, *báa* *tongana*, *penser* - *hinga* ... *tɛnɛ* is much more confident and sure

báa tɛ́rɛ́ V : to meet socially, of two or more people (jusqu'à lá só, áni báa tɛ́rɛ́ na lo pɛpɛ : to this very day he and I haven't met) - see also *báa* 5, *báa* *lé* *tí*

báa ... tongana V : to consider as (ála báa í tongana yama pɛpɛ : they don't consider us as animals) - see also *báa* 7, *báa* .. *tɛnɛ*, *penser*

báa yí awe? V : an expression of astonishment (mɔ báa yí awe? : can you beat that!)

babá N : 1. father, in a biological and social sense - usually accompanied by a specifying complement (mbi ɛkɛ babá tí mɛ́rɛngɛ́ fadesó : I'm the father of a child now) (só babá tí mbi laá : that's my father there) - without complement, used in direct address or in third person : one's own father (babá, mbi kúí : father, I'm dying) (babá asára kɔa : father is working) - see mamá, see famille for the kinship system

2. usually plural : collectively, the members of the father's clan, including paternal ancestors (kózo ní, ábabá tí í ...: formerly, our ancestors ...) (lo goe na place tí ábabá tí lo : he went to the place of his father's clan) - kótará is a more general, less specific term for ancestors - see mamá 2.

3. usually with some specifying complement : a member of one's father's clan, especially one's father's brothers (mbéní babá tí mbi : a certain "father" of mine) (babá tí mbi tí kété : my father's younger brother) - see also kété babá, kótá babá, mamá 3

4. by extension, a man who has authority or influence over one, or whom one respects highly (fadesó mɔ gá babá tí mbi awe : now you've become my father)

5. an exclamation of intense surprise, sometimes tinged with apprehension - in this case it is strongly articulated, with the pitch interval exaggerated (babá! : wow!) - syn. mon vieux

babá ɔ́kɔ An : expression used to specify that someone is a sibling rather than a cousin - further specification can be added regarding the mother (íta, babá ɔ́kɔ na mamá ɔ́kɔ : a full sibling, a sibling with the same mother and father) (íta, babá ɔ́kɔ na mamá aɛkɛ ndé : a sibling of one father but a different mother) - see mamá ɔ́kɔ, mamá ... ndé

baba N : vanity, conceit, pride (só babá sí mɔ ɛkɛ sára apɛ? : isn't that vanity you're doing, i.e. aren't you showing off?) - used in the expression fa baba - syn. fandara

bábolo N : a sweet potato, either white or orange bac** [bák, báke] N : a ferry for crossing a river - this comprises a platform of boards fixed to a set of parallel metal barges or dugout canoes, and propelled either by paddle or pole or, in rare cases, by outboard motor

bágara N : 1. hump-backed domestic cattle or zebu, or other domestic cattle (ábórɔ́ró akɛ ázo tí bata bágara : the Bóróró, i.e. local Fulani, are the people who keep cattle) - the zebu is by far the most common kind of cattle- it may be kept only in the extreme northwest and northeast, in areas bordering on the Chad, because the tsetse fly carries sleeping sickness in the rest of the country 2. buffalo (rare) (ábágara ní agá tí kpé na gbɛ́ tí mbi : the buffalo came and ran right below me) - gógóá, ngbáa are more usual synonyms 3. beef (tongana mo yí tí zía bágara da, só nzoní : if you want to put beef into it, that's good) - yạma 2 is the more general term for meat

bakongo* N : a turtle, a tortoise

bákoyá N : a baboon (lá kóó na yákâ tí kɔ́li só, ábákoyá míngi akɛ foutu kóbe ní : always in this man's field, many baboons were destroying the crops) - see yạma tí ngonda

bála N : an area within a village which is enclosed by a hedge or fence (tongana í fáa yạma awe, í gá na place tí bála ní, í kángbi yạma só tenetí 'áfamille : when we had killed the animal, we came to the enclosure and divided the animal among the families) - gbágbá designates the fence or hedge

balai** [baláe, balié] N : a broom - indigenous brooms are made of a bunch of grass, fibers, or analogous vegetable material, held, bound, or woven together, without a handle, so that the user must squat while sweeping

báláwá N : the shea tree or its nut - a solid fat called mafuta tí báláwá is made of the nuts and used in cooking in the northern parts of the country, especially among Muslims and those culturally influenced by them

PRECEDING PAGE BLANK- NOT FILMED

bángá N : 1. a rubber tree - in most places rubber is taken from wild rather than cultivated trees, though plantations exist
2. raw latex or rubber {asára bángá na gɛ́rɛ́ tí vélo : they make rubber into bicycle tires} - latex is also called *ngú tí bángá* - *ndembú* is cured rubber

bángó nzɛ N : a menstrual period - see *báa nzɛ*

bara V : to greet {mbi bara mɔ nzoní : I greet you cordially} {mbi bara ála kóé : I greet you all}

bara N : greetings {íta, bara mínga : brother, many greetings} {mbi tɛnɛ bara tí mbi na ála kóé : I say my greetings to you all} {lo mú na mɔ bara tí lo na madame na ámɛ́rɛngɛ́ kóé : he gives you his greetings, and Madam and the children also} - this expression is the first greeting exchanged by two people upon meeting, and is conventionally followed by other formulas - see *mɔ ɛkɛ*, *mbi ɛkɛ* - *dutí nzoní*, *goe nzoní* are used at parting

báságbó N: Derby's eland, a large, rather scarce antelope much prized by hunters - see *yama tí ngonda*

basánze N : that which pertains to traditional customs or crafts - used in the phrases *ta tí basánze*, *yíngɔ́ tí basánze* - much less pejorative than *sauvage* - opp. *civiliser*, *service*

batá N : a squirrel

bata V : 1. to keep, preserve, protect, guard, sustain, retain {gi vin só mɔ bata na ní só vɛní mɔ kɛ tɔ́ na ní : just the wine in which you kept it you should boil it in} {mbi kɛ bata lo na kóbe tí mbi : I'm sustaining him with my food} {mais íta mbi má ála kɛ mú kɔ́li gi na kété yoró tí bata tɛ́rɛ́ apɛ? : but sister, haven't I heard that they catch husbands with a small charm for protecting the body?}
2. by extension, to adopt {áíta tí lo, ála mú mɛ́rɛngɛ́ tí lo só, ála bata lo : his brothers, they took his child and adopted it} - syn. *kamáta* 2

PRECEDING PAGE BLANK NOT FILMED

bata kóngbá N : an apprentice and assistant to a truck driver who rides on top of the load to make sure of its safety and to warn the driver of vehicles from the rear - also called apprenti

bata mɛ N : a brassière

bata yángá V : to keep still, especially under provocation or inducement, to exercise self-discipline so as not to speak

bé N : the middle or center of something - used in bé bí and ndó bé - syn. pɔ́pó, milieu - means in the middle of a surface, e.g. a table

be V 1 : to weary or discourage someone {tɛ́nɛ́ tí lo abe ála awe : his saying discouraged them} - see nzɛ́, mú yángá, kara

be V 2 : 1. to brown, as frying food {mbi sára yą̀ma na mafuta, na abe : I prepare meat in fat, and it browns}
2. to ripen, to be ripe {mángo ní abe nzoní, anzɛrɛ míngi : the mango is quite ripe, it tastes very good}

bebé N : roofing grass, a special kind of tall grass (perhaps Imperata cylindrica L.) especially well adapted to making durable thatched roofs {tongana mɔ fáa péré na place tí bebé, mɔ mú gɛ́rɛ́ ní kóé : when you cut grass in the place of roofing, take the roots as well} - péré is the general term for grass - see li tí da

bé bí N : midnight - see bí, heure, - syn. midi tí bí

békpá N : thunder {békpá asungba, amú mɔ : may thunder burst and get you, i.e. a curse upon you} {békpá asungba mbéní lá, amú mɛ́rɛngɛ́ só anzí yí : the thunder burst one day and got the youth who stole the thing} - see yɛ́kpa

berá N : battle, war {tongasó lo kɛ goe na berá tí tiri na áíta tí lo na tí kamáta ála : so he went to war to fight with his brothers and to capture them} {ála goe tí tiri berá : they went to fight a war} - see also píka berá, tiri, tí na li

béta N : a waterbuck, a large, dark grey game antelope - see yama tí ngonda bɛ́ N : 1. the liver, human or animal

2. in folk psychology, the seat of the human spirit (see yíngɔ́), hence of the personality and all its functions : will, intellect, memory, emotions, consciousness, disposition, temperament, etc. - the process of perception begins with the senses (see lɛ́, mɛ́, báa, má) - next the head (see li) takes the information and either loses, i.e. forgets it (see girísa 1), or transmits it to the liver, where all further dispositions are made - the information may be understood (see hínga na bɛ́) - the liver can accept and believe the information and commit itself (see zía bɛ́), or reject it (see kɛ) - it can reverse itself and receive truth formerly rejected, as in repentance (see lɛkɛ bɛ́) - it can cogitate, meditate, ponder, and wonder (see gí bɛ́, b'anda, há, penser) - the liver experiences joy (see bɛ́ ... ngiá), sorrow and resentment (see bɛ́ ... sɔ, vundú), desire and love (see bɛ́ ... [illegible] - it can be overwhelmed by an awesome thing (see bɛ́ ... dɔ́), it can be broken (see bɛ́ ... fáa), amazed and astonished (see bɛ́ ... gbó) - anger is associated with a rise in the bile (see ngonzo, bɛ́ ... lóndó), and when the anger has abated it is said that the liver has cooled, is resting, or has returned to its place (see bɛ́ ... dé, bɛ́ ... lángɔ́, bɛ́ ... kírí) - it can also be said that it has again become good, though this expression (see bɛ́ ... gá nzoní) applies equally to the cessation of sorrow and resentment as the result of consolation - the liver can be arrogant (see bɛ́ kótá), and it can become humble and amenable (see wɔ́kɔ bɛ́) - it can become weary and discouraged (see bɛ́ ... nzɛ́) and experience pleasure (see bɛ́ nzɛrɛ) - it can be characterized as black or double (see bɛ́ ... vɔkɔ́, bɛ́ ... óse) to indicate dishonesty or deceitfulness, or white (see bɛ́ ... vurú) to indicate integrity and guilelessness - when livers are one (see bɛ́ ɔ́kɔ), there is good fellowship - kindness is described as a good liver (bɛ́ nzoní), and other qualities include right, evil, and so on (see mbírímbírí, sioní) - really knowing another person implies knowing his liver (see hínga bɛ́ tí) {lukundú atɛ bɛ́ tí lo : a witch spirit has eaten his liver, i.e. to explain sickness or death} {ngonzo akái na bɛ́ tí lo : anger has

quieted in his liver) (bɛ́ tí ála aɛkɛ tongana bɛ́ tí zo vɔkɔ́ : their liver is like that of a black man, i.e. their temperament, so that they are congenial and understanding) (tɛ́nɛ́ aɛkɛ na bɛ́ tí lo : there is a matter in his liver, i.e. something that needs to be settled before peace is restored) (lo tɛnɛ na bɛ́ tí lo ... : he said within himself ...) (bɛ́ tí lo achanger : his disposition has changed) - see expressions including bɛ́ : bi bɛ́, gbó bɛ́, kánga bɛ́, kpɔ bɛ́, li bɛ́, má ... bɛ́, sára ... na bɛ́, sioní bɛ́, wa ... bɛ́, zía bɛ́

bɛ́ ... dé V : anger has abated (bɛ́ tí lo adé : he has calmed down) - see also bɛ́ ... lángó, bɛ́ ... kírí, bɛ́ ... ga nzoní - opposite, bɛ́ ... lóndó

bɛ́ ... dɔ́ V : to be overwhelmed by something awesome, frightening - hence, dɔ́ngó bɛ́ : something terrible (tɛnɛtí politique, ála sára yí tí dɔ́ngó bɛ́, mais ála sára gbá : as for politics, they did some terrible things, but without success)

bɛ́ ... ɛkɛ na ngiá V : to rejoice greatly - the expression can be inverted (bɛ́ tí mbi aɛkɛ na ngiá : my liver has joy) (ngiá aɛkɛ na bɛ́ tí mbi : joy is in my liver) - not as strong as bɛ́ ... sí na ngiá

bɛ́ ... fáa V : to be heartbroken, to be overwhelmed by sorrow and despair - the inverted form is more common (bɛ́ tí lo afáa : his heart is broken) (yí só afáa bɛ́ tí lo : this thing is breaking his heart)

bɛ́ ... gá nzoni V : 1. to be morally ameliorated (bɛ́ tí lo agá nzoní : his liver became good, i.e. he became a better man)
2. to be pacified (bɛ́ tí lo agá nzoní : he calmed down) - see bɛ́ ... dé, bɛ́ ... kírí, bɛ́ ... lángó
3. to be comforted or consoled (bɛ́ tí lo agá nzoní : he was comforted) - see wa bɛ́

bɛ́ ... gbó V : to be startled, amazed, astonished, to marvel (bɛ́ tí lo agbó ngbangatí finí yí só lo báa kózo ní pɛpɛ : he marvelled on account of the new things he had never seen before)

bɛ́ ... kírí V : to be pacified after violent anger (bɛ́ tí lo akírí na place ní : his liver returned to its place, i.e. he calmed down} - see bɛ́ ... dé, bɛ́ ... lángó, bɛ́ gá nzoní 2 - opposite of bɛ́ ... lóndó

bɛ́ ... kótá N : arrogance - see also baba, fandara

bɛ́ ... lángó V : to calm down after hot anger - syn. bɛ́ ... dé, bɛ́ ... kírí, bɛ́ ... gá nzoní - opposite, bɛ́ ... lóndó

bɛlɛ V : to deny {mbi bɛlɛ tɛ́nɛ́ pɛpɛ : I don't deny the matter} - see sára tɛ́nɛ́

bɛ́ ... lóndó V : to be aroused, to become angry {bɛ́ tí lo alóndó, ngonzo agá na lé tí lo : his liver arose, bile came up into his face, i.e. he became violently angry} - not as strong as ngonzo ... gbó bɛ́ - opposite of bɛ́ ... dé, bɛ́ ... kírí, etc.

bɛ́ ... nzɛ́ V : to be wearied or discouraged {bɛ́ tí lo anzɛ́ biani : he was truly discouraged} - syn. bɛ́ ... wɔ́kɔ, fatiguer - opposite wa bɛ́, kánga bɛ́

bɛ́ ... nzɛrɛ V : to take pleasure, to be pleased {fadé í díkɔ éré tí ála, sí bɛ́ tí ála anzɛrɛ : we'll read your names, so that you will be pleased} - this expression is less specific in focussing on the source of the pleasure than nzɛrɛ na bɛ́

bɛ́ nzoní N : kindness, amiability, cordiality, mercy - also said as nzoní bɛ́ - frequently found in the phrase sára bɛ́ nzoní {íta, mɔ sára bɛ́ nzoní na mbi mɔ diminuer ngéré ní ma : sister, show me kindness and bring down the price, won't you} {ála tɛnɛ na bɛ́ nzoní yí só alíngbi na pópó tí ála pɛpɛ : they don't talk kindly among themselves as they should}

bɛ́ ... óse V : to be dishonest, deceitful, underhanded - the copula ɛkɛ either appears or is understood before óse {mbi zía bɛ́ tí mbi na lo ɔ́kɔ pɛpɛ, bɛ́ tí lo óse : I don't trust him at all, he is deceitful}

bɛ́ ɔ́kɔ N : agreement {ála sára bɛ́ ɔ́kɔ na ndó tɛ́nɛ́ ní : they agreed on this matter}

2. fellowship {lo ɛkɛ sára bɛ́ ɔ́kɔ na áyąma tí ngangó tongana dole pɛpɛ : he didn't associate and have fellowship with strong animals like the elephant}

3. single-mindedness {lo sára na mabɔ́kɔ óse pɛpɛ, mais na bɛ́ ɔ́kɔ : she doesn't do it with two hands, i.e. halfheartedly, but with dedication} - see also ngiá, sára ngiá

bɛ́ ... sí na ngiá V : to be full of joy, to be overjoyed - the inverted expression is more common {lá só bɛ́ tí mbi así na ngiá : today I am full of joy} { lá só ngiá así bɛ́ tí mbi : today joy fills my heart}- this is a stronger expression than bɛ́ ... ɛkɛ na ngiá

bɛ́ ... sɔ V : to be offended, to experience resentment, to hold a grudge - the expression can also be inverted {bɛ́ tí mbi asɔ na patron tí mbi míngi : I'm very much put out and offended at my boss} {mbéní yí aɛkɛ sɔ bɛ́ tí mbi : something is offending me} - when the feeling expressed by bɛ́ ... sɔ becomes settled it is called vundú

bɛ́ ... vɔkɔ́ V : to be dishonest and deceitful - the result of a person's being and acting in this manner is a rupture of goodwill and fellowship with others {ámbéní só bɛ́ tí ála avɔkɔ́ aɛkɛ da míngi : there are many who are dishonest} - syn. bɛ́ ... óse - opp. bɛ́ ... ɔ́kɔ, bɛ́ ... vurú

bɛ́ ... vurú V : to be guileless, honest, open - the result of a person's being and acting in this manner is to create goodwill and fellowship with others {zo só bɛ́ tí ála avurú na mbáge tí ázo vɔkɔ́ ... : people who are open and above-board towards black people ...} - syn. bɛ́ ... ɔ́kɔ - opp. bɛ́ ... óse, bɛ́ ... vɔkɔ́

bɛ́ ... wɔ́kɔ V : to be or become humble, amenable - this expression can be inverted {bɛ́ tí lo awɔ́kɔ : he is humble} {wɔ́kɔ bɛ́ tí mɔ : relent, humble yourself} - opp. bɛ́ kótá

bɛ́ ... yí V : to want, desire, like, love {zo só bɛ́ tí lo ayí lo gá : the person whom he wants comes} {peut-être bɛ́ tí lo ayí mɔ pɛpɛ laá : perhaps it's because he doesn't love you} - a much weaker syn. is lé ... yí - opp. kę - see yí bé ... yí da V : see yí ... da

bí N : night, nighttime {tongana zo aɛkɛ nzí na bí, mbi arrêter lo : when someone steals at night, I arrest him} - see heure for the times of the day

bi V : to throw, to cast, to shove away {mɔ bi adorónu da : throw in some rock salt} {bi ngɔ́ tí mɔ na lé tí ngú, sí í bi gbánda : shove out your boat on the surface of the water, so that we can cast the nets}

bíá N : a song {ála commencer tí hé bíá, tí sára ngiá : they began to sing a song and to have fun} {mbi píka na ála mbéní pendere bíá : I'll play for you a beautiful song} - see hé bíá, píka bíá

bíakú Av : truly, in truth - can be reduplicated for emphasis {ála zía yí tí ála kóé bíakú bíakú : they left all their things in very truth} syn. bíaní

bíaní Av : truly, in truth, really, certainly - can be reduplicated for emphasis {fadé lo kúí bíaní : he's really going to die} {na bíaní, mbi hínga só, fadesó aɛkɛ ámbunzú só agá na kusára só na í and truly, I know that it is now white men who bring this work to us}{taá tɛ́nɛ́ tí mɔ bíaní? : is what you're saying really true?} - syn. bíakú

bíanga N : a frog - syn. kɔ́ngba

bi bɛ́ V : to set one's heart on {mamá abi bɛ́ tí lo na lége tí sára kusára tí yá da : mother set her heart on doing the housework} - this is largely used by Protestants, while the more usual expression is zía bɛ́

bien** [byɛ̨ɛ̨] Au : good, well {Sango tí Bangui aɛkɛ bien : the Sango in Bangui is good} {mbi ɛkɛ travailler bien bien : I work very well, i.e. under excellent conditions} - this is much less common, more sophisticated than nzoní

bière** [byɛ́ɛr] N : European-type beer - for a list of alcoholic beverages see samba bima V : to complain, lament, moan {mbi bima ngbangatí yí tí vundú só ála sára na mbi : I'm complaining on account of the resentment-arousing things they are doing to me} - this is much more specific, and less loud a sound than that indicated by the more usual uses of toto and dé kɔ́ngɔ, and less active and reasoned than dé kíté - see also sára tɛ́nɛ́

bi mbo V : to send a dog after something, to incite a dog to the chase {lo bi mbo tí lo tí tomba yąma : he sent his dog to chase animals} - the expression used to address the dog for this purpose is caʔ

bi ... na likongó V : to throw a spear at, to pierce with a spear {tongana zo ayí tí bi mɔ na likongó, mɔ mú válá só mɔ kánga na lé tí mɔ : when someone wants to pierce you with a spear, you take the shield and cover your face}

bi ... na ngonda V : to throw away, to abandon {i kángbi áyá ní kóé, í bi na ngonda : we cut out all the insides, i.e. intestines, and threw them away}

bi ... na sése V : to throw on the ground, to abandon {báa kótá caisse só, mbi bi na sése : look, this big crate, I just abandoned it}

bingbá An : a color term covering primarily red, orange, reddish brown, and the more intense, deeper shades of yellow - reduplicated, it means very red, bright red {lo kɛ bingbá yąma : he's a reddish animal} {amú mbéní kótá bɔngɔ́, bingbá bingbá, abi na sése, mbi tambéla na ndó ní : they took a great cloth, bright red, and put it on the ground, and I walked on it} - see couleur

bingbá kété An : lighter shades of yellow, orange, and pink - see couleur

bingbá mafuta N : palm oil - see mbúrú, mafuta

bíngo N : nighttime, darkness {azía í na yá tí bíngo, só aɛkɛ sioní míngi : they abandoned us in the darkness, this is very bad} - the darkness can be moral or otherwise, figurative as well as physical - see bí bíó N : a bone - as opposed to mi, the flesh

bíó li N : a skull

bírí N : yesterday {bírí sí madame amú bongó na mbi : it was yesterday that Madam gave me the cloth} - see lá for the date system - see also mbéní bírí

bíríbiri N : beer made from mil, soaked in water two days- the mash is drained and allowed to stand for a week, and then pounded, mixed with water and made into a drink - see samba for a list of alcoholic beverages

bi yángá V : to speak up, possibly out of turn, to put in one's oar, to express one's opinions freely {ála bi yángá tí ála na yá tí politique tí République Centrafricaine, í húnda na ála tí sárángó na ndo só pɛpɛ : they interfered vocally in the politics of the Central African Republic, we ask them not to do it here}

bobo N : termite - these insects are very destructive, coming out of their underground nests and their hills to destroy wood, paper, cloth, etc. - but they are also a significant source of protein at certain times of the year - after the first rains of the rainy season, they erupt from the ground in vast swarms on their nuptial flight - they are caught as they emerge in cans, pots, or sieves, their wings are shaken off, and they are eaten raw, roasted, or boiled

boîte** [bwáte] N : 1. a tin can {nginza tí boîte aɛkɛ ngangó míngi : the price of a can (of food) is very high}
2. a small box or carton, as opposed to caisse or sandúku which are larger {mbi sára bon tí trois boîte tí cartouche : I bought on credit three boxes of cartridges}

bólo V : to throw a stone with accuracy so as to hit something {abólo ndɛkɛ na tɛ́mɛ́ : he hit a bird with a stone} - gana implies the throwing of several stones, as when someone is pelted with stones

bon** [bǫ́ǫ] N : a debt, especially one incurred by buying on credit {mbi vɔ na bon : I bought it on credit} {kɔ́li ní aobliger tí sára bon :

the man is obliged to go into debt} { fadesó bon tí Trompette aɛkɛ pɛpɛ, ázo avɔ gí vɔ́ngó : now there is no more credit (for buying) the Trompette (a journal), people just buy it (for cash)} - various kinds of credit and debt are very common - kɔ́dá is a traditional term for various kinds of obligations, often arising out of social relationships

bon** [bǫ] I : 1. frequently an empty morpheme merely signalling the continuation of speech {bon, tɛ́nɛ́ aɛkɛ pɛpɛ : there's no trouble} 2. well then, now then {mbi tɛnɛ, bon, fadesó mbi ɛkɛ na kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́ tí mbi : I said, Now then, I'm in my village} 3. good, fine, all right {bon, merci : good, thanks}

bóndó N : mil (Sorghum guineense Stapf.), specifically the edible dried grains of the plant {tongana heure tí burú awe, ábóndó asára awe, alungúla lé ní azía na yá tí gogɔrɔ : when the dry season is over, and the mil grains have formed, we remove the grains and put them into a granary} - mil is the staple of most of the inhabitants of the northern half of the Central African Republic - syn. zuru

bóngbi [búngbi, bíngbi, búmbi] V : to gather together, to assemble, to collect, to put together {mɔ mú kéké tí wá mɔ bóngbi : you take firewood and gather it together} {í bóngbi, í na ála kɔ́ɛ́, í sára ngiá : we gather together, we and they, and have fun} {áni bóngbi tí dɔ́ lengé : we assembled to dance the lengé} {ámɛ́rɛngɛ́ míngi abóngbi na li tí finí mɛ́rɛngɛ́ wále só tí píka lo : a lot of children ganged up on the new girl to beat her up} {mbi bóngbi ázo tí kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́ : I assembled the people of the village} - opp. kángbi 2 - see also tíngbi

bóngbi N : a gathering, a meeting {áinspecteur asára só na lá tí kótá bóngbi tí ála : the inspectors did this at the time of their great meeting}

bóngbi li tí V : to assemble for a meeting or other common undertaking, to get heads together {il faut ála bóngbi li tí ála, sí ála sára kɔa na ngiá : you must get together, so as to do the job with joy} bóngbi tɛ́rɛ́ V : to assemble for a common purpose {í bóngbi tɛ́rɛ́, í yɔ̧́ samba lége ɔ́kɔ : we got together and drank beer together}

bozó N : a pouch-shaped bag of leather or woven grass, slung under the arm by a shoulder strap - used primarily by old men {lo píka li tí susu ní, sí lo zía na yá tí bozó : he hit the fish over the head and then put it into his bag}

2. there is sometimes a confusion of form, then of meaning, with French poche

3. by extension, any carrying bag or case, such as a brief case, especially of leather, cloth, or woven-work

bozó ínɔ N : the bladder - ínɔ is urine

bozó tí ngonzo N : the gall bladder - ngonzo 1 is bile

bózo : see poche

bɔ́i N : a personal or domestic servant, especially in a European context {préavis tí ábɔ́i na ácuisinier aɛkɛ lángó miombe : notice for house servants and cooks is eight days} - in a household of several servants, the cook, cuisinier, has the most prestige, the highest pay, and the most privileges, the bɔ́i comes next, and the kété bɔ́i or marmiton, is at the bottom of the scale - ngbáá means a slave

bɔ́i coton N : a petty agricultural official who, in the days when the cultivation of cotton was compulsory, supervised the work and enforced the requirements - see coton

bɔngɔ́ N : 1. cloth, fabric {kóngbá sɔ́ ála kɛ ká aɛkɛ ápièce tí bɔngɔ́ : the merchandise which they are selling is pieces of cloth}

2. any piece of clothing, the totality of one's clothing, clothing in general {tongana mɔ lɔ́ndɔ́ na kɔa, mɔ sukúla ngú, mɔ yú bɔngɔ́ tí mɔ, mɔ píka kate tí mɔ, atɛnɛ, mbi ɛkɛ kóli : when you've come from work, you wash up, put on your clothes, beat your chest and say, I'm a man!}

3. a cloth, a rag

búbá An : 1. worthless {yáká só í sára só, aɛkɛ yáká tí búbá pɛpɛ : this field which we're making is not a worthless field} {giriri mbi dutí na mawa, ála báa mbi tongana zo tí búbá : formerly I remained in a pitiable state, they considered me a worthless person} 2. foolish, senseless, crazy {ála gí lége tí sára í na búbá zo tí ála pɛpɛ : they don't try to make us into their fools} {ázo só aɛkɛ sára tɛ́nɛ́ tí búbá : these people are talking nonsense} - see also sára búbá, li ... tourner

buba V : to ruin, to waste, to make or become worthless {kɔli tí mɔ amú nginza aɛkɛ buba séngé séngé : your husband takes the money and wastes it for no reason} {mbi báa yí só anzɛrɛ na mbi, sí mbi buba pɛ́mbɛ́ tí mbi : I considered that this thing would please me, so I ruined my teeth} {mbi yí mɔ buba mbi pɛpɛ : I don't want you to make a fool of me} {yí ní abuba awe : the thing became worthless}-see foutu

búburú N : dumbness {lo ɛkɛ wa búburú, lo sára tɛ́nɛ́ gbá : he is a dumb person, he tries vainly to talk}

bulée N : sweet banana, widely used as a diet supplement, in contrast to fondɔ, which is used as a staple by some people

bureau** [biróo] N : 1. an office, especially an administrative office {ála ɛkɛ na bureau na mbi : you are in the office with me} {ála éré kɔ́li ní na bureau : they summoned the man to the (district) office} {lo sára mariage tí bureau na tí mission ngá : he had a civil marriage and a church wedding too}
2. a desk

burú N : dry season {na yá tí burú, ála éré kóngó, sí ála ɛkɛ mú susu ní : in the dry season, they dam up the Kongo stream and catch the fish} - see vurú ndo

buruma N : leprosy - this disease is endemic in the Central African Republic, though a persistent effort of public health and other medical forces has greatly improved the situation - traditional mores did not prescribe any ostracism or banishment for the victim - syn. ngiba - see kobéla

- B' -

b'anda V : to ponder, to meditate (lo b'anda tɛ́nɛ́ na yá tí bɛ́ tí lo : he pondered the problem in his mind, lit. his liver) - syn. gi bɛ́, há, penser

b'ɔngɔ́ N : a hyena - in fables, the hyena is a stupid, ridiculous, nasty-tempered character - see yama tí ngonda

- C -

café** [kafée] N : 1. coffee in a botanically generic sense {yáká tí café tí mbi akánga kóé : my coffee plantation is completely choked (with weeds)} - coffee is the second most important cash crop of the Central African Republic, and is grown especially in the southern half of the country
2. coffee plantation {mbi ɛkɛ na yángá tí café tí mbi : I'm at the edge of my coffee plantation}
3. coffee beans {mɔ ɛkɛ píka café : you pound the coffee beans}
4. coffee, a drink {ámbéní zo agá na galá, ála yǫ̂ café : some people come to the market to drink coffee}

caisse** [kɛ́sɛ, kɛ́ɛs, kɛ́si] N : a wooden box or crate {caisse ní anɛ, mbi yɔ̂ caisse ní gbá : the crate was very heavy, I tried in vain to carry it} {í ɛkɛ voter gí na kété kété mbétí só, amú, agoe zía na caisse tí vote : you vote just with those little slips of paper, you take and go put them into the ballot box} - caisse is more specific and modern than sandúku, and larger than boîte

camarade** [kamarád, kamaráde] N : a close friend, a buddy or pal, always of the same sex {tongana mbéní camarade tí mɔ agá, [illegible] na lo í dutí tí causer : when a friend of yours comes along, you and she sit and chat} - almost syn. ndeko, which can however be of either sex, and can refer to a person whose companionship is so intimate as to warrant a sort of honorary membership in the family - ndeko can also be a euphemism for mistress or lover - fó refers specifically to a work companion, mbá to a compatriot, íta to a relative, and ndoé to a person having the same name as oneself

camion** [kamyǫ̂ǫ] N : a truck - any automotive vehicle larger than a passenger car and used primarily to transport merchandise - trucks are the only means of inland transportation of goods, and also carry many passengers, in spite of the growth of bus service - see also auto, autocar, kutukutu canton** [kątɔ̨́ɔ̨] N : 1. an administrative territorial unit of colonial days, composed of a number of villages and, together with several parallel units, constituting a district {canton tí Bessao : the county of Bessao} - since independence, replaced by the collectivité - see republique for the administrative organization of the country 2. the chief officer of the canton - an African selected by the colonial government in part by traditional or pseudo-traditional criteria of chieftainship, usually from a chiefly or pseudo-chiefly clan - often despised by the younger generation for their usual lack of education, their attachment to traditional customs and patterns of authority, and especially their identification with the colonial régime - this office has been superceded since independence by the elective position of président tí collectivité - see also makunzi, gbíá

capitaine** [kapitɛ́ɛn] N : the Nile perch - a large fish, caught in the larger rivers, and considered a great delicacy - see susu, gí susu

carte** [kárte, kárate] N : a card, especially a membership or identifying card {ázo ɔ́kɛ a/í títenɛ ála mú carte tí lo? : how many people want to take away his membership card?} - used especially in Protestant churches - see also carte d'identité

carte d'identité** [dątitée] N : an official identifying document intended to be carried on the person at all times {ngú tí mbi, tongana mɔ báa carte d'identité, ka mɔ hínga : as for my age, if you saw my identity card, then you would know}

catéchiste** [katesíste] N : a catechist or subordinate lay leader in a local congregation, as among Protestants - a person charged with teaching the catechism, as among Catholics - ordained leaders are called père among Catholics and pasteur among Protestants

causer** [kozée] V : to chat, to discuss, to talk cordially and informally {mbi na wále tí mbi í causer títenɛ í ɛkɛ sára mɔ tɛ́nɛ́ só mbírímbírí : my wife and I discussed this so we could tell you this matter rightly} - see sára tɛ́nɛ́ for a study of synonyms ça va** [savMay] V : to recover from illness, to be in good health {fadesó mbi ça va awe : now I'm well} {í língbi tí ça va na lége tí kobéla só : we can recover from this illness} - syn. gá nzoní 1, guérir, kobéla ... kái

certificat** [sɛrtifikáa] N : a certificate - especially, the certificat d'études primaires élémentaires, or elementary school certificate {alíngbi mɔ wara certificat tí mɔ sí, ngbangatí gángó moniteur só aɛkɛ yí tí ngiá pɛpɛ : you must have your certificate, because becoming an instructor is not a joking matter} - the certificate is a prerequisite for many jobs, and hence is a very desirable attainment, though increasingly the better clerical jobs carry higher requirements

changer** [sązée, sanzé : 1. to change {fadé ála changer yángá tí ála : they will change their mouth, i.e. not do what they said} {mbi changer bɔngɔ́ pɛpɛ : I don't change clothes} {bɛ́ tí zo achanger : people's dispositions change}

2. to exchange, to change places {mɔ changer mbi : change places with me}

chapeau** [sapóo] N : a hat - syn. kpoto

chapelle** [sapɛ́ɛl] N : a chapel, a church building - also called da tí Nzapá - église is sometimes used of a large, elaborate building, especially among Catholics - less acculturated individuals sometimes call a church edifice mission

charbon** [sarbǫ́ǫ, sarvǫ́] N : charcoal - made locally by stacking sticks of certain kinds of wood, covering them with mud or clay, and burning - at the proper time, the fire is extinguished and the charcoal recovered - in traditional technology, charcoal was made by smiths and used by them to smelt and forge iron

charpentier** [sarpątyée, sarapandée, sarapánde] N : a carpenter, a cabinet-maker - many men acquire some skill at this craft, and work either as small contractors or manufacturers, making doors, shutters, and door and window frames, or furniture and wooden carrying boxes - for many, this is an important source of income supplementary to that derived from agriculture

chauffer** [sofée] V : to heat, especially food or water {tongana mafuta achauffer awe, mɔ zía oignon da : when the fat has heated, you put in onions}

chauffeur** [sofɛ́ɛr] N : the professional driver of a truck, bus, or car - chauffeur, truck driver - this is a remunerative and prestigious occupation

chicotte** [sikɔ́te] N : a whip, a scourge, often of leather - used formerly by slave drivers and other exploiters of the population - see also zaza

choisir** [swazíi] V : to choose, to select {ála ɛkɛ choisir gouvernement tí ála : they will choose their government} - syn. kamáta ... na pɔ́pɔ́, mű ... na pɔ́pɔ́

chrétien** [kretyɛ̨́ɛ̨] N : a Christian {chrétien alíngbi kánga lége na zo pɛpɛ : a Christian cannot close the way, i.e. create an obstacle, for a person} - in Protestant circles, used in a more general sense than membre, which indicates formal membership in good standing in the church - syn. mɛ́rɛngɛ́ tí Nzapá - Protestants sometimes use the artificial neologism wa má bɛ́

civiliser** [sivilizée, sevilizé] V : to be civilized, in European sense, to be acculturated {mbéní wále acivilisер : a certain woman has become civilized}

civiliser** N : acculturation, civilization {zo tí civiliser : a civilized person} - syn. service, opp. basánze, sauvage

clé** [klée, kéréré] N : 1. a lock - also called mamá tí clé
2. a key - also called mɛ́rɛngɛ́ tí clé

cochon** [kɔsɔ́ɔ, kosóo] N : 1. a domestic pig - pigs are not often raised, and when they are, they forage for themselves freely
2. a wild pig, especially a wart hog - syn. cochon tí gígí, cochon tí ngonda - a dark grey animal, while mbengé is a bush pig, a reddish animal

cochon tí gígí, cochon tí ngonda N : a wart hog - syn. *cochon* 2 - *mbengé* is a reddish bush pig

collectivité** [kɔlɛktivitée] N : a township, an administrative unit composed of a cluster of villages having common economic interests - since independence, this unit has replaced the *canton* - its *président* is elected, and persons exercising power are usually better educated than the former chiefs {oui, collectivité na bac acommencer tí gá nzoní : yes, the township by the ferry is beginning to prosper} - see also *district* - see *république* for the administrative organization of the country

collège** [kolɛ́ɛz] N : a secondary school - there are two kinds, a four-year school, and a six-year school leading to the baccalaureate - selection of entering students and elimination of failures are quite severe, so that few who begin school complete secondary school - *école* is the more general term for school

coller** [kɔlée] V : to thicken, as a sauce or paste, to congeal, to jell, to coagulate {kása ní acoller nzoní míngi : the sauce has thickened beautifully} - syn. *gbó*

coller** [kɔlée] N : a dance in the European style, with men and women dancing together and holding each other - syn. *malínga*, *nylon* - see also *dɔ́dɔ́*

commandant** [kɔmą̀dą̂ą] N : under colonial rule, a district or regional administrative officer {ála gá na lo na commandant, ála kánga lo : they brought him to the administrator and jailed him} - this term, whose use was popular rather than precise, was a carry-over from earlier days of military occupation and rule - see *république* for the administrative organization of the country

commander** [kɔmandée, kumandé] V : to command, to order, to rule {lo commander na kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́ : he rules in the village} {lo commander kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́ : he rules the village} {lo commander li tí sárángó samba : he commands the head of, i.e. directs, the making of beer} {lo commander mbi : he commanded me} commencer** [kɔmąsée, kumáse] V : to begin, to start, to commence, to initiate (aɛkɛ commencer ánde híɔ míngi : it will begin later on very soon) (kobɛ́la acommencer tí kái : the illness has begun to get well) (mafuta acommencer sí gígí : the fat has begun to render out)

concours** [kǫkúur] N : a competitive examination, as for entering secondary or technical school or obtaining a civil service position (ála sára concours, sí lo wara : they took an examination, and he succeeded) - a carry-over from French rule, competitive examinations are used extensively and loom large in the consciousness of the people, especially the younger generation

continuer** [kǫtinée] V : to continue, to persist (mɔ continuer tí sára kɔa : continue to do your work) (allez, í ngbá tí continuer : well then, we persist in continuing) - since this refers to action begun in the past and continuing through the present, it is syn. ngbá, while de refers to action not yet begun

coton** [kotǫ́ǫ, kotóo] N : cotton (tongana avɔ coton, sí fadé í kóé í bóngbi nginza ní tí to na mɔ : when they buy cotton, we'll all get the money together and send it to you) - this is the principal cash crop of the Central African Republic, especially in the northern two-thirds of the country - the annual buying of cotton from individual planters is strictly supervised by the government, and for many people it represents the only time in the year when they are in possession of an appreciable amount of cash - hence, it is a time of paying debts and bills - syn. tende

couleur** [kulɛ́ɛr] N : color (couleur ní aɛkɛ bingbá : its color is red) - the term is not very commonly used - the color system is as follows :
bingbá includes red, orange, reddish brown, and the more intense, deeper shades of yellow - reduplicated, it means very red
vɔkɔ́ means bladk, but also includes darker shades of blue, green, violet, and even brown as well as gray - reduplicated, it means pitch black
vurú means white, as well as pale or pastel tints of almost any color - reduplicated, it means bright white

any of the three basic terms may be modified by placing kété after it, which attenuates the color : bingbá kété, a less intense red or yellow - vokɔ́ kété, gray or grayish shades of other colors - vurú kété, light gray or grayish tints of other colors

among more acculturated speakers, French terms are in use, especially jaune, bleu, and vert

comparitive expressions are often used to indicate color {aɛkɛ tongana kugbé : it's like a leaf, i.e, green}

coup-de-poing** [kutubóo] N 1 : a fist {apíka kate tí lo na coup-de-poing : he hit his chest with his fist} - syn. ngobo

2. a blow with the fist {coup-de-poing ɔ́kɔ, lo tí na sése : one punch, and he fell down}

coup-de-poing** [kutubóo] N 2 : a kind of manioc {coup-de-poing só mbi sára tɛ́nɛ́ ní aɛkɛ gɔzɔ tí ngú : the coup-de-poing of which I was speaking is the water manioc} - see gɔzɔ

coupe-coupe** [kupekúpe, kupkúup] N : a machete {lo mú coupe-coupe, lo commencer tí dé kéké : he took his machete and began to chop down a tree} - this is an imported tool with a flat steel blade about fifteen to eighteen inches long and from two to four inches wide, the tip frequently curved back, and with a grip-shaped handle of wood - syn. kpangbara, nzenze - see also zɛmbɛ

croisement** [kurazemą́ą] N : a cross-roads - syn. sangbí/lége

cuisinier** [kwizinyée] N : a cook, almost invariably a man employed by Europeans or acculturated Africans - the cook is at the top of the pay and prestige rating among domestic employees, followed by the bɔ́i, while the kété bɔ́i is lowest

- D -

da N : 1. any kind of building, often with its use specified by a complement as in da tí kánga, da tí kɔ́li, da tí lengé, da tí magasin, da tí ngbanga, da tí Nzapá - the parts of a house are gɛ́rɛ́ tí da or kɔtɔ the foundation, tɛ́rɛ́ tí da the walls, li tí da the roof, yángá tí da the door

2. a house, a home {ágɛnɛ aɛkɛ gá na da tí mɔ míngi : many guests come to your house} { mbi ɛkɛ na mɛ́rɛngɛ́ ɔ́kɔ na da tí mbi : I have one child at home} - this last example may illustrate an extension of meaning to the sense of household

da Av : 1. there, in that place, into that place, on that place, from that place {í sára yáká, í lû yí da : we prepared a field, we planted things in it} {mɔ zía yíngɔ́ da : put salt into it} {place só babá asára kɔa da, í sára ngû míngi ká : the place in which father worked, we spent many years there} {fadé í dé bá da : we'll swear on it} {mbi sí gígí da : I've come out from it} - differs from ká and ge in expressing an element of anaphora, and in being broader in its locative reference

2. about it {tɛ́nɛ́ só mɔ húnda mbi da : the matter about which you asked me}

da bɛ́ V : 1. to remember {mbi da bɛ́ mbi, mbi da bɛ́ tí mbi : I remember} mbi da bɛ́ tí mbi na tɛ́nɛ́ ní : I remember the matter}

2. to remind {lo da bɛ́ ála, lo da bɛ́ tí ála : he reminded them} {lo da bɛ́ tí ála na tɛ́nɛ́ ní : he reminded them of that matter}

da gbí N : a fireman

dambá N : a tail, especially of an animal

dame-jeanne** [damzáan] N : a demi-john - a type of narrow-necked glass jug holding five to twenty quarts and covered with wicker-work - coming from Europe filled with wine, they are used extensively in the Central African Republic to carry and store oil, kerosene, and other liquids dará V : to incite an animal, usually a dog, to pursuit - to sick on a dog {lo dará mbo tí lo, atɛnɛ, čaˀ : he sicked on his dog, saying, čaˀ} - see čaˀ

da tí kánga N : a prison - syn. kánga N

da tí kɔ́li N : a man's house - used in speaking of a girl making a marriage final by going to her husband's home {mɔ goe na da ti kɔ́li awe pɛpɛ? : haven't you gone to a man's house, i.e. haven't you already got married?} - see mariage, goe na da tí kɔ́li

da tí lengé N : a building used for the lengé dance ceremonials

da tí magasin N : a store, a storehouse, a warehouse - syn. magasin

da tí ngbanga N : a court house, a building where judgments are rendered

da tí Nzapá N : a church building - see chapelle, église

davɛkɛ N : syphilis - see kobéla

dé N : cold {dé asára mbi míngi : cold is bothering me greatly} {dé asára míngi : cold is doing, i.e. it's very cold} {só ngú tí dé : that's cold water} - opp. wá

dé V 1 : to be or become cold {fadesó acommencer tí dé : now it's beginning to get cold} {fadé ngú adé : the water will be cold} {yí só adé míngi : this thing is very cold} - syn. gá dé, mú dé, wara dé - opp. mú wá - used in ndá adé

dé V 2 : to chop, to break or cut up with a chopping motion {lo dé kéké : he's chopping wood, or chopping down a tree} {mɔ dé yáká ngangó : break ground for a field with your strength} {mɔ dé tomate na ndó tí banc : chop the tomatoes on the chopping board} - see also fáa

dé V 3 : 1. to spit, to vomit {lo yuru na lo dé ngá na deux heures tí bí jusqu'a sept heures tí ndápéréré : he had dysentery and vomited from two o'clock at night until seven in the morning} - syn. dé na sése
2. to utter, esp. to utter a name, to name {adé ngá mɔ zo yę asɔ mbi yę : if they call you 'Who's that?' how can that bother me?} - syn. dé éré - see also sára tɛ́né - used in dé bá, dé éré, dé kíté, dé kɔ́ngɔ́

de V : to remain for the future, to remain to be done {yáká tí nzó ade : the corn field remains (to be planted)} {mbi de mérengé : I remained a child} {ade na ngangó tí lo : he remained with his strength, i.e. it had not yet left him} {ade na lége : he is still on the road, i.e. he has not arrived} { mbi de mbi mú kɔ́li pɛpɛ : I still haven't taken a husband} {mbi de tí mú kɔ́li pɛpɛ : I still haven't taken a husband} {ngú tí mbi ade títɛnɛ mbi mú wále : my years remain for me to take a wife, i.e. I'm not old enough to marry} - syn. ngbá, but while the time reference of de is primarily future, that of ngbá is primarily past - the contrast is illustrated by the following examples {mbi de tí mú kɔ́li pɛpɛ : I still haven't taken a husband} {mbi ngbá tí hú ponɔ́ : I'm still suffering} - the difference is not always clearly maintained, however

dé bá V : to swear, to utter an oath {í ɛkɛ dé bá da : we'll swear on it} - this is more formal and solemnly binding than zé

dede N : horn of animal {ála mú dede tí yąma só aɛkɛ na ngonda, aúlu : they took the horn of a wild animal and blew on it} - syn. nzá

dé éré V : to name, to utter a name {mbéní yąma aɛkɛ só adé éré ní, atɛnɛ woga : there is an animal who is called woga} {adé éré tí lo, lo yí da pɛpɛ : they said his name, but he didn't respond} - syn. dé V 3, éré V

dé kíté V : to object, to demur, to express doubt, to expostulate {mbi dé kíté na ála gbá : I expostulated with them in vain} {mais só Jésus atɛnɛ tɛ́nɛ́ awe, ála dé kíté ní pɛpɛ : but since Jesus had said it, they didn't object to it} - see also kę, sára tɛ́nɛ́, papa V

deko N : a rat or mouse - any animal of the genera Rattus and Mus {ángása na ádeko na kɔ́ndɔ só ála tɛnɛ áwále atɛ fadesó pɛpɛ só, í tɛ tí í fadesó kóé : goats and rats and chicken which they say women do not eat, we now eat them also}

dé kɔ́ngɔ́ V : to shout, to yell, to bark (as a dog) {mɔ ɛkɛ dé kɔ́ngɔ́ na li tí lo ngaŋgó míngi, mɔ tɛnɛ lo fáa yáká pɛpɛ : you yell at him very loud, you tell him not to cut down the garden} - see also toto, sára tɛ́nɛ́, éré ndo

déma, déma tɛ́rɛ́ V : to carry on, to act in an agitated manner, to lose self-control {zía toto, déma míngi tongasó pɛpɛ : stop crying, don't carry on so} {lo ɛkɛ déma tɛ́rɛ́, lo ɛkɛ toto : he was carrying on, he was crying}

démerder** [demɛrdée, demɛrdą́ą] V : to manage, to make out, to get along, to overcome obstacles by a display of ingenuity {fadé mbi kɔ́ɔ́ mbi démerder na lége tí yí tongasó, mbi wara bɔngɔ́ mbi yú ma : I'll make out also in this matter, I'll find clothes to wear}

dé na sése V : to vomit - syn. dé V 3

dengbe N : a small antelope (Cephalophus maxwellii) - see yąma tí ngonda

dénge V : to lean to one side {mɔ dénge na gɔ́ tí mɔ́ tongasó : you bend your neck to one side like that} - ba often suggests a more permanent and involuntary curvature, while kuku means to kneel

dépendre ** [depą́ą] V : to depend {tongana mɔ́ yí tí tɛ na gɔzɔ mɔ tɛ, tongana mɔ tí tí tɛ na fɔndɔ mɔ tɛ, só adépendre mɔ : if you want to eat it with manioc you do, if you want to eat it with plantains you do, that depends on you}

depuis** [depwíi, depíi, dipíi] C : 1. since, ever since {mbi kpé tɛ́nɛ́ tí tiri pɛpɛ, depuis dúngó tí mbi : I haven't run away from a fight ever since I was born} - both this usage and 2. below reflect the grammatical influence of French, and so can be called Gallicisms
2. in the meantime {depuis só, andáa, oignon abe awe : in the meantime, it turns out that the onions have browned}

depuis** Av : for quite a while {mbi hínga lo depuis : I've known him for quite a while} - the orientation is perfective, in contrast to ngbii and jusqu'á Av, which are neutral or imperfective - that is, depuis relates a past event to the present

député** [depitée] N : a member of the assemblée législative, elected by universal adult suffrage from his constituency

descendre** [desą́ą] V : to go down, to descend {wę̌ ní aɛkɛ descendre na sése : the (molten) iron goes down to the ground (from inside the furnace)} {yąma tí ndúzú adescendre tí yǫ́ ngú na sése : aerial animals come down to drink at ground level} - opp. monter

deux heures** [dezɛ́ɛr] N : early afternoon, specifically the time to return to work after the noon break - see heure 5 for the divisions of the day

devant** [devą́ą, davą́ą] N : the front of something - used in the expression na devant tí, meaning in front of, ahead of {í goe fáa ngú na devant : we crossed the river out ahead} {tongana mbi goe na devant ... : if I go in front ...} {mbi zía na devant tí lo : I put if in front of him}

diki* V : to winnow grain, termites,etc. - syn. pɛ́ 2

díkɔ V : to count, to enumerate, to reckon {mɔ díkɔ na mbi, fadé mbi fúta na lo : tell me how much, I'll pay him} {mbi língbi tí díkɔ ahúnzi pɛpɛ : I could enumerate them but they wouldn't be exhausted}
2. to read {mbi yí mbéní mbɛ́tí só mɔ lɛkɛ tí díkɔ : I want a certain paper which you prepared for reading} {mbi ɛkɛ díkɔ éré tí ála : I'll read your names} - syn. díkɔ mbɛ́tí
3. to pray to, to consult worshipfully {mbi díkɔ Nzapá da : I prayed to God about it} - syn. sambéla

díkɔ mbɛ́tí V : to read {mbi díkɔ mbɛ́tí na Sango : I read in Sango} - syn. díkɔ 2 - see sára mbɛ́tí means to write, píka mbɛ́tí means to type or print

dimanche** [dimą́ąs, dimą́se, dimási] N : 1. Sunday
2. a week {mɔ hú tɛ́rɛ́ tí mɔ dimanche otá : rest for three weeks} - less frequently, semaine is used - see lá for the dating system

diminuer** [diminée, deminée] V : to diminish, to decrease {yá tí mbi ac[illegible]nuer awe : my stomach (swelling) has gone down} {yí tí kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́ tí í aɛkɛ diminuer awe : the things of our village have diminished} {mɔ diminuer na mbi ngéré ní ma : why don't you decrease the price for me!}

district** [distríkte] N : before independence, an administrative unit intermediary between the canton and the région, and governed by an administrator called chef de district or commandant - since independence, the district has been renamed sous-préfecture, and the administrative officers are African - see république for the administrative organization of the country

dole N : the African elephant {ábambinga akpé dole pɛpɛ, ála ɛkɛ na yoró tí dole : the Pygmies don't run away from elephants, they have charms for elephants} - see pɛ́mbɛ́ tí dole, yą̧ma tí ngonda

dondo N : the vagina

doucement** [dusumą́ą, dusumá] Av : 1. softly, gently {mɔ sára doucement : do it gently}

2. quietly {mɔ goe ká doucement doucement, mɔ wara lo na kéké : if you go over there very quietly, you'll find it in the tree}

3. slowly {fadé kobéla ní akái doucement : the sickness will get well slowly} - syn. yeke yeke

dɔ́ N : an ax, a hatchet - the indigenous tool has a triangular iron blade about six to eight inches long and one and a half inches wide across the cutting edge, set into a club-like handle about eighteen inches long - see zɛmbɛ for a list of cutting tools

dɔ́ V : 1. to kick - used in dɔ́ gɛ́rɛ́

2. to dance - used with either dɔ́dɔ́ or the name of a particular dance {ála ɛkɛ dɔ́ ganzá : they're dancing the circumcision dance}

3. to shake, to tremble - especially in bɛ́ ... dɔ́, tɛ́rɛ́ ... dɔ́

4. to tread, to mix with the feet, as the mud for making sun-dried brick {mɔ dɔ́ pɔtɔpɔ́tɔ ní : tread, mix the mud} - see tourner

dɔ́dɔ́ N : a dance {mará tí dɔ́dɔ́ ndé ndé aɛkɛ na kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́ tí mbi : there are various dances in my village} { ála dɔ́ dɔ́dɔ́ ní : they danced the dance} - the names of specific dances include : malínga or coller N or nylon, a dance in the European style, with men and women holding each other, ganzá, the circumcision dance, lengé, an initiation dance, and sumári, a dance associated with a male secret society

dɔdɔrɔ* N : a partridge

dó gɛ́rɛ́ V : 1. to stamp on someone's foot {lo gá lo dó gɛ́rɛ́ tí mɛ́rɛngɛ́ só : he came and stamped on the child's foot}

2. to stub the toe, to stumble {lo dó gɛ́rɛ́ tí lo : he stubbed his toe, he stumbled}

3. by extension, to err, to make a mistake

dola N : any kind of moth

dóngó bɛ́ : see bɛ́ ... dó

dongó, dongó yongóro N : 1. prob. a generic term for mucilaginous foods, e.g. the seed of an uncultivated tree (Beilschmidia ngriki A. Chev.) which is made into a mucilaginous condiment

2. by extension, slimy, viscous, mucilaginous {aɛkɛ dongó yóngóro tongana tɛ́rɛ́ tí susu : it's slimy like the body of a fish} {gúsá só ɛkɛ kugbé, aɛkɛ dongó dongó : gúsá is a kind of leaf, (cooked) it's very mucilaginous}

dɔrɔkɔ V : to butcher an animal, specifically to cut it into pieces {ála dɔrɔkɔ yama ní : they butchered the animal} - see fáa

dú V : to give birth - used equally of both parents {wálɛ tí mo adú : your wife has given birth} {mbi dú mɛ́rɛngɛ́ : I have born a child} {adú mbi na Carnot : (they) bore me in Carnot, i.e. I was born in Carnot} {depuis dúngó tí mbi ... : since my birth ...}

dú N : a hole, a gap {mbi zí dú ní : I dug the hole{ - used in dú hɔ́, dú ngú

du V 1 : to tie {adu kámba na gɔ́ tí woga : he tied a cord around the neck of the antelope} - see kánga V, tíngbi

du V 2 : to be, to exist, to be present, to sit, to dwell {lukundú aɛkɛ du tongana directeur tí mo : the witchcraft spirit exists as your master} {tongana mbi na babá tí mbi í du na tɛ́rɛ́ tí wá, lo ake sára [illegible] : when my father and I were sitting by the fire, he used to talk} {fadɛsó, í du na li tí kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́ tí í : now, we are at the head of our country} - du is not a simple copula like ɛkɛ, but is much more static than [illegible] and ngbá, which are specifically time-oriented - see also dutí 2 and 3

- used in ádu ní - syn. lángó 3

dú hɔ̧́ N : nostril

duma N : beer made from honey and water {mɔ hínga malin, sí mɔ sára samba, tongana duma : you have the know-how to make beer, like duma}- see samba for a list of alcoholic beverages

dúngó N : birth - see dú V

dú ngú N : a well - wells are used only rarely in a land where most areas are abundantly watered by streams and rivers that flow all year - the Kąrę of Bozoum are noted for their well-digging skills

dú sɛmbɛ́ N : a deep dish - see sɛmbɛ́

dutí V : 1. to sit, to sit up, to sit down {mɔ báa lo dutí na li tí kéké, mɔ kpɔ lo : if you see it sitting in the top of a tree, you shoot it} {mɛ́rɛngɛ́ alutí tongana só ká : the child sits up like that one there} {lo dutí na sése : he sat down} {mɔ dutí, mɔ kú lo : sit down and wait for him}
2. to stay, to remain, to live, to dwell {kɔ́li só ayí tí dutí, manière aɛkɛ pɛpɛ : this man wanted to stay, but there was no way} {mbi dutí na lo : I stayed with him} {adutí na tɛ́rɛ́ tí mɔ : he stayed with you} {tɛrɛ adutí na pɛkɔ́ tí gángó tí lo lángó ɔ́kɔ : Tɛrɛ stayed away after he (left) only one day} {í dutí na ndo só : we stayed here} {tɛ́nɛ́ ní adutí na bɛ́ tí í : the matter remains in our livers, i.e. it has not been cleared up} - see ngbá, du 2, lángó 3
3, to be, to exist, in a stative rather than a copulative sense {mɔ dutí missionnaire na ála ? : are you their missionary?} - see du 2
4. to be idle {mbi dutí, mbi sára kusára pɛpɛ : I'm idle, I don't work} {mɔ dutí séngé tongasó, aɛkɛ nzoní pɛpɛ : for you to remain idle like this is not good} - in general, there is no particular stigma attached to being out of work or idle
5. to co-exist harmoniously {fadé í dutí kɔ́ɔ́ lége ɔ́kɔ na yá tí kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́ : we'll all live together in the village} {ála dutí tongana íta : they live together like brothers}
6. to experience {mamá tí mbi adutí na vundú : my mother is experiencing

2

bitterness} - see báa finóo

dutí ... kpó V : to be quiet, to be tranquil, to be at peace {ála dutí fadesó kpó, ála má téné : now all of you be quiet and listen to the matter}

dú tí mɛ́ N : earhole - see mɛ́ N

dutí nzoní V : 1. to prosper, in a passive or negative sense, to be in a state of contentment, peace, and sufficiency {í dutí nzoní na lé tí ámbá tí í : we are all right in the presence of our compatriots} 2. this phrase is used as a parting greeting by the person leaving to the person staying {dutí nzoní o : so long, good luck!} - the person staying behind says goe nzoni - see bara V, bara N

- E -

école ** [ekɔ́ɔl, lekɔ́ɔl, lekɔ́r] N : a school, of whatever kind or level {mbi sára école, mbi goe na école : I go to school} - most frequently refers to elementary schools, which have a six-year curriculum in French leading to the certificat d'etudes primaires élémentaires - other schools include école tí catéchisme, or religious catechetical schools conducted in vernacular languages by Christian missions, école coranique or Muslim religious schools, and the collège, or secondary school

église** [eglíiz] N : 1. the church, in the sense of an organization or congregation of members {lo ɛkɛ membre tí église : he is a member of the church}
2. a church building {gá í goe na église : come on, let's go to church} this usage is more prevalent among Catholics, and is used to refer to a large, permanent structure - a more general term is da tí Nzapá, while chapelle frequently refers to a small, subsidiary meeting place or building - less acculturated individuals also refer to such a building as mission

eh bien** [ebyɛ̨, ábɛ, ápɛ] C : well then, so then {eh bien akpɔrɔ na ní fadesó ngbii : so then you boil it now for a while} {tongana lo sí ká awe, eh bien áwále só kóé agá así : when he had arrived there, then all those women arrived}

emmerder** [mɛrdée] V : to annoy greatly, to bother, to pester {kobéla tí wále sí aemmerder lo míngi : the illness of a woman bothers her a lot} {mɛ́rɛngɛ́ aɛkɛ emmerder mɔ na lége tí sára kusára : the child pesters you while you work} - be, mú yángá and nzɛ́, imply an idea of discouragement and defeat consequent on the annoyance which is absent from emmerder

encore** [ą̨kɔ́ɔr, aŋkóro, aŋgóro] Av : 1. again {mbi goe na ngonda encore tí gí yí tí mbi : I went again to the bush to hunt for my things} -

syn. mbéní

2. still, yet (angbá encore yí míngi : there remain still many things)

3. next (encore, íta tí mbi akúí : next, my brother died) - syn. pεkó ní

4. in correlation with mbéní : still more (tongana mɔ zía mbéní vin da encore ... : if you put in still more wine ...)

5. in negative sentences : any more (mbi yí tí goe na place tí lo encore pεpε : I don't want to go to his place any more) - syn. mbéní

éré N : a name (ála kú tí má éré tí ála : wait to hear your names) (tongana zo só adé éré tí mbi, fadé mbi tε kóbe tí lo : if someone can say my name, I'll eat her food) (éré ní lengé : its name is lengé) - used in dé éré

éré V : 1. to call, to summon, to invite (mɔ éré ázo kóé, títεnε ála gá : call everyone, so that they'll come) (ála éré kɔ́li ní na bureau : they summoned the man to the office)

2. to name, to call (a name) (ála éré lo gí Serekunga : they just called him Serekunga) (í éré tí í, í tεnε, rongo : we call it, saying, rongo) - syn. dé éré

3. demand, request, call for (babá tí mbi akúí awe, na lége yę sí lo éré kóbe na mbi : my father is dead, how can he demand food of me?) - syn. húnda

éré na mabɔ́kɔ V : to beckon with the hand to summon someone - the gesture is usually made with the entire hand, palm down or out, in a quick grasping motion not involving the thumb - pέ 1 is a more general term for signalling with the hand or waving

éré ndo V : to call out (tongasó kɔ́li só aéré ndo na pεkɔ́ tí lo gbá : so the man called out after him in vain) - toto and dé kɔ́ngɔ́ lack the specific element of summoning someone which is present in éré ndo - see also sára tέné

éré ngú V : to dam up a stream and bail out the enclosed area with gourds so as to catch fish - the name of a specific stream may be substituted for the word ngú (mɔ́ goe éré ngú sí mɔ fáa susu : you go and dam up the stream so as to kill fish} {ála ɛkɛ éré Kongo sí ála mú susu : they dammed up the Kongo stream so as to catch fish} - see gi susu, ngbingbi

éré tɛ́nɛ́ nzoní na ndó V : to bless {aéré tɛ́nɛ́ nzoní na ndó lo : he blessed him}

et** [e] C : and - used most often in French numeral phrases, where it is the only connective (see ɔ́kɔ), and also in other borrowed phrases - syn. na, et puis, mais

et puis** [epwí, epii] C : and then, next - a sequential connective used to join two sentences - syn. na and mais are both more frequent, while et in this usage is much less frequent

- ɛ -

ɛkɛ [ɛkɛ, kɛ] V : 1. to be - the simple copula of equation or attribution {lo ɛkɛ zo : he is a person} {lo ɛkɛ kótá míngi : he is very big} {aɛkɛ dé míngi : it's very cold} du implies the idea of existence or presence, while ɛkɛ approaches being a purely grammatical word

2. used with other verbs, usually to imply a sort of progressive action {mbi ɛkɛ tɛ kóbe : I'm eating} {í ɛkɛ kpé lɔ́rɔ́ : we're running} - but in this usage ɛkɛ seems often to be completely empty

3. used in the greeting formula : mɔ ɛkɛ - see bara N

ɛkɛ nzoní V : to be good - used in an "impersonal" sense in making suggestions, with a sentence following {aɛkɛ nzoní mɔ sára só : it is good for you to do this}

- F -

fa V : to show, to demonstrate, to explain, to reveal, to teach {amú nginza, afa na lo : he took the money and showed it to him} {mɔ fa na mbi manière tí kɔa : demonstrate to me the knack of this work} {mbi ɛkɛ fa na mɔ nouvelle : I'm telling you the news} {mbi fa yángá tí Sango na mɔ : I'm teaching you the Sango language} {mbi fa na lo tí goe da : I taught him how to go there} {fadé mbi fa na ála kɔa tí ndao : I'll explain to you the work of a smith} {lo fa na ála éré tí lo : he revealed to them his name} - where the idea of verbal communication is uppermost, tɛnɛ is syn. - see also sára tɛ́nɛ́ - used in fa lége, fa mbɛ́tí, fa na gígí, fa ndá tí, fa tɛ́nɛ́

fáa [fáa, fá] V : 1. to cut, to cut off, to cut down, to cut up {mɔ fáa ngunzá na ngonda : you cut greens in the bush} {lo fáa kámba na gɔ́ tí mbo : he cut the cord off the neck of the dog} {ála fáa péré : they cut the grass} {mɔ fáa yá tí oignon : you cut up the onions} {lo fáa yąma ní : he cut up the meat} - fáa is opposed to kpɔ, which means to pierce, puncture, or stab - dɔrɔkɔ means to butcher an animal - súru means to split, to cut lengthwise, as along the grain, while fáa suggests cutting across the grain - dé V 2 means to chop, as a tree - three of the above terms are found in the example which follows {í commencer tí dɔrɔkɔ yąma ní, tí fáa, tí súru yá tí lo : we began to butcher the animal, to cut it up, to split the abdomen}
2. to cross, as a river, a road, etc. {í fáa ngú encore : we crossed the river again} {ála fáa lége ní : they crossed the road}
3. to break, as a pot, a rope, etc. {gérɛ́ tí lo afáa : his leg is broken} {lo fáa kóngbá tí yá tí da kíríkiri : he broke up the furnishings of the house every which way} {ressort tí kutukutu só afáa : this car spring broke} - kúngbi means to break by bending, as a stick
4. to kill {kobéla só anínga tí fáa zo pɛpɛ : this sickness does not delay in killing people} {í fáa dole ní : we killed the elephant} {ála

commencer tí tiri, ála fáa tɛ́rɛ́ : they began to fight, they killed each other - or, they cut their bodies, see sense 1} - syn. fáa mɛ́nɛ́
5. used in nzala ... fáa

fáa ganzá V : to circumcise, to excise {ála fáa ganzá ngú na ngú : they circumcise every year} - the physical operation is performed on both sexes at the time of the rites of passage, as an essential part of these rites - see also ganzá, dɔ́dɔ́

fáa mɛ́nɛ́ V : to kill {tongana mɔ fáa mɛ́nɛ́ tí zo mɔ wara ngbanga : if you shed human blood you will be judged} - see fáa

fáa ngbanga V : to judge, to adjudicate, to condemn, to sentence {ála fáa ngbanga na li tí lo awe : they have already judged him} {mbi fáa ngbanga ní na ála pɛpɛ : I will not adjudicate the matter for you} - see ngbanga

fáángó ngbanga N : judgment, act of judging - from fáa ngbanga

fáángó yáká N : act of making a garden - from fáa yáká

fáa yáká V : to make a garden or field, to be a farmer {giriri, kɔ́li afáa yáká, mais wále afáa yáká ɔ́kɔ pɛpɛ, mais fadesó, wále afáa yáká kóé : formerly, men made gardens, but women didn't at all, but now women make gardens also} - see also dé V 2

fáa yá tí V : to cut up into parts or portions - kángbi yá tí means to divide into parts without specifying the manner

fa baba V : to show off - syn. fa tɛ́rɛ́ - see baba, fandara

fadé Av : 1. after the verb : soon, quickly, fast {mɔ sára réponse na mbi fadé pɛpɛ : you didn't send me an answer soon} {ahɔ́ fadé na pɛkɔ́ tí midi : he left quickly right after noon} - distinguished from ánde by expressing the idea of speed, and from híɔ by expressing the idea of a time lapse
2. before the verb : future time marker {fadé mbi gbɔ́ mabɔ́kɔ tí lo : I'll take his hand} {fadé mbi kírí ánde : I'll come soon}
3. partially reduplicated : immediately, right away {fafadé awe : it'll be done right away} - see fadesó 2

fadesó [fadisó, faesó, faasó, fasó] Av : 1. now, just now, right now - used either pre-clausally or post-verbally {í má húngó ní fadesó míngi pɛpɛ : we don't hear of the fame of it now very much} {fadesó, mbi ɛkɛ mú na lo ánde congé : I'll give him a vacation soon} 2. partially reduplicated [fafadesó, faefaesó, fafasó] : right away, right now, immediately {mbi ɛkɛ díkɔ éré tí ála fafadesó : I'll read your names immediately} {mɔ éré mbi, fafadesó mbi ɛkɛ sí na mɔ : call me, immediately I'll come to you} - this expression relates rather to the present than to the immediate future, as does fadé 3

fa ... lége V : to explain, demonstrate how to do something {lo fa na mɔ lége tí fáa yáká : he demonstrated to you how to make a garden} {akɛ tí fa lége na mbi : he refused to show me how} - syn. fa 1, though this is more specific

fa mbétí V : to teach reading and writing

famille** [famíi] N : 1. a family, either in the nuclear or extended sense 2. a member of one's family - can be used in the plural {mɔ hûnda áfamille tí mɔ, mɔ yí tí mú wále : you ask the members of your family (saying), you want to get married} {mbéní famille ade, aaider mbi pɛpɛ : no member of my family has yet helped me} - this usage is much more common in Sango than 1 - the kinship system is as follows : among the members of one's generation, íta refers to one's siblings or to the children of parents' siblings - if it is necessary to distinguish between siblings and cousins, one specifies full siblings by the phrases babá ɔ́kɔ, mamá ɔ́kɔ, and half-siblings by the phrases babá ɔ́kɔ, mamá aɛkɛ ndé - if sex must be distinguished, íta tí kɔ́li is brother, íta tí wále is sister - kótá íta is an older sibling, kótá zo 2 means one's older brother, while ngambe is one's younger sibling - in the preceding generation, babá is one's biological father, as well as his brothers - kɔ̃tá babá is father's older brother, kété babá is his younger brother - the plural ábabá designates collectively the paternal clan - mamá is one's biological mother, as well as her sisters - kótá mamá is mother's older sister, kété mamá is her younger sister - the plural ámamá designates collectively the maternal clan - aú and kɔ́ya are syn. terms for mother's brothers, but can also be applied as terms of respect to mature men - ómba is father's sister - in the next ascending generation, kaká refers to the grandfather on either side - tará and áta are syn. terms for the grandmother on either side, but áta is also used by the grandmother in speaking or referring to grandchildren - both terms are used to show respect to an older woman - kótará is an ancestor, and the plural is usually used in a collective sense - four affinal relationships are designated by special terms : wále is wife, kɔ́li is husband - kógará is one's father-in-law or other male in-law, especially one's wife's brother - kógará can also refer to the reciprocal relationship, i.e. to one's son-in-law - wógara is used by a man in speaking or referring to his daughter-in-law - mɛ́rɛngɛ́ is used in speaking or referring to one's children and grandchildren, whose sex can be specified by tí kɔ́li, tí wále

fa na gígí V : to publish, to reveal publicly - used of making public the news of a betrothal

fa ndá V : to explain thoroughly, to make clear the meaning (mɔ fa ndá tí tɛ́nɛ́ ní na mbi : explain the point of the matter to me) - this is more specific than fa 1

fandara N : pride, vanity conceit - syn. baba

fángó baba N : showing off - from fa baba

fa tɛ́nɛ́ V : to proclaim, to preach (lo fa tɛ́nɛ́ tí Nzapá : he preached the word of God) - this is more specific than fa 1

fa tɛ́rɛ́ V : to show off - syn. fa baba - see tɛ́rɛ́ 3

fatiguer** [fatigée] V : to tire, to weary (mbi fatiguer, gbikí así gígí na tɛ́rɛ́ tí mbi : I'm weary, sweat has come out on my body) (lo ɛkɛ fatiguer na pɛkó tí mɔ : he is wearing you out (following) after you) - syn. wɔ́kɔ, nzɛ́, though fatiguer suggests a physical weariness more than nzɛ́

fête** [fɛ́ɛt] N : a holiday, especially a legal or religious celebration (fête tí indépendance : independence day) - matánga is a more general term for any celebration

fɛ̨ [fɛ̨, fɛ́ɛ] N : an odor, good or bad {fɛ̨ tí kóbe só anzɛrɛ : the odor of this food is pleasing}

finí N : life {lo mú yą̧ma ní na finí ní : he caught the animal alive}

finí An : new, fresh {aɛkɛ̨ tongana mbéní finí yí : it is like a new thing} {andáa mbéní da agbí na finí kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́ : it turned out that some houses burned in the new village} {Nzapá amú mbéní finí mɛ́rɛngɛ́ na mbi : God gave me a new child} {finí bɔngɔ́ : new clothes} {finí susu : fresh fish} - opp. ngbéré, in speaking of things only - kúrú in speaking of dried fish

finóo N : pain, suffering, especially of a physical nature - used in báa finóo - pási can also refer to the same thing, though the emphasis is on the suffering of burdensome toil - mawa suggests pitiable misery or wretchedness - ponɔ́ can suggest an element of persecution, as can sáná - vundú refers primarily to the bitter and resentful reaction to suffering of any sort, as presumed to proceed from some malevolent personal source - ngangó can mean violence, or the suffering occasioned by violence

fó N : a co-worker, a work companion - hence, a friend {fɔnɔ na yángá da tí áfó mɔ míngi ahɔ̨ pɛpɛ : don't gad about to the houses of your friends too much} - see camarade for syn.

forcer** [fɔrsée] V : 1. to compel, to oblige, to force
2. with attenuated meaning : to exert great moral pressure or persuasion, so as to make it difficult to refuse {zo aforcer mbi, sí mbi kɛ̨ : a man exerted great pressure, but I refused} - see also pousser

foutu** [fúti] V : to ruin, to spoil, to destroy, to lay waste, to waste, to render useless, even momentarily, to be ruined {sése aɛkɛ na mabɔ́kɔ tí mɛ́rɛngɛ́, afoutu bɔ́ngɔ́ tí zo só : there was dirt on the child's hands, he ruined this man's clothes} {ábákoyá afoutu kóbe ní : the baboons ruined the crop} {zo ahánda mɔ tí foutu nginza tí mɔ : people entice you to waste your money} {yí só afoutu mɛ́ tí mbi, aɛkɛ camion :

the thing that made my ears useless, i.e. that obstructed my hearing, was a truck} {lé tí mbi agá tí foutu : my eyes are beginning to give out} {ápont afoutu na sése tí Bangui ndé ndé : various bridges have been ruined in the area of Bangui} - syn. buba - fú suggests spoilage by decomposition resulting in a bad odor

fondɔ N : a plantain - a large, starchy, non-sweet banana used as a staple by many of the inhabitants of the forest zone of the Central African Republic (Musa paradisiaca sapientum) - the fruit is dried and pounded into a meal which is boiled, fried, or steamed - the sweet banana is bulée

fɔnɔ V : to walk about, to stroll, to wander, to travel, to gad about {lége tí fɔnɔ na camion aɛkɛ ngangó : it's hard to travel by truck} {í fɔnɔ encore, tí gí dole : we walked about again to hunt for elephants} {kobéla tí lo awe, lo fɔnɔ nzoni : his illness is over, he gets around all right} {wále ayí kɔ́li tí lo afɔnɔ pɛpɛ : a woman doesn't want her husband to gad about} {ála kpɔ ámbéní kéké na li tí haricot tí mú kéké ní na ndúzú, sí afɔnɔ na sése pɛpɛ : they plant sticks above the bean plants to keep the stems up so they don't wander or drag over the ground} - tambéla is a more general synonym

franc** [frą̂, fráŋka, faráŋga] N : a franc, the basic unit of money in the Central African Republic {lo vɔ̌ tí vingt francs : she bought twenty francs' worth} - in counting francs, French numerals are usually used - in counting the páta, or unit of five francs, the Sango numerals are usually used - most prices in retail commerce are multiples of five francs, and the one- and two-franc pieces are rarely used - as a result, money is frequently counted in páta units - vingt francs is the same as páta osió, i.e. twenty francs is the same as four páta's - see nginza, bon N, payer, fúta, mɔsɔrɔ, ngéré, all expressing financial concepts

fú V : to sew {mɔ vɔ vurú bɔngɔ́, mɔ fú, lá ní só mɔ kúí ála mú alú na mɔ : buy some white cloth and sew it, the day you die they will take and bury you in it}

fų́ V : 1. to smell - used of both good and bad odors, though unmodified it usually refers to a bad odor {lé ní afų́ fų́ngó : the seeds have a strong odor} {yambo afų́ nzoní : perfume smells good}
2. by extension, to rot so as to smell bad, to decompose {kɔ́á ní afų́ : the corpse was decomposed} {atúku makongó da ayɔ́rɔ nzoní, ngbangatí ála fų́ : you dump in the caterpillars and fry them well, so as to prevent their rotting} - syn. foutu 4

fúfú N : lung, lungs

fú kóbe : to break off a piece of food, specifically the staple mush or dough, and give it to someone {asára kóbe, afú tí í ámɛ́rɛngɛ́ : they made food, and broke off and gave us children ours}

fúku N : flour, meal, fine powder {fúku tí gɔzɔ : manioc flour} {mɔ píka fúku tí sindi ní : you pound the sesame meal} {mɔ píka kakó ní, mɔ sára fúku ní : you pound the pods, you make the meal} - the term applies to European wheat flour, corn meal, etc., as well as to granulated sugar, face powder, etc. - mbíó refers to a special red cosmetic powder made from the bark of a certain tree and used to adorn the body in connection with certain dances - mbúlú is used to refer to gunpowder, and also to powdered ash used for medicinal purposes - mbutu is sand - pupu sése is dust

fúlu N : froth, foam, especially that coming from the mouth {mbi báa fúlu así gigí na yángá tí lo : I saw froth coming out of his mouth}

fúngó N : smell, odor, process of producing an odor - from fų́

fúru V : to mix or work in water with the hands so as to produce a homogeneous mass or liquid - for syn. see tourner - mɛ́ kóbe means to mix ingredients with an implement

fúta V : to pay, as wages, price, pay for {lo fúta mbi ɔ́kɔ pɛpɛ : he didn't pay me at all} {fadé mbi fúta na lo : I'll pay him} {aɛkɛ kusára tí fútángó na nzɛ : it's work to be paid by the month} {í mú kóngbá na France, France afúta ní : we give goods to France, France pays for them} - syn. payer - see also vɔ, ká, nginza, ngéré

fúta N : 1. wages, salary, pay - ngéré means price or value 2. by extension : recompense, retribution, consequences, results affecting the doer of something (tɛnɛtí sioní tí mɔ laá, sí fúta ní agá na mɔ : it's because of your wickedness that the retribution is coming to you)

fúta kulá V : to avenge, to retaliate - see kulá

fúti V : see foutu

- G -

gá V : 1. to come {ála gá na tɛ́rɛ́ tí mbi : come alongside me, on my side} {gá na ndo só : come here} {ála gá tí lɛkɛ kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́ tí í : they have come to improve our country} - opp. goe 1 - used in gá na, gá na pɛkɔ́

2. to arrive - often with awe following {tongana mɔ gá awe, mɔ sukúla ngú : when you have arrived, you wash up} - syn. sí V - opp. goe 3, lóndó

3. to be about to do something {tongana mɔ gá tí tɔ́ngɔ́ ní ... : when you are about to cook it ...} {lé tí mbi agá tí foutu : my eyes are about to go bad} {mamá tí mbi agá tí goe : my mother was about to go} - syn. gá ndurú

4. to begin to do something {yá tí mbi agá, adiminuer : my abdomen began to go down, i.e. after being swollen} - opp. zía tí

5. followed by a noun adjunctive or a noun designating a kind of person : to become {gá ngangó : become strong} {gá sioní : become bad} {gá kótá : become big, grow up} {gá kɔ́li : become a man} {gá tongana kɔ́li : become as a man} - cf. gá nzoní, gá ngú

6. with certain nouns denoting qualities or states, either gá, wara, or mú can be used {agá dé, awara dé, amú dé : it became cold} {agá wá, awara wá, amú wá : it became hot} - see gá dé, gá wá, mú dé, mú wá, wara dé, wara wá

7. there are three structural degrees of closeness in the relationship of gá to a following verb having the same subject : (a) the subject is repeated with each verb - (b) only the subject marker a- appears with the second verb - (c) the two verbs are immediately joined - these grammatical degrees, strongly modified by the semantic relationship of gá and the other verb, determine whether the two verbs denote distinct actions, closely-related actions, a single complex action, or even a single simple action {lo gá, lo báa mbi : he came and saw me} {mbi gá mbi tíngbi na lo : I came and joined him} {i gá

í píka lo : we up and hit him} {mamá agá amú mbi : mother came and took me} {áwále só kóé agá así : those women came-arrived} {lo na zɔ vɔkɔ́ agá bóngbi ɔ́kɔ : he and the black man joined together} - see also goe 5

gá dé V : to become cold - syn. mú dé, ware dé, dé V 1

gagner** [ganyée, gąyée] V : to win, to conquer, to vanquish, to beat, to defeat {lo gagner, lo ɔ́kɔ, lo wara réponse ní : he won, he alone, he found the answer} {ála kpé lɔ́rɔ́, sí lo gagner : they ran, and he won} {lo ɛkɛ gagner áíta tí lo : he defeated his brothers} - syn. hɔ̨́ V 2

galá N : 1. a market, a market-place {mbi goe tí gí kóbe na galá : I'm going to look for food at the market} - syn. marché
2. a market town, a commercial center {lo goe na galá na Bangui : he went to the commercial center in Bangui, i.e. downtown} {Bossangoa aɛkɛ kôtá galá : Bossangoa is a big commercial town} {Sango tí galá : urban standard Sango}

gá na V : 1. with nouns denoting objects and sometimes persons : to bring {gá na kóngbá ní : bring the merchandise} {lo gá na mbi na docteur : he brought me to the doctor} - opp. goe na 1 - see also kírí na
2. with nouns denoting persons : to accompany {agá na mbéní camarade tí lo : he accompanied one of his friends} - it is not always easy to distinguish these two senses - the nature of the noun and the rest of the context will distinguish this verb from gá 1 followed by a locative complement introduced by na - see also goe na 2 - see also kírí na

gana V : to stone someone or something, to pelt with stones {agana zo na têmɛ́ : they pelted a man with stones} - bólo implies the throwing of a single accurately-aimed stone

gá na pɛkɔ́ V : to follow {mbi ɛkɛ gá na pɛkɔ́ tí mɔ : I'm following you} - gá na pɛkɔ́ emphasized the one being followed as the goal, while goe na pɛkɔ́ emphasizes the point of departure - mú pɛkɔ́ suggests a close relationship between leader and follower - tomba suggests the pursuit of someone or something that is fleeing, or something that has no knowledge of being followed, so as to catch up

gándá N : a wasp

gá ndurú V : 1. to approach, to come near (mɔ gá ndurú na ndo tí pont : you approach the place of the bridge)
2. to be about to do something (lo gá ndurú tí kúí : he was about to die) - syn. gá 3

gángárá [gángárá, kángálá] N : the framework of a thatched roof, or the various components of it (mbi fáa gángárá, mbi kánga na ndó tí kéké tí da : I cut (the parts of the roof) and tied them on top of the house poles) (ála kánga sɔsɔngɔ na da, sí ála zía péré na ndó ní, ála dé éré ní gángárá : they fasten a kind of reed on the house, before they put on the grass, and they call (the structure) gángárá) - see li tí da

gángó N : 1. arrival, coming of, act of coming - from gá
2. used to reinforce gá (mbi gá gángó : I really came)

ganzá N : circumcision, excision - also, the entire set of customs surrounding the rites of passage for both sexes, including special camps, a special dance, the physical operation, instruction in adult roles, and many other practices - this complex of ceremonies constitutes one of the most durable and functional current survivals of traditional ways (ála ɛkɛ dɔ́ ganzá : they dance the circumcision dance) - see also fáa ganzá, dɔ́dɔ́

gá nzoní V : 1. to recover from illness (docteur azía yoró na tɛ́rɛ́ tí lo, sí agá nzoní : the doctor put medicine on his body, so that he recovered) - syn. ça va, guérir, kobéla ... kái
2. of a community or institution : to prosper, in a dynamic sense (kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́ tí í agá nzoní awe : our village is prospering now) - dutí nzoní 1 is more passive
3. see bɛ́ ... gá nzoní

gara V : to flow - said of blood flowing in the veins {mamá tí mɛ́rɛngɛ́ ní ayǫ́ tongasó, sí mɛ́nɛ́ agara lo míngi, tɛ́rɛ́ tí lo awara ngangó, sí ngú tí mɛ agá míngi : the infant's mother drinks this, so that much blood flows in her (veins), her body becomes strong, and much milk comes} - sá means to pour, sɔa to flow as a river, and yuru to leak or seep

garde** [gárde] N : 1. the militia
2. a militiaman

gá sóngó V : to make peace, to reconcile, to harmonize {ála gá sóngó : they made peace} {tɛ́nɛ́ tí ála agá sóngó : their speech was harmonized} - see siriri, sóngó, sára sóngó

gati* N : the left hand - the left hand must not be used in giving or receiving gifts or in eating, but left-handed people manipulate tools in a left-handed manner without stigma - syn. mabɔ́kɔ tí wále - see also mabɔ́kɔ, koti

gá wé V : to become hot - see mú wá, wara wá

gbá N : a bunch, a bundle {gbá tí kɔkɔra : a bundle of arrows} {gbá tí péré : a bundle of grass (for roofing)} {gbá tí yoró tí dimanche ɔ́kɔ : a week's supply of medicine}

gbá Av : in vain, futilely, without result {í bi gbánda gbá : we cast the nets in vain} {mbi gí kɔa gbá : I've looked for work to no avail} {mbi penser tɛ́nɛ́ ní gbá : I've thought over the matter without result}

gba V : to copulate, to have sexual relations - used only of humans, while for animals uru 3 or monter is used {kɔ́li agba wále : the man had intercourse with the woman} {wále agba kɔ́li : the woman had intercourse with the man} - more often, the euphemism lángó na is used

gbágbá N : a hedge, a fence or other protective enclosure - hedges are often of sisal or other close-set or dense shrubbery - a common type of fence is made of coarse grass mats tied to upright poles {ála kánga tɛ́rɛ́ tí kéké só na gbágbá : they enclosed this tree with a fence} - see bála gbakó N : a gallery forest along a stream (dole ali na yá tí gbakó : the elephant entered into the gallery forest) (mbi goe na gbakó tí súru kéké tí da : I'm going into the gallery forest to cut lumber for a house) - these forests are the only places, in the savanna country, where trees are to be found large enough for use as lumber - opp. péré - see also lando, ngonda

gbándá Av : easily, naturally, without difficulty or inconvenience - used pre-clausally (gbándá fadé mbi wara mɔ : I'll find you easily) (tongasó gbándá France alíngbi títɛnɛ, amú na í nginza mbéní pɛpɛ : so France can quite naturally no longer give us money) - this is much more specific than séngé, which can refer to lack or absence of almost anything

gbánda N : any large net (ála gbɔ́tɔ gbánda : they drew in the nets) (gbánda asúru : the net split) (akánga gbánda tí fáa yąma : they fasten up nets to kill animals) - the peoples along the few large rivers use nets to fish, while in most of the country, which is savanna, nets are used for hunting - they are set up across an opening, and game is driven into them with fire or by beaters, and there killed with arrows or spears - see gí susu, gí yąma

gba ngú V : to play a game consisting of standing hip or waist deep in water and rhythmically beating or drumming on the surface of the water with the open palm of the hands

gbánza [gbánza, gbanza] N : corn, maize - corn is an important auxiliary crop throughout the Central African Republic, but nowhere does it assume the importance as a staple of mil or bóndó - syn. nzó - see also lɔ́sɔ

gbánzi V : to prevent, to hinder, to withhold (kobéla agbánzi mbi, sí mbi gá pɛpɛ : sickness prevented me, so that I did not come) (mbi tara tí gá, mais lo gbánzi mbi : I tried to come, but he hindered me) (yí tí lo, alíngbi tí gbánzi na lo ɔ́kɔ pɛpɛ : his things cannot be withheld from him at all) - syn. to prevent, kánga lége

gbara, gbara búba N : a frying pan - specifically, one made of the metal from a gasoline drum, beaten into shape {gbara aɛkɛ mbéní mará tí kopo laá alɛkɛ nzoní na mabɔ́kɔ : the gbara is a kind of container made well with a handle} {gbara aɛkɛ yí só ála yɔ́rɔ na kárákó só : the gbara is that thing in which they roast peanuts}

gbɛ́ N : the underpart of anything, the lower part {mbéní da na mbáge tí gbɛ́ ní ká ... : a certain house over on the lower side there ...} {mɛ́rɛngɛ́ aɛkɛ na gbɛ́ tí babá : a child is under its father} {mbi dutí na gbɛ́ tí kéké : I sat under a tree} {ngú aole na gbɛ́ tí susu : water dried up from under the fish} na gbɛ́ tí means under, underneath, below

gbɛ́ dé N : shade {lo dutí na gbɛ́ dé tí kéké : he sat in the shade of a tree}

gbɛ́ lé N : the presence of someone, especially someone important {mbi gá na gbɛ́ lé mɔ : I come into your presence} {lo sára na gbɛ́ ála kóé : he did it in the presence of you all} - syn. devant can be used of inanimate objects also - see also lé N 1. 3

gbɛ́ ngú N : used with introductory na : in the rainy season - see ngú 5

gbɛ́ tí mabɔ́kɔ N : armpit - see mabɔ́kɔ

gbí V : to ignite, to catch fire, to burn {da agbí da ukú : five houses burned there} {kɔ́á tí ála kóé kóé agbí : all their fuzz burns off} - zɔ́ adds an element of purpose of volition which is absent from gbí {wá agbí yí, zo azɔ́ yí : fire burns things, people burn things}

gbíá N : a king, an important ruler - specifically applied in former times to the ruler of the Zande, who were the only people in the area with a strongly centralized indigenous government - makunzi is the general term for chiefs of lesser rank, and kapíta is a village headman

gbikí N : sweat, perspiration {gbikí así gígí na tɛ́rɛ́ tí mbi : sweat appeared on my body}

gbíma ndɔkɔ N : a foot race, a competition - see kpé lɔ́rɔ́

gbó V : 1. to take hold of, to grip, to grasp, to grab, to seize, to catch {lo goe gbó kpɔ́ka tí yáká : she went and seized the garden hoe} {sentinelle agbó mbi da lá kóé : the watchman caught me there all the time} {ála gbó susu míngi : they caught many fish} {kíi ní agbó gɔ́ tí mɔ : the prickers catch in your throat} - tomba means to pursue so as to catch, kamáta and mú in similar contexts mean simply to take

2. to be caught by a snare {yąma tí sése agbó kámba na ndúzú pɛpɛ : a terrestrial animal does not get caught in a snare in the air}

3. to carry in the hand {lo ɛkɛ gbó kóngbá na ázo : he carries loads for people} - yá suggests carrying something on the shoulder or head

4. in figurative usage : to seize {mbito agbó lo : fear seized him} {finóo agbó lo : suffering seized him} {kɔ́á atomba zo, sí agbó : death pursues people, and seizes them} {mawa agbó mérɛngé só : pity seized this youth} {Sango agbó yángá tí mbi mbírímbírí pɛpɛ : Sango has not seized my mouth properly, i.e. I don't speak it well}

5. to thicken, to set, to harden, to jell, to coagulate - syn. coller V

gbogbo N : 1. a mat, especially a sleeping mat about 30 x 60 inches made of a soft split reed {ála zía yoró na ndúzú na li tí gbogbo tí ála : they put charms above the head of their sleeping mat}

2. by extension, a bed - syn. tangé - see bambou 2

gbó kéké V : said of a bird : to alight on a branch

gbó ... na ndúzú V : to raise up, to hold up - syn. mú ... na ndúzú

gbó ndá V : to imitate, to follow - see mú pɛkɔ́

gbó téré V : 1. to exercise self-control {mérɛngé tí mbi, mɔ gbó térɛ́ tí mɔ ngangó : my child, control yourself strongly}

2. to stick together, to cleave together {ála gbó térɛ́ : they cleaved together}

gbɔ́tɔ V : to pull up, to pull out, to pull along, to drag {mɔ gbɔ́tɔ térɛ́ tí coton ní : you pull [illegible] beside the cotton, i.e. you thin out the sprouts} {ála gbɔ́tɔ gbánda ní : they dragged in the net} {lo gbɔ́tɔ mérɛngé tí lo na yá tí gérɛ́ tí lo : he dragged the child between his legs} - kóso means only to drag along gbɔˀ gbɔˀ gbɔˀ Av : an ideophone indicative of the sound of boiling mush {gɔzɔ só akpɔrɔ gbɔˀ gbɔˀ gbɔˀ : the manioc (mush) was boiling gbɔˀ gbɔˀ gbɔˀ}

gbugburu V : 1. to shake up {tongana mɔ píka gɔzɔ awe, mɔ ɛkɛ gbugburu yɛngɛrɛ tí gɔzɔ na lo : when you have finished pounding the manioc, you and she shake the manioc sieve} - *yɛngɛrɛ* V is the specific verb to sift
2. to stir about so as to create disorder {mɔ gbugburu yá ní : you stir it up into a mess}

gbutu N : an edible wild leaf (*Amarantus caudatus L.*) - for a list of edible leaves, see *kugbé*

ge Av : here, in or to this place {mbi sára ngú óse ge : I've spent two years here} {mbi gá ge : I came here} {ála zía lo ge na hôpital : they put her here in the hospital} - syn. *na ndo só* - opp. *ká*

gendarme** [ządárm, zádráam] N : a military policeman, a member of the national security police {gendarme agá na lége tí wa nzí : the policeman comes on account of thieves}

gêner** [zenée] V : to bother {école agêner zo ngbangatí yángá tí Gbaya : school bothers people because it is in the Gbaya language (which has low prestige)} - see also *be* V 1, *mú yángá*

genou** [azenúu] N : knee of a person - syn. *kuní* is much less common

gérant** [zerą́ą, zeráa] N : a person employed as the manager of a business owned by someone else - especially the manager of a small local branch of a chain of stores

gɛnɛ N : a visitor, especially one from a distant or foreign place, a stranger or foreigner visiting or living temporarily away from home {tongana ágɛnɛ aɛkɛ gá na da tí mɔ, alíngbi mɔ bata ámérɛngɛ́ tí mɔ : when visitors come to your house, you must watch your children} - see *goe gɛnɛ*

gɛngi* mɛ́ V : to pay attention, to listen, to give heed {gɛngi mɛ́ tí mɔ tí má : pay attention to hear} - see *má* 2 gɛ́rɛ́ N : 1. a leg, a foot, a paw {afáa gɛ́rɛ́ tí lo : he broke his leg} {ála yú póró tí ála na gɛ́rɛ́ tí ála : you should wear your shoes on your feet} {ála tí na gɛ́rɛ́ tí lo : they fell at his feet} - *kété gɛ́rɛ́* is a toe, *kótá gɛ́rɛ́* a thigh

2. the leg of a piece of furniture

3. by extension : a wheel or a tire {gɛ́rɛ́ tí vélo : the wheel of the bicycle}

4. by extension : a shoot for planting {goe lú gɛ́rɛ́ tí café : go plant the coffee shoot} - this may be a result of the influence of French un pied de café

gɛ́rɛ́ tí da N : the foundation of a house - see *kɔtɔ* N

gí Au : only, just, merely {ayí gí ngú : it wants just water} {lo ɛkɛ gí séngé zo : he is just an ordinary person} {mɔ píka gí na yá tí kpu : you pound it just in the mortar} {mɔ dutí gí tongasó : you sit there just like that} {babá afáa gí yáká : father just makes gardens} - (*Grammar* p. 62-63)

gí V : to hunt for, to look for, to search, to seek {mbi gá tí gí place tí lángó : I've come to look for a place to sleep} {mbi gí kóbe na galá : I'm looking for food in the market} {mbi gí gbá : I hunted in vain} - tomba suggests pursuing in order to catch - wara is to find - see also báa 3 - used in *gí bɛ́*, *gí lége*, *gí ngɔlɔ*, *gí susu*, *gí tɛ́nɛ́*, *gí yąma*, *gi yángó*

gí bɛ́ V : to search one's heart, to ponder, to meditate, to consider, to wonder about {só mbi wara mbɛ́tí pɛpɛ só, mbi bí bɛ́ tí mbi da míngi : because I did not receive a letter, I wondered a great deal about it} - see *penser*

gígí N : the outside {lo goe na gígí na pɛkɔ́ tí da : he went outside behind the house} - most often found in the expression *sí gígí* - na gígí is used "adverbially" to modify a verb, as above

gí lége V : to look for a way, to try, to attempt {fadé mɔ gí lége tí sí na kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́ : you will try to get to the village} {ámbéní agí lége tí buba í : some try to make fools of us} - see also *tara*, *yí*, *lége* 2

gindí N : a bow - usually about four feet long, with a string made of a very flexible vine stripped and smoothed to size, or of rawhide, or of sisal fiber - the draw is quite short and weak, prohibiting using the bow at any distance - used most often to shoot small animals, as rats and rabbits, as they scurry past in fleeing hunting fires - boys often do this part of the hunting - *kɔkɔra* is the arrow - see *zɛmbɛ* for a list of weapons

gíngó N : 1. act of searching, search - from *gí* V
2. used to reinforce *gí* {mbi gí gíngó : I am searching intensively}

gí ngɔlɔ N : provocation, taunt {mbi yí tí mbi gí ngɔlɔ pɛpɛ : as for me, I don't like provocation}

gío bɛ́ V : to sigh, gasp, or exhale audibly, especially in expiring {Jésus agío bɛ́ tí lo na kɔ́á : Jesus sighed out unto death} - see *hú mbóo*

giriri Av : formerly, in the past, a long time ago {giriri ábabá tí í asára ngaragé : formerly, our fathers used to form the ngaragé society} {í sára tongasó giriri : we used to do it like that formerly} {lo commencer na ní kózo ní giriri : he began it first a long time ago} {áwále tí giriri : the women of the old days} - giriri denotes a more remote past than *ándo*, and lacks the ordinal element of *kózo ní*

girísa [grísa, glísa] V : 1. to lose, to mislay, to forget {mbi girísa nzoní yí só ála sára na mbi, ɔ́kɔ pɛpɛ : I will never forget the good things they did for me} {ála girísa lége tí wɛ́ : they lost the technique of iron} {lo girísa wále tí lo : he lost his wife} {mbi girísa kété franc kóé : I've lost all my small amount of money}
2. to be lost, mislaid, or forgotten {páta bale osió agirísa : two hundred francs was lost} {tɛ́nɛ́ ní agirísa mbi : the matter has lost me, i.e. I've forgotten it} - this usage is more prevalent than 1 - that is, one more often says : It lost me, than : I lost it

gí susu V : to fish, to go fishing - this is not a major occupation or source of food except along the Oubangui, Sangha, and Chari Rivers, where fishing is done with dugout canoes (ngɔ́) and nets (gbánda) or hooks (yángó) - also used are weirs (ngɔ́lɔ), and in some cases a sort of ramp going up the shore, up which the water brings the fish which are caught when the water recedes - smaller streams are dammed (ngbingbi, éré ngú) and when the water recedes the fish are caught in scoops or baskets - see also kúrú

gí tɛ́nɛ́ V : to pick a quarrel, to provoke someone {mbi yí gíngó tɛ́nɛ́ pɛpɛ : I don't like picking a quarrel} - see also gí ngɔlɔ - gí yángá suggests simple teasing or taunting, while gí tɛ́nɛ́ implies actively and gratuitously seeking for a quarrel

gí yąma V : to hunt, to go hunting {lo goe tí gí yąma na ngonda : he went hunting in the bush} - the traditional hunting party involved large parties of men and boys going out during the height of the dry season with nets, spears, and bows and arrows - they set up the nets in a long line, then burned the grass in a semi-circle to drive game into the net - as animals fled, they were trapped and killed - this method is no longer productive, and is practised for social rather than economic reasons - hunting with a shotgun and balls, or with an old muzzle-loader, is coming into style, though the price of a gun is prohibitive for most individuals and game is more and more scarce

gí yángá V : to tease, to taunt, to provoke {ála gí yángá tí mbi : they teased me} - see also gí tɛ́nɛ́

góá ... tɛ V : to begin to have labor pains {góá atɛ lo : she has begun to have labor pains}

goe V : 1. to go {í mú kpɔ́ka tí goe na yáká : we took hoes to go to the garden} {lo goe tí sára tɛ́nɛ́ ní : he went to talk about it} - opp. gá 1

2. to proceed, to continue going {í goe jusqu'à, mbunzú awara dole : we went on for a while, and the White Men found an elephant} - see also fɔnɔ, tambéla

3. to leave, to depart {í na lo í goe : he and I left} {tongana ála goe awe ... : when they had left ...} - opp. gá 2

4. sometimes used in conjunction with other related verbs preceding goe {ála lóndó agoe : they arose and left, i.e. they left} - see lórdó, mú lége

5. there are three structural degrees of closeness between goe and a following verb having the same subject : (a) the subject is repeated with each verb - (b) only the subject marker a- appears with the second verb - (c) the two verbs are immediately joined - these grammatical degrees, strongly modified by the semantic relationship of goe and the other verb, determine whether the two verbs denote distinct actions, closely-related actions, a single complex action, or even a single simple action {mɔ goe mɔ vɔ makongó : go buy caterpillars} {ázo agoe, ála fáa yạma : the people went, and killed an animal} {ála goe atiri ká ngbii : they went and fought there a while} {agoe dɔ́ gɛ́rɛ́ tí lo : she up and stamped on her foot} {lo goe báa mbakɔ́rɔ wále só : she went and saw this old woman} {kɔ́li agoe sí na kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́ : the man went arriving to the village} - see also gá 7

goe berá na li tí V : to attack, to make war against {ála goe berá na li tí zo só akamáta wále ní awe : they went and attacked the man who had taken the woman} - syn. píka berá, tiri, tí na ndó

goe gɛnɛ V : to go visiting, especially to a foreign place - see goe kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́

goe kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́ V : to go home - see goe gɛnɛ

goe na V : 1. to take with, to take along {mamá agoe na mbi na docteur : mother took me to the doctor} {lo goe na nginza na wále tí lo : he took some money to his wife} - opp. gá na 1 - see also kírí na

2. to accompany, to go with {mbi yí tí goe na mɔ na Bangui : I want to go with you to Bangui} - the context will distinguish this usage from those cases where goe na is followed by a locative or directional complement - see also gá na 2, kírí na

goe na da tí kɔ́li V : said of a girl or woman : to get married {mbi de mbi goe na da tí kɔ́li pɛpɛ : I haven't yet got married} - going to a man's house signifies that all prerequisites to the marriage, including the bride price, have been cared for to the satisfaction of the bride's family - the marriage is thus made official - see mariage

goe (na) ngonda V : a euphemism for sára purú, to defecate, or sára ínɔ, to urinate

goe na pɛkɔ́ V : to follow {lo goe na pɛkɔ́ tí Jésus : he followed Jesus} - the context will distinguish this expression from cases where na pɛkɔ́ is used in a locative sense - this expression, in opp. to gá na pɛkɔ́, emphasizes the point of departure rather than the person followed, while mú pɛkɔ́ suggests a closer relationship between leader and follower - tomba implies a pursuit

góéngó N : 1. the act of going, departure - from goe
2. used to reinforce goe {mbi goe góé ngó : I definitely departed}

goe nzoní V : go well, good luck - this is the parting salutation of the person who stays to the person who leaves - the response is dutí nzoní - see bara N

goigói [goygóy, gɔygɔ́y, gwɛgwɛ́] N : idleness, laziness, inertia {mɔ sára goigói na kusára tí mɔ pɛpɛ : don't be lazy in your work} {zo tí goigói : an idle, lazy person} - mbáná suggests an element of willful purpose sometimes tinged with malice, which is absent from goigói

gónda N : a certain poison used in trial by ordeal - the person suffering no ill effects from the swallowed poison is judged to be innocent

gondá N : the foot or base of a plant or tree, the stubble {mɔ mú ágondá tí péré só mɔ fáa : take the stubble of the grass and chop it up}

gonda V : to praise {aɛkɛ nzoní aussi sí wále agonda ándeko tí lo na kɔ́li tí lo ? : is it right also for a woman to praise her lovers to her husband ?} - while gonda is used of praising human beings, sambéla and sepála are used of praising deity and of worshipping

gouvernement** [guvɛrnamą́ą] N : 1. the government - the assemblée elects the président, who appoints and directs the ministers and is assisted by the civil service

2. the president, as the head and personification of the government {tongana gouvernement agá abáa, anzɛrɛ na lé tí lo, tongana lo yí, lo aider mɔ : when the president comes and sees (what you are doing), if it pleases him, if he wants, he can help you}

gɔ́ N : 1. neck, throat {lo fáa kámba na gɔ́ tɔ́ mbo : he cut the cord from the neck of the dog} {kíi ní agbó gɔ́ tí mɔ : the prickers catch in your throat}

2. voice {í má gɔ́ tí mɔ nzoní : we heard your voice well} {só gɔ́ tí ámakáko : that is the voice of the monkeys}

3. tune, melody {gɔ́ ní agoe tongasó : the tune goes like this}

gɔ́gɔ́á N : a Cape buffalo - syn. ngbáá

gɔgɔrɔ N : a granary in which mil, maize, peanuts, sesame, etc. are stored - the prevalent model consists of a cylindrical hut with walls of coarse grass mat, a conical thatched roof, raised several feet from the ground on piles

gɔ́rɔ N : the cola nut - the habit of cola nut chewing is especially prevalent among West African traders, but some men in larger towns have also adopted it

gɔzɔ N : manioc, the staple root crop which forms the basis of the diet of most of the population of the Central African Republic {áwále agoe tí sára gɔzɔ tí ála na yá tí ngú : the women go to prepare their manioc in the water} {tongana mɔ píka gɔzɔ awe, mɔ yɛngɛrɛ na yɛngɛrɛ tí gɔzɔ : when you have pounded the manioc, you sift it with the manioc sieve} {mɔ tourner gɔzɔ na kéké tí gɔzɔ : you stir the manioc (mush) with the manioc stick} - there are several varieties of manioc - the common kind is dug up as it is needed, peeled, cut into chunks, leached in water for two or three days to remove the prussic acid, dried, pounded on a large flat rock (lakéré) with a wooden mallet (kóngo), sifted with a special sieve (V. and N. both yɛngɛrɛ) - the resulting coarse, starchy meal is stirred into boiling water with a special stick (*kéké tí gɔzɔ*) until a ball of stiff, sticky mush or dough is formed (the primary reference of *kóbe* is to this), which is broken off from the mass with the right hand, dipped into a sauce (*kása*) and carried to the mouth - other varieties, e.g. *coup-de-poing* 2, are simply boiled and eaten

guérir** [gerii] V : to recover from illness - *ça va*, *gá nzoní* 1, and *kobéla* ... *kái* are more common syn.

gugú N : mushroom - mushrooms are dried and fried, or salted and fried, and used as an ingredient in the making of many sauces - see *kása*

gugúrú N : small fish, which are dried and pounded into fish meal which is one ingredient in the making of many sauces (apíka gugúrú, ayɛngerɛ fúku ní, azía ngú da sí anɛka, ató, azía yíngó da, sí atɛ : you pound the fish, sift the meal, put in water and crush it together, boil it, add salt, and so eat it) - see *kása*

gúí N : an edible, large tuber - a type of large white-fleshed yam which is eaten boiled

gúrú N : smoke, steam, vapor - *gúrú tí wá* refers specifically to smoke

gúsá N : an edible leaf (*Corchorus gen.* ?) - see *kugbé* for a list of edible leaves

- H -

há V 1 : to plait, to weave {ahá kámba tí coton : he plaited a cotton cord} - see pé kámba, which refers more specifically to making rope

há V 2 : to open - used in há zɛmbɛ, ndo ahá

hą́ [hą́, há] V : to ponder, to meditate, to cogitate {lo hą́ gbá : he pondered in vain} - syn. penser, b'anda

háa V : to measure {aháa yáká tí lo, alíngbi mètre pɛpɛ : he measured his field, it did not measure up to the required size}

hánda V : to attract and hold the attention, in either a pleasant or an unpleasant sense, to fascinate by holding out a hidden or deceptive prospect - hence, to tease, to kid, to amuse (as a baby), to tempt, to entice, to bluff {mɔ hánda mbi pɛpɛ, mɔ sára na mbi taá tɛ́nɛ́ : don't tease me, tell me the truth} {mɔ lóndó ma, mbi hánda mɔ séngé : get up, I was just kidding you} {zo ahánda mɔ séngé tí foutu nginza tí mɔ : people are just enticing you to waste your money} {mbéní íta akɛ hánda lo : some sister is tempting him} {ázo só akɛ sára tɛ́nɛ́ tí búbá, ála só atɛnɛ ála ɛkɛ hánda mbi sí mbi kɔé mbito : the people are talking nonsense, those who say they will bluff me into being afraid} - Protestants use the expression wa hánda to refer to a tempter, especially the devil

hánda N : temptation, deceptive enticement {nzala ahánda zo sí lo tí na hánda : desire tempts a person so that he falls into temptation}

hára V : to creep, to crawl, to crawl in pursuit of {ngbɔ ahára na sése : the snake crawls on the ground} {tongana awara yąma, ahára lo ngbii, allez, apíka lo : when he finds an animal, he crawls in pursuit of it and suddenly hits it}

hárágе N : a potent liquor made from manioc or mil crushed, steeped, fermented, and distilled - syn. ngbágɔ - see also samba há zembɛ V : to pull a knife out of its sheath

hé [hé, ʔé, é] V : 1. to laugh at, to make fun of, to mock, to ridicule {ála hé pémbɛ́ tí mbi pɛpɛ o : hey, don't laugh at my teeth!} {áfamille só ahé mbi, mbi yí ála pɛpɛ : those members of the family who mocked me, I don't like them} - see also hé ngiá

2. to sing {mbi hé tongasó : I sing (it) like this} - syn. hé bíá

hé bíá V : to sing {ála hé bíá, asára ngiá : they sang and had fun} - syn. hé 2

hé ngiá V : to laugh {ála bóngbi tí hé ngiá na í, ála sára ngiá na í : they gathered to laugh with us, to have fun with us} - see hé 1

heure** [lɛ́ɛr,ɛ́ɛr] N : 1. with French numerals : the specific time o'clock {ála sí na sept heures [sɛtɛ́ɛr] : they arrived at seven o'clock} - see 5 below

2. a unit of time, in the European sense {í wara heure [lɛ́ɛr] míngi míngi pɛpɛ : we didn't get many hours}

3. time in a punctilear or aoristic sense : the moment when, the season when {heure [lɛ́ɛr] tí école así : the time for school has arrived} {heure [lɛ́ɛr] tí nzala : the time of famine} {heure [lɛ́ɛr] tí yáká : the gardening season} {heure [lɛ́ɛr] tí túku ngú da : the moment to pour in water} {heure [lɛ́ɛr] tí deux heures : the time to go back to work} {heure [lɛ́ɛr] tí midi : noon-time}

4. time in a durative sense : time during which {na heure [lɛ́ɛr] só mbi ɛkɛ na gouvernement ... : during my administration ...} {na heure [lɛ́ɛr] só ngú apíka míngi, zía lo sukúla na ngú tí dé pɛpɛ : while it is raining a lot, i.e. in the middle of the rainy season, don't let him wash in cold water}

5. the divisions and times of the day are as follows :
ndá ade is before dawn
ndo ahá is sunrise
ndá péréré is the early morning, after dawn
midi, kótá lá refer to mid-day, noon
deux heures is early afternoon, especially the time to go back to work after the noon break, regardless of the time o'clock

lá kûí is the later afternoon and sunset

bí is the evening and night

bíngo is specifically the time of darkness

bé bí, midi tí bí is the middle of the night, midnight

hínga [hínga,ˀinga, ínga] V : to know, to realize, to understand, to be aware, to know how {yí só kóé, fadé mbi hínga : all those things, I'll know} {í hínga aɛkɛ yí tí mbito : we know it is a fearful thing} {í hínga, aɛkɛ kótá kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́ : we know it is a large village} {mbi yí tí hínga, na lége yę́ ála sára yí só : I want to know how they did this thing} {mbi hínga tí lɛkɛ : I know how to fix it} {mbi hínga tí sárángó ní : I know how to do it} {mbi hínga mbéní zo ká : I know someone over there} {lo hínga kɔa ní : he knows the work} {lo hínga manière tí kpíkara : he knew the cunning of kpíkara} - see the following entries for use in phrases - see also penser

hínga bɛ́ tí V : to know another profoundly, to discern another's thoughts and motives, to understand another thoroughly {aɛkɛ nzoní mɔ hínga bɛ́ tí lo sí, ngbangatí ázo tí wátáká aɛkɛ míngi : it is well for you to know him thoroughly, because there are many liars about} - hínga lé tí is a much more superficial acquaintance

hínga ... kóé V : to know thoroughly, to understand, to be familiar with, to be intimately aware of {ála hínga kóé, kobéla só aɛkɛ sioní míngi : you know perfectly that this illness is very bad} {mbi de mɛ́rɛngɛ́, mbi hínga kóé pɛpɛ : I was still a child, I did not really understand} {mbi hínga só kóé : I know this thoroughly} - see also penser

hínga lé tí V : to recognize another from the outward appearance, to be casually acquainted with another - hínga bɛ́ tí is a much more profound knowledge

hínga lége V : to know how {mbi hínga lége ní : I know how} {mbi hínga lége tí sára ta pɛpɛ : I don't know how to make pots}

hínga li tí V : to know in one's mind, to understand {mbéní tɛ́nɛ́ aɛkɛ só mbi hínga li tí mbi da pɛpɛ : there is a matter which I don't understand} - see hínga, penser hínga mbétí V : to know how to read

hínga pɛpɛ [hínga apɛ] C : perhaps, possibly, who knows whether {o íta hínga pɛpɛ mɔ sára kɔa ní mbírímbírí pɛpɛ : oh sister, perhaps you didn't do the work right} {lo tɛnɛ, hínga pɛpɛ, fadé kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́ tí í akɔnɔ : he said, who knows whether our village will get big} - syn. peut-être

hínga ... tɛnɛ V : to be sure, to be confident, to consider {lo hínga atɛnɛ ní ɛkɛ wále só aɛkɛ sára kɔa tí da tí lo nzoní : she felt sure that she was a woman who did her housework well} - this is much more confident than báa ... tɛnɛ

hínga tɛ́rɛ́ V : to be mutually acquainted, to know one another {ázo tí lukundú ahínga tɛ́rɛ́ nzoní : the witches know one another well} - see also hínga bɛ́ tí, hínga lé tí

híɔ Av : quickly, fast, in a hurry {mbi wara réponse híɔ pɛpɛ : I didn't get an answer quickly} - distinguished from fadé in lacking the element of a time lapse

histoire** [istwáar] N : a story, a tale, an anecdote {tɛ́nɛ́ só mbi ɛkɛ tɛ́nɛ́, aɛkɛ tɛ́nɛ́ tí histoire tí babá na mamá tí mbi tí giriri : the matter which I am telling is a story of my father and mother long ago} - tɛ́nɛ́ is the most general term for any sample of language, while isɔrɔ́ is restricted to speech and tɛrɛ to fables - see sára tɛ́nɛ́

hónde V : to hide, to conceal {mbi língbi tí hónde yí tí Afrique na mɔ pɛpɛ : I cannot conceal from you matters relative to Africa} {lo hónde tɛ́rɛ́ tí lo : he hid himself}

hôpital** [opitáal, lopitáal] N : a hospital

hǫ́ [hǫ́ǫ, hǫ́] N : the nose, specifically that part of the human or animal anatomy which serves for breathing - see dú hǫ́

hǫ́ [hɔ́] V : 1. to pass, to pass by, to pass on, to proceed {tongana dole ayí tí hǫ́, likongó akpɔ lo : when the elephant wanted to pass on, the spear stabbed him} {áwále míngi aɛkɛ hǫ́ : many women were passing

by} {ála sára kóbe, ála hɔ̧́ na pɛkɔ́ tí pendere kɔ́li só : they made food and passed on after this young man, i.e. followed him} {woga afáa yá tí yáká ahɔ̧́ tí lo : as for him, the antelope crossed the garden and passed on} {lége só ahɔ̧́ tí goe na Bangui : this road passed on to go to Bangui} {mɔ hɔ̧́ Paoua, aɛkɛ vingt kilomètre tí goe na kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́ tí mbi : you pass Paoua, it's twenty kilometers to go to my village} {tongana ngú ahɔ̧́ míngi ... : when many years had passed ...}
2. to surpass, to excell, to defeat, to overcome, to overwhelm {tí báa kótá yí na ndó sése só ahɔ̧́ kóbe tí yɛ̧ : to see the great things on earth surpasses any kind of food} {lo ɛkɛ kótá kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́ míngi, ahɔ̧́ tanga tí ámbá tí lo kóé : it is a great country, it surpasses all its sister-countries} {lo hɔ̧́ lo na berá : he defeated him in war} {ngangó tí yoró ní agoe ahɔ̧́ ngangó tí mɔ : the strength of the medicine went and overcame your strength} - in the sense of to defeat, syn. gagner, hɔ̧́ ndó
3. used in various expressions of comparison and in "superlative" expressions {í yí míngi ahɔ̧́ : we like it a great deal, it surpasses, i.e. we like it very much indeed} {mɔ sára kɔa ahɔ̧́ ámbéní wále tí kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́ : you do work, it surpasses the other women of the village, i.e. you do more work than the other women} {íta só séngé yí ahɔ̧́ yí kóé : sister, that's the most insignificant thing of all} {agá sioní, ahɔ̧́ tí giriri : it has become bad, it surpasses that of formerly, i.e. it has become worse than formerly} {mbi yí tí kíri na mɔ merci míngi ahɔ̧́ : I want to return to you very many thanks}

hɔ̧́ ndó V : 1. to overcome, to overwhelm {kobéla ahɔ̧́ ndó tí lo : sickness has overwhelmed him} {ngunzá ní ahɔ̧́ ndó tí mbi : the greens are too much for me} {ngangó tí yoró ní ahɔ̧́ ndó tí kobéla : the strength of the medicine has overcome the sickness} - syn. hɔ̧́ 2, gagner
2. with ní : an expression of the superlative of any quantitative concept {í fáa mbéní kótá yáká, ahɔ̧́ ndó ní : we cultivated a huge field, beyond measure} {ála gbó susu, ahɔ̧́ ndó ní : they caught many fish, beyond belief} {kóngbá tí mbunzú ní ahɔ̧́ ndó ní : the load of the white man was much too heavy}- syn. lingbi pɛpɛ

hǫ́ngó N : 1. the act of proceeding or passing on - from *hǫ́* V
2. used to reinforce *hǫ́* V {lo hǫ́ hǫ́ngó : he definitely passed by}

hɔ́tɔ́ [ʔɔ́tɔ́, hǫ́tɔ́] N : a hill, a mountain {ákótará aɛkɛ sambéla kótá li tí hɔ́tɔ́ : the ancestors used to worship the high tops of hills}

hú [hú, wú] V 1 : 1. to spread {ázo ní acommencer tí hú míngi na yá tí kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́ : the people began to spread abroad widely in the village}
2. by extension, to prosper, to become famous {éré tí kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́ só ahú míngi : the name of that village has spread, i.e. become famous}

hú [hú, wú] V 2 : to breathe - used also in *hú mbóo*, *hú pɔnɔ́*, *hú tɛ́rɛ́*

hú mbóo V : to breathe, to exhale, to blow with the mouth - see also *gíó bɛ́*, *úlu*

húnda [húnda, ʔúnda] V : to ask, to request {lo húnda mɛ́rɛngɛ́, lo tɛnɛ, kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́ aɛkɛ ndurú pɛpɛ ? : he asked the child, saying, isn't the village nearby?} {lo húnda, ázo ɔ́kɛ ayí tí mú carte tí lo : he asked, how many people want to take away his card?} {question só mɔ húnda na mbi ... : the question which you asked me ...} {lo húnda bon : he asked for a loan} - see also *sára tɛ́nɛ́*, *éré* 3

húngó N : fame, reputation, news {fadesó tɛ́nɛ́ ní acommencer tí dé, í má húngó ní míngi pɛpɛ : now the matter has begun to cool off, we don't hear the fame of it much any more}

húnzi [húnzi, wúnzi, ʔúnzi] V : 1. to finish, to exhaust the supply, to run out, to come to the end, to be finished or exhausted {ngangó tí lo ade ahúnzi pɛpɛ : his strength is not yet exhausted} {nzɛ ahúnzi awe : the month is finished} {nginza ní ahúnzi awe : the money has run out} {ála húnzi tɛ́nɛ́ ní : they made an end to the matter} {aɛkɛ nzoní mɔ húnzi yoró ní : you should finish your medicine} {lo húnzi tí sára tɛ́nɛ́ awe : he has finished talking}
2. by extension, to disappear, to cause to disappear - hence, to conceal {ála húnzi yǫma ní, sí ála kírí na kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́ : they concealed the animal, and then went to the village} - syn. *hónde*, with which there seems to be some confusion in current usage

húnzi berá V : to ambush

hú pɔnɔ́ V : to suffer persecution, to be persecuted - sometimes, to suffer in general {aɛkɛ kusára tí Nzapá laá, sí mbi ŋgbá tí hú pɔnɔ́ da só : it's on account of the work of God that I'm still suffering persecution} - the element which distinguishes this from báą pási, báą finóo is that the ill-will of a person is involved - see pɔnɔ́, sáná

hú tɛ́rɛ́ V : to rest from effort {mɔ ziá í hú tɛ́rɛ́ kété ma : won't you please let us rest a bit} - see also lángó N 1

- I -

í P : 1. first person plural pronoun {apousser í títεnε í sára kɔa míngi : they urged us, so that we did much work} {só da tí í : this is our house} {só tí í : this is ours} - some of the Catholic literature uses *é for this, while using í in sense 2 below, but oral material does not justify this distinction - Protestant material uses áni in this sense
2. second person plural pronoun, mostly in missions literature {aεkε tεnε na í tέnέ tí Nzapá : it is telling you the word of God} - ála is general usage for this sense - see mbi for the pronoun system - (Grammar p. 135-138)

ía V : to blow, as the wind {pupu aía ngangó : the wind blew hard}

ía N : the sky, the air - ndúzú means the upper regions, the sky, while yáyú means heaven, both where the stars are, and where Christians go after death

il faut que** [ifó, fó, fókä, ifókä, ifóke, ifók] V : it must be that {il faut que ála sára kɔa só : you must do this work} {il faut que mbi goe na Bangui : I must go to Bangui} - syn. língbi

impôt** [lępóo] N : taxes - for the greater part of the population, the prevalent form of taxes is the head tax, usually paid when the cotton crop is sold, since this is the only time when many people have enough cash - see coton

infirmier** [ęfirmyée] N : a male nurse - the great majority of hospital employees of all categories are male

ínɔ N : urine - sára ínɔ is to urinate - bozó ínɔ is the bladder

isɔrɔ́ N : any form of speech, as conversation or narrative {só tεrε na isɔrɔ́ tí dimanche : these are the fables and talks (or speeches, or chats, etc.) for Sunday} - sára isɔrɔ́ means to converse - tέnέ is the broadest term for any sample of the language, *histoire* refers to a story, a tale, or an anecdote, and *tɛrɛ* is a fable - see also *sára tɛ́nɛ́*

íta N : 1. in a strict kinship sense, a member of one's clan in the same generation, in particular one's siblings, but including parallel cousins {íta tí mbi atɛnɛ mbi goe na lo : my sibling told me to go with him} - *kótá zo* 2 is an older brother {kótá zo tí mbi : my older brother} - *ngambe* is a younger sibling - *babá ɔ́kɔ* is used to distinguish a sibling from a cousin - *mamá ɔ́kɔ*, when it is added to *babá ɔ́kɔ*, distinguishes a full sibling from a half sibling

2. in a more general sense, a fellow-clansman- family obligations are very strong - a person whom can legitimately call one íta expects as his right one's support, material or moral, in any contingency, so that the term is itself an expression of claim upon an obligation mutually recognized

3. by extension, someone with whom one shares a significant social status or role, as membership in a secret society or age level {áíta tí mbi ámɛ́rɛngɛ́ wále ... : my fellow-girls...}

4. especially in direct address, a close friend or intimate comrade - *camarade* and *ndeko* are more general and less intimate, *fó* is a co-worker, *mbá* is a compatriot, and *ndoé* is a person sharing one's personal name

- J -

jusqu'à** [zuská] C : until {mɔ mú yoró jusqu'à ndá tí dimanche ɔ́kɔ : take the medicine until the end of the week} {í kú jusqu'à lo dú awe : we waited until she had given birth} - this is a gallicism

jusqu'à [zúska, zúsúka] Av : for a while, for a long time {aɛkɛ dé yáká na babá tí lo jusqu'à : he cultivated the field with his father for a while} - syn. ngbii - both of these synonyms can occur together in hybrid reinforcement {mbi du ká na íta tí mbi ngbii jusqu'à : I stayed there with my brother for a long, long time}

- K -

ká V : to well (áwále aɛkɛ ká yí tí ála na galá : the women are selling their goods in the market) - vɔ means both to buy and to sell, but it can be specifically contrasted with ká - vɔ ngéré means to buy and sell, to do business - see also fúta, payer, nginza, mɔsɔrɔ, ngéré

ká Av : there, over there,then (aɛkɛ ká na Nice : they were there in Nice) (lo lóndó ká : he departed from there) (tongana mɔ sí ká ... : when you arrive there ...) (í goe na mbáge ká : we went to the side there, i.e. over there) (asára berá na lá ní ká : he fought a war then on that day) (zo só ká : that man over there) - ká is in contrast with ge, which means here - da Av is the anaphoric substitution for both

ká N : an open wound, a sore, an ulcer (lo wara ká na zɛmbɛ : he received a knife wound) (tongana mbi kpaka pɛkɔ́ tí mɔ, fadé agá ká : if I scrape your back, it will become a wound)

ka C : 1. then - used to introduce the apodosis of a condition contrary to fact, the protasis being introduced by tongana, ádu ní, or ádu títɛnɛ, or being absent (ádu títɛnɛ, wále tí mbi aɛkɛ na kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́, ka í causer : if my wife were in the village, then we would talk) (ádu ní ála, ka í língbi títɛnɛ í báa finóo míngi : if we were they, then we would be able to say we experienced much suffering) (tongana carte d'identité, ka mɔ hínga : if (I had) my identity card, then you would know) (ka mbi tɛnɛ na mɔ : I would have told you)
2. used to add an element of emphasis or surprise to a negative sentence (mbi ɛkɛ sukúla bɔngɔ́ na kɔ́li sɔ́, ka mbi wara pendere bɔngɔ́ tongasó pɛpɛ : I wash clothes for this man, and I still don't get beautiful clothes like that!) - (Grammar p. 66-67)

kái N : a paddle for a canoe - see sára kái

kái V : 1. to be or become quiet, to hush {pupu ní akái : the wind became quiet} {ngonzo akái na bɛ́ tí lo : anger quieted in his heart} {kái, mérɛngɛ́ : hush, child} - see *su* P, *kánga* 2

2. to cure an illness {yoró ní akái lo : the medicine cured it (the illness)}- syn. *kái* ... *kobéla* - see also *kobéla* ... *kái*

kái ... kobéla V : 1. to heal, to cure an illness {í língbi tí kái kobéla na tɛ́rɛ́ tí lo : we can cure the illness in his body} {fadé ála kái na kobéla tí lo : they will cure his illness}

2. more rarely : to recover {í yí lo kái hío na kobéla tí lo ní : we want him to recover quickly from his illness} - syn. *kobéla* ... *kái*, *ça va*, *guérir*, *gá nzoní* are more common in this sense

kaká N : 1. ancestor - syn. *kótará*

2. grandfather {lo ɛkɛ kaká tí mbi : he is my grandfather} - see *famille* for the kinship system

kákéré N : a certain uncultivated tree (*Amblygonocarpus Schweinfurthii Harms*.) - also, its edible grain - pods drop from the tree to the ground, where they are gathered, broken up in a mortar, and the seeds enter into various edible sauces as a sort of condiment {lé tí kákéré agá fúku pɛpɛ, angbá gí lé ní : the kákéré seeds do not become a powder, they remain seeds} {kákéré afų́ nzoní : kákéré is aromatic}

kakó N : the husks or pods which are discarded when edible grains or seeds are prepared {apíka bóndó awe, alungúla kakó ní : when they have pounded the mil, they remove the husks} - see *pɛ́* 2

kalá N : a snail - its shell is *póró* tí kalá

kamáta V : 1. to take, to take possession, to seize, to catch, to capture, {ála kamáta mbéní yí tí sára na ngaánga : they took a certain thing with which to make a fetish} {ála kamáta, ála tɛ : they took and ate} {ála tiri berá sí ála kamáta ázo tí gá na ála na lo : they fought a war so as to capture people to bring to him} - *mú* includes both the idea of giving and that of receiving or taking - *gbó* means to grasp

2. to adopt (a child) {lo kamáta mérɛngɛ́ tí íta tí lo só akúi : he adopted the child of his brother who died} - syn. *bata* 2

kamáta ... na pópó V : to choose, to select, to elect - syn. choisir, mú ... na pópó

kamáta kɔ́li V : of a woman : to get married - see marier, mariage

kamáta wále V : of a man : to get married - see marier, mariage

kámba N : 1. a vine, a creeper - partially contrastive with kéké, a woody plant, and péré, grass or herb

2. a cord, a string, a rope {adu kété kété kámba na gɔ́ tí mbo : he tied a very small cord to the neck of the dog} - see pé kámba

3. a snare or noose made of cord and used to catch various small animals {kámba tí kpíkara amú kótá yąma tí sése, na kámba tí tɛrɛ amú kété yąma tí ndúzú : kpíkara's snare caught a large land animal, while tɛrɛ's snare caught a small aerial animal} - see also ngindí, sǫ́

4. a belt {kámba tí kánga na ngbundá tí lo : a belt to fasten about her waist}

kamelá [kamelá, kamerá, kamará, kamɛnɛ́] N : shame {tongana lo báa na yá tí lé tí zo vɔkɔ́, kamelá amú lo, ngbangatí sioní yí só giriri lo ɛkɛ sára na zo vɔkɔ́ : when he looks into the face of a black man, shame seizes him because of the bad things he used to do to the black man} {kamelá asára mbi míngi : shame is affecting me greatly, i.e. I am very much ashames} {mbi ɛkɛ ngbá gí na ngbéré bɔngɔ́, só aɛkɛ yí tí kamelá pɛpɛ ? : isn't the fact that I remain in this old dress shameful?}

kanda* N : a dish made of pounded dried or fresh fish or meat with other ingredients {apíka fúku tí gugúrú, ayɛngɛrɛ, azía ngú da sį anɛ kanda atɔ́ azía yíngɔ́ da sí atɛ : you pound fish meal, you sift it, you put water in and crush the kanda, you cook it, add salt, and eat}

kángá N : any of several closely-related antelopes, as the hartebeest and sassaby (genera Alcephalus and Damaliscus)

kánga V : 1. to fasten, to tie {akánga gbánda tí fáa yąma : he fastens the nets to kill animalɛ} {kámba tí kánga na ngbundá tí lo : a string of beads to fasten about her waist} - du 1 means specifically to tie - opp. lungúla, zí 1.- see also tíngbi

2. to shut, to close, to cover with a lid {mɔ kánga yángá tí da : close the door of the house} {kánga yángá tí ta : cover the pot) {chrétien alíngbi tí kánga lége na ázo pɛpɛ : a Christian cannot shut the way, i.e. create obstacles, for people} - opp. lungúla - see also gbánzi - kái means specifically to hush

3. to be or become shut, closed, obstructed {kété kété ngú ní akánga awe : the small stream was obstructed} {yáká tí café tí mbi akánga kóé : my coffee plantation is completely choked (with weeds)} {yángá tí da akánga : the door of the house is shut}

4. to imprison, to jail, to incarcerate {ála gá na lo na commandant, ála kánga lo : they brought him to the district officer, they imprisoned him} - see kánga N

kánga N : jail, prison {agoe zía ála na kánga : they went and put them in jail} - syn. da tí kánga

kánga bɛ́ V : to persevere, to be patient, to overcome discouragement {mɔ kánga bɛ́ tí mɔ, fadé na dimanche tí pɛkɔ́, mɔ má séngé : just be patient, next Sunday you'll hear easily} - opp. bɛ́ ... nzɛ́, wɔ́kɔ - this is a subjective reaction, while the occasion of the discouragement is said to kara or be one

kánga lége V : to obstruct, to hinder, to prevent {chrétien alíngbi tí kánga lége na zo pɛpɛ : a Christian cannot obstruct the way for a person} {lo kánga lége, sí mbi báa ndo pɛpɛ : he obstructed the way, so I did not see} - syn. gbánzi - see also lége 1

kánga yángá V : to make it impossible for someone to eat, specifically by preventing him from getting food {ngú Nzapá aɛkɛ kánga yángá tí ála : the rain shut their mouths, i.e. kept them from eating by keeping them from going to the gardens to get food}

kángba N : an old man - syn. kótá kɔ́li - mbakɔ́rɔ can refer to either sex, as can kótá zo - kótá wále is an old woman

kángbi V : to divide, to apportion, to partition (í kángbi yąma ní : we divided the meat) (ála mú wę́ ní, ála kángbi tí sára na ngáfó : they took the iron and divided (it) to make into hoes)
2. to separate (ála sára tɛ́nɛ́, sí ála kángbi : they talked, then they separated) - opp. bóngbi

kángbi yá tí V : to divide, to partition, to separate into parts or components (lo kángbi yá tí yąma ní : he divided the meat into portions) (ála gá míngi, sí lo kángbi yá tí ála : they came in great numbers, so that he divided them (into groups)) - fáa yá tí necessitates the meaning of cutting into parts, while kángbi yá tí does not specify the manner of the division

kángó N : 1. act of selling - from ká V
2. used to reinforce ká V (lo ká kángó : he definitely sold it)

kangú N : a dipper or container made of a gourd, cut longitudinally into halves, sometimes decorated with a red-hot iron - a gourd cut open at the small end to form a bottle is ngángá

kanguya N : palm wine - this is used mostly in the southern or forest zone of the Central African Republic - see samba for a list of alcoholic beverages

kapíta N : 1. a headman, a subordinate to a village or other chief (í mú mbéní yąma ngá na kózo kapíta, só aɛkɛ na pɛkó tí makunzi : we give meat also to the first headman, who comes after the chief) - see makunzi, the general term for a chief
2. a foreman on a work project or in a factory, a supervisor of laborers (kusára tí inspecteur aɛkɛ tí bata ázo tí kusára tongana kapíta ? : is it the work of an inspector to supervise laborers like a foreman?)

kara V : to overwhelm, to defeat, to discourage, to be too much for one (caisse ní anɛ ahɔ̨́ ndó ní, akara mbi na yá tí ngonda : the crate was much too heavy, it was too much for me in the bush) - syn. be, mú yángá, hɔ̨́ ndó - bɛ́ ... nzɛ́, wɔ́kɔ are the subjective reaction, and their opp. is kánga bɛ́

káráko [káráko, kárko, kárákoro] N : the peanut plant and grains - peanuts are an important auxiliary food - they are eaten raw, boiled, or roasted, and a peanut paste (see kpí) is an ingredient of many sauces - peanut oil (see mafuta) is extensively used in cooking

kása N : 1. any edible sauce eaten with the staple mush or dough - the kinds of ingredients used are extremely varied : fresh meat (yąma) or fish (susų) when available, fish meal (gugúrú), dried meat or fish (kúrú), caterpillars (makongó), termites (bobo), various kinds of edible leaves and greens (kugbé), peanuts and other oleaginous grains and seeds (kpí), various kinds of mucilaginous ingredients (dɔngɔ́), tomatoes (tomate), onions (oignon), and condiments and seasonings (yíngɔ́, kákéré, ndóngé), and so forth - yabándá is a sauce made of greens with or without the paste - see kóbe
2. sometimes, the name kása is applied to the ingredients names above

katá N : a small grey lizard - mbáráwárá is a monitor lizard

kate N : the chest, both in its external aspect and its internal anatomy {kobéla tí kate tí lo asára sánzó na yá tí kate tí lo : his chest sickness has made pus inside his chest} {bɔngɔ́ aɛkɛ na kate tí lo ɔ́kɔ pɛpɛ : he had no clothes on his chest} - see tɛ́rɛ́ 1

kawai [kawai, kawaya, kaiwaya] N : an edible leaf (Cucurbita Pepo L.) {lo fáa yáká tí gbánza, lo lú kawai na yá ní : he made a corn field, he planted kawai in it, i.e. between the corn stalks} {tongana mɔ yí tí tɔ́ yąma pɛpɛ, mɔ vɔ kugbé tí kawai : if you don't want to cook meat, you buy kawai leaves} - see kugbé for a list of edible leaves

kéké N : 1. a tree or other woody plant {ndɛkɛ adutí na li tí kéké : the bird sat in the top of the tree} {mbi dutí na gbɛ́ tí kéké : I sat under a tree} - péré, grass or herb, contrasts with kéké
2. the trunk or stem of a plant or part of a plant {mɔ fáa ngunzá ní kóé, mɔ bi kéké ní na sése : you cut up the greens, you throw away the stems}
3. a pole, a stick {mbi dé kéké tí da : I cut poles for a house}

{í dé kéké tí yɔ́ na yąma ní : we cut a pole to carry the animal} {kángba só amú kéké tí lo, akírí na kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́ : this old man took his stick and returned to the village}

4. wood {zo aɛkɛ kéké pɛpɛ : people aren't wood} {lo sára gbogbo ní na kéké tí nzoní míngi : he made the bed of very good wood}

kéké tí gɔzɔ N : a special stick, often of bamboo (bambou 2), about an inch in diameter and three feet long, which is used to stir the manioc mush or dough

kéké tí wá N : firewood

ké lé V : to blink {mbi ké lé mbi : I blinked}

kékéréke [kékéréke, kééréke] Av : tomorrow {mɔ kírí kékéréke : come back tomorrow} - see lá for the dating system

kéngé N : penis, phallus - pitó is the foreskin, korogbó is the scrotum - see also fáa ganzá - see tɛ́rɛ́ 1

kété An : 1. small, little, narrow, thin {kété mɛ́rɛngɛ́ : a small child} {kété sɛmbɛ́ : a little dish} {kété kété dɔla : a very small moth} {kété kété kámba : a thin string} {ngú ní aɛkɛ kété : the stream is narrow} - ndurú means short - opp. kótá

2. a small quantity, a small amount, a little {mɔ mú yíngɔ́ kété : take a small amount of salt} {mbi girísa mbéní kété nginza : I lost a small amount of money} {ála mú mbéní kété kóbe : they took along a small quantity of food} {mbi díkɔ Sango kété : I read a little Sango} - opp. míngi, kótá 2

3. of short duration {mbéní kété tɛrɛ : a certain short fable} - syn. ndurú, opp. yɔngɔ́rɔ

4. of lesser status, on a lower level {kété école : a lower-level school} - opp. kótá

5. used to modify verbs, adjunctives, or phrases other than noun phrases : a little, for a little while {í yí tí hɔ̨ kété : we wanted to go on a little} {zía í hú tɛ́rɛ́ tí í kété : let us rest for a little while} {mbi gá kótá kété : I became a little big, i.e. I grew up just a bit} {na pɛkɔ́ ní kété : a little while afterwards} {angbá kété,

ála fáa mbi : it remained a little more, and they would have killed me} - opp. míngi

kété babá N : one's father's younger brother - see famille for the kinship system

kété bɔ́i N : a kitchen flunky, an apprentice in domestic service - the kété bɔ́i has the lowest status and pay scale and the most menial jobs among domestic employees - syn. marmiton - see also bɔ́i

kété gɛ́rɛ́ N : a toe - see gɛ́rɛ́

kété mabɔ́kɔ N : a finger - see mabɔ́kɔ

kété mamá N : one's mother's younger sister - see famille for the kinship system

kété pɛ́mbɛ́ N : an incisor tooth - the characteristic verb for biting with the incisors is tɛ - see also kótá pɛ́mbɛ́, pɛ́mbɛ́

kɛ V : see ɛkɛ

kę [kę, kɛ] V : to refuse, to rɛject, to repudiate, to condemn {lo kę, mbi yí pɛpɛ : he refused (saying), I don't want to} {akę, tí fúta lo : he refused to pay him} {lo kę kóbe tí ála : he refused their food} {mbi língbi tí kę áfamille ngbangatí só pɛpɛ : I can't repudiate the family because of that} {mbi kę place tí mamá tí mbi : I rejected my mother's home} {commandant akę lége ní awe : the district officer condemned that conduct} - dé kíté means to object, to express reservations or doubts - opp. yí, yí da, yí pɛkɔ́

kę kɔ́li V : to repudiate one's husband, i.e. to divorce him {mɔ língbi tí kę kɔ́li tí mɔ ngbangatí bɔngɔ́ pɛpɛ : you can't divorce your husband over clothes} - see marier, mariage - syn. kpé kɔ́li

kę wále V : to repudiate one's wife, i.e. to divorce her {kɔ́li só akę wále tí lo awe : this man divorced his wife} - see marier, mariage-syn. tomba wále, zía wále

kii [kii, kí] N : thorns or prickers (as on bushes or trees), bristles or fuzz (as on caterpillars) {kii ní akpɔ mabɔ́kɔ tí lo : the thorn pierced his hand} {mɔ kpaka kíi tí makongó ngbangatí agbó gɔ́ tí mɔ : scrape off the fuzz of the caterpillars so it doesn't catch in your throat} - sisi refers to burrs, while kɔ́á can mean fuzz or bristles

kinda V : to trip or kock down {mbi kinda lo na sése : I knocked him down}

kio* V : to shave {mú na mbi zɛmbɛ, mbi kio kɔ́á li tí mbi : give me the knife, I'll shave my hair}

kírí V : 1. to return, to go back {mbi kírí awe : I have returned} {mbi kírí na kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́ : I have returned to the village} {lo lingbi tí kírí na babá tí lo pɛpɛ : he cannot go back to his father} {lo kírí na kɔa : he returned to work}

2. to respond, to render, to return {mbi yí tí kírí na mɔ merci míngi : I want to render to you many thanks} {fadé mbi báa yí tí kírí na question tí mɔ : I'll find something to respond to your question} - see kírí tɛ́nɛ́

3. with another verb following : to do again {mbi kírí mbi tɛnɛ, ála má mbírímbírí : I'll return and say it, i.e. say it again, so that you'll understand it correctly} {akírí agá kɔtɔ lo : he up and scratched him again} - see encore, mbéní

kiríkiri [kríkri, kírkir] An : 1. crooked, twisted, perverse, devious {kéké só aɛkɛ kiríkiri míngi : that stick is very crooked} {bɛ́ tí lo aɛkɛ kiríkiri : his character is perverse} {zo tí kiríkiri : a devious person} - while kiríkiri suggests multiple twists and bends, ba suggests a simple curvature - sioní is the general term for evil - opp. mbírímbírí

2. any, in the sense of a lack of selection or discrimination, i.e. in a pejorative sense {zo kiríkiri alingbi tí mú yoró pɛpɛ : not just any person can take medicine}

3. used in modifying a verb : disorderly, every which way, indiscriminately, perversely {zo só amú yoró kiríkiri ... : people who take medicine indiscriminately ...} {ála commencer tí kpɔ tɛ́rɛ́ tí ála kiríkiri : they began to stab one another indiscriminately} {lo fáa kóngba tí yá da kiríkiri : he smashed the house utensils every which way} {lo

sára kíríkiri míngi : he did it very perversely} - opp. mbírímbírí

kírí na V : to bring back, to accompany back {mbi kírí na ní na kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́ : I brought it back to the village} {akírí na mbi na Bangui : he accompanied me back to Bangui} - see also gá na, goe na

kírí na pɛkɔ́ V : to retrogress, to go back or backwards - stronger than kírí 1

kíríngó N : 1. a returning {kíríngó tí mɔ na Bangui ... : your return to Bangui ...}
2. used to reinforce the verb kírí {mbi yí tí kírí kíríngó : I want to definitely return}

kírí tɛ́nɛ́ V : to answer, to reply, to respond {mbi sára tɛ́nɛ́ gbá, lo kírí tɛ́nɛ́ pɛpɛ : I spoke in vain, he didn't answer} {lo kírí tɛ́nɛ́ na mbi : he answered me} - when the context indicates in some way a semantic object of the verb, kírí 2 may be used

kísi N : a string of beads worn by women and girls about the hips to adorn themselves and to support the skirt, apron, or loincloth - today, though dresses are worn almost universally, beads are often still worn underneath - lenge refers to beads in general - ý tí mɛ́ and ngbéréná are other personal adornments

kíté N : objection, doubt, expostulation - used especially in dé kíté

kó V : to germinate, to sprout {bóndó aɛkɛ kó na sése : the mil has germinated in the ground}

ko V : to alight, especially to embark or disembark {lo ko na yá tí mbéní ngɔ́ : he embarked in another boat} {lo ko na sése : he alighted, he disembarked}

kóbe [kóbe, kɔ́bɛ] N : 1. food in general, whatever is eaten - hence the meanings below
2. food crops, seed for food crops {só kóé kóbe tí yáká : this is all garden food, i.e. crops} {lé tí kóbe ndé ndé aɛkɛ : there are various kinds of food seeds} {yáká tí kóbe : a food garden or field} {aɛkɛ lú kóbe só na yáká : they planted all this food in the field}

3. prepared dishes in general (só aɛkɛ mbéní mará tí kóbe, ála dé éré ní kanda : this is a certain kind of food, they call it kanda) (kóbe ní akpí, anzɛrɛ pɛpɛ : the dish was sour, it didn't taste good) - kpíngba kóbe is solid food, adults' food - lɛkɛ kóbe or sára mean very generally to prepare food, mɛ́ kóbe is a more specific term meaning to prepare the dough - tɔ́ means to boil, to cook, yɔ́rɔ means to fry, tɛ means to eat

4. specifically, the staple mush or dough - this is made of manioc flour (fúku tí gɔzɔ) in most of the country, but in the north mil (bóndó, zuru) is used (mbéní kóbe tí yɔ́rɔ na gbɛ́ tí ngunzá ní aɛkɛ pɛpɛ : there is no dough to dip into the greens) - it is in this sense that a person who has eaten various things during the day can say in the evening that he has not eaten : he has had no dough - in this sense, kóbe contrasts with kása, which is the sauce made to accompany the dough

kobéla [kobéla, kɔbéla, kobéra] N : sickness, illness, disease, ailment in general (lo tí na kutukutu, ní laá sí lo ɛkɛ na kobéla : he fell (i.e. had an accident) in a car, that is why he is ailing) (só aɛkɛ kobéla tí sioní míngi : that is a very bad sickness) (kobéla asára mbi ngangó : sickness is affecting me greatly, i.e. I am very sick) - the names of specific diseases include : buruma or ngiba leprosy, ndavɛkɛ syphilis, kobéla tí kate any chest or lung ailment, kobéla tí wá fever, kobéla tí yá any abdominal complaint, kɔ́rɔ́ a cold, ngbálo a kind of head ailment, ngé lángó sleeping sickness - sárá is the itch sára purú na mɛ́nɛ́ means to have dysentery, yuru 2 means to have diarrhea - see also ça va, guérir, kái ... kobéla, kobéla ... kái, gá nzoní, which mean to heal or to recover - malade is a syn. interchangeable with kobéla in all usages and environments

kobéla ... kái V : to recover from illness (kobéla aɛkɛ kái gí na lángó tongasó : the illness will get well only in that many days) - see also kái ... kobéla, ça va, guérir, gá nzoní

kobéla tí kate N : any chest or lung ailment, including tuberculosis, pneumonia, pleurisy, bronchitis, and asthma - see kobéla

kobéla tí wá N : fever - see kobéla

kobéla tí yá N : any abdominal pain or ailment, including colic, indigestion, intestinal or urinary parasites, and so forth - see kobéla

kóé [kwé, kwɛ́] An : 1. all, every, whole, entire (mafuta ní acommencer sí gígí kóé : all the oil began to render out) (mbi lɛkɛ yí kóé : I have prepared everything) (ázo tí sése kóé : the people of the whole earth, or all the people of the earth) (áíta tí í kóé : all our brothers) (mbi bara ála kóé : I greet you all) (mbi yí óse kóé : I want all two i.e. both) - used in lá kóé - (Grammar, p. 55) - can be reinforced with syn. tout
2. everything (mbi lɛkɛ kóé awe : I've fixed everything) (kózo ní kóé ... : before everything ...)
3. also, too (fadé mbi kóé mbi sára : I also will do this) (aɛkɛ babá tí í na mɔ kóé : he is the father of me and you too, lit. of us and you too) (mɔ zía kpí da kóé : put in paste also) - syn. ngá
4. entirely, wholly, altogether (mɔ píka yá ní ngbii kóé : pound it for a while, entirely, i.e. until it is done) (atourner kóé awe : it is entirely stirred) (ndo avɔkɔ́ na ála kóé : the surroundings were entirely dark around them)

kógará [kógará, kógalá, kógɛrɛ́] N : a term used mutually among male in-laws - hence, father-in-law, brother-in-law (i.e. wife's brother), son-in-law - see famille for the kinship system

kóli N : a cushion, a pillow

kólo N : a giraffe - the giraffe is known only in the extreme north and east of the Central African Republic

kolóngo N : a broad flat platter or basin - traditionally made of carved wood (azía na yá tí kolóngo, na kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́ tí mbi í hínga sɛmbɛ́ pɛpɛ : we put it onto a wooden platter, in my village we didn't know about dishes) - today, it includes any sort of broad flat container, in contrast to kopo, which designates a smaller and deeper container - see also ta kombá N : a guinea fowl, a highly-prized game bird

kombáámbá N : a bachelor - masía is the feminine counterpart

kóngbá [kóngbá, kɔ́ngbá, kúngbá, kúmbá] N : 1. goods, possessions, merchandise (lo goe tí ká kóngbá tí lo na galá : she went to sell her goods in the market) (kɔ́li ní atenɛ na wále tí lo, lo lɛkɛ kóngbá tí ní : the man told his wife to pack up his possessions)
2. a load, a burden, a bundle, a package (lo ɛkɛ gbó kóngbá na ázo : he carries packages for people) (kóngbá tí mbunzú ní ahɔ̧́ ndó ní : the white man's load was too heavy) (goe zía kóngbá na yá auto : go put the load into the car) - specifically, kóngbá means as much as one person can carry, a porter's load
3. by extension : a container, as a basket, a pot (lo fáa kóngbá tí yá da kírikiri : he smashed the household containers, i.e. pots, every which way) - see also sakpá, ta

kóngo N : 1. a mallet for pounding manioc - it is usually L-shaped, with a heavy head, and carved out of a single piece of hard wood
2. a hoe handle, either L-shaped and about eighteen inches long, or T-shaped and about ten inches long, and carved out of a single piece of hard wood

korogbó N : the scrotum - kéngé is the penis - lungúla korogbó means to castrate - see téré 1

kopo* N : a container, usually relatively small and deep, in contrast with kolóngo which is broad and flat - see also kangú, ta

koróngo N : a type of fan palm (Borassus aethiopum Mart.) - the nut is eaten, and from various parts a kind of salt is made (sá̧) - from the leaves coarse mats and baskets are made

kóso V : to drag, to pull along - see also gbɔ́tɔ

kótá [kótá, kútá, kɔ́tá] An : 1. big, large, great, wide, broad, thick (kótá caisse só ahɔ̧́ ndó ní : that big crate was too much) (yí só aɛkɛ kótá yí : this is a big thing) (asára kótá wá da : they made a great fire there) (kótá ta : a large pot) (mbéní kótá ngú : a certain broad river} {kótá lége : a wide road} {Bangui aɛkɛ kótá kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́ : Bangui is a big city} {kótá bóngbi tí ála : their large gathering} - opp. kété 1 - yɔngɔ́rɔ means long, tall

2. a large amount, a large quantity {kótá nginza tí mɔ abuba awe : your large amount of money has been wasted} - syn. míngi, opp kété 2

3. important, outstanding, significant, great, superior {só kótá gbíá tí í : this is our great king} {lo ɛkɛ kótá zo tí nzí : he is a great thief} {mbi fa na ála kótá kɔa tí inspecteur : I will show you the important work of the inspector} {só kótá yí ahɔ̧ kóé : that is the most important thing of all} {só ɔɛkɛ kótá école : that is a superior, i.e. higher-level school} {ála sára kótá wátáká : they made a great lie} {mbi gee na kótá yoró : I went to the great fetish} - opp. kété 4

kótá babá N : one's father's older brother - see famille for the kinship system

kótá gɛ́rɛ́ N : thigh - see gɛ́rɛ́

kótá íta N : an older sibling {kótá íta tí mɛ́rɛngɛ́ wále ní alóndó ká : the older sibling of this girl departed from there} - kótá zo 2 specifies an older brother - see famille for the kinship system

kótá kɔ́li N : an old man - syn. kángba - kótá wále is an old woman, while mbakɔ́rɔ and kótá zo include both sexes

kótá lá : noon, mid-day - syn. midi - see heure for the divisions of the day

kótá mabɔ́kɔ N : a thumb - see mabɔ́kɔ - not clearly distinguished in pre-literate usage, the distinction came through French

kótá mamá N : one's mother's older sister - see famille for the kinship system

kótá pɛ́mbɛ́ N : a molar tooth - the characteristic verb for biting with the molars is nɛ, to crush - see also kété pɛ́mbɛ́, pɛ́mbɛ́

kótá wále N : an old woman - mbakɔ́rɔ is a sexless term for an old person, as is kótá zo, while kángba or kótá kɔ́li refer to old men

kótá zo N : 1. an older person, an elder, a member of a former generation, a dignitary {amú ngbéréná tí ákótá zo só : he took the brass ornament of the older people} {ákótá zo aɛkɛ na mbáge aussi tí tɛ ngá : the elders were also on one side to eat} {ákótá zo tí kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́ : the elders or dignitaries of the village} - syn. mbakɔ́rɔ - see also kótará
2. one's older brother - see famille for the kinship system

dótará N : ancestor in general - frequently used in the plural {lége tí ákótará tí í adiminuer awe : the ways of our ancestors are now dwindling} {yí tí giriri só, kótará tí í asára ... : those former things, which our ancestors used to do ...} {mbéní kótá kótará tí í ... : a certain great ancestor of ours ...} - kótará is less specific than babá 2 or kaká

koti* N : the right hand - the right hand is used for eating and for giving gifts - both hands must be used in receiving a gift - syn. mabɔ́kɔ tí kɔ́li, opp. mabɔ́kɔ tí wále or gati - see mabɔ́kɔ

kózo An : 1. first {kózo masía tí mbi ... : my first, i.e. oldest, unmarried daughter ...}
2. also used as a syn. of kózo ní {tɛnɛ na mbi kózo : tell me first}

kózo ní Av : first, formerly - can occur before or after a verb or be joined to a noun by tí {kózo ní ábabá tí í asára só : formerly our fathers did this} {mbi hínga lo kózo ní : I knew him first} {yí tí kózo ní : the former things} - kózo ní is distinguished from giriri and ánde in expressing an ordinal idea

kɔ́ V : to pluck, as fruit or leaves {akɔ́ kugbé alɛkɛ na ndó ní : they plucked the leaves and arranged them on top of it}

kɔ́á [kwá] N 1 : hair, bristle, fur, fuzz, feather {kɔ́á tí lo avurú kóé : his hair is all white} {kɔ́á tí makongó só kóé agbí : the fuzz of the caterpillars is all burned off} - see also kɔ́á li, kɔ́á lé, kɔ́á ngbagba, kɔ́á tí tɛ́rɛ́, kɔ́á yángá, kɔ́á tí ndɛkɛ

kɔ́á [kwá] N 2 : 1. death, in the global or general sense {kɔ́á agá amú lo : death came and took him} {mbito tí kɔ́á amú mbi pɛpɛ, ngbangatí mbi ɛkɛ zo tí kɔ́á : the fear of death does not seize me, because I am a man of death, i.e. mortal} - kúi N 1 refers to an instance or act of death - see also toto kɔ́á

2. a human corpse, a cadaver {ála mú kɔ́á tí mɛ́rɛngɛ́ só, ála lú lo : they took the corpse of this child and buried him} - kúi N 2 refers to the dead bodies of animals - a living human body is tɛ́rɛ́

kɔa [kwa] N 1 : work, job, task, employment {ála sára kɔa tí yáká : they did agricultural work} {ála manda kɔa ní : they learned the job} {lo lóndó na kɔa lo kírí na da : he left the job and returned home} {kɔa tí mbunzú asɔ zo míngi : employment with a white man hurts people a lot} - syn. kusára

kɔa [kwa] N 2 : a message - used in the expression to kɔa - Protestants sometimes use the neologism wa kɔa to speak of a messenger, i.e. a preacher

kɔ́á lè N : an eye lash - tí can intervene - see also ngeki lé

kɔ́á li N : hair of the head - tí can intervene {tongana mɔ mɛ́rɛngɛ́ mɔ má yángá tí babá tí mɔ pɛpɛ, lá ɔ́kɔ kɔ́á li tí mɔ agá vurú pɛpɛ : if you as a child don't obey your father, your hair will never become white, i.e. you will never live to an old age}

kɔ́á ngbagba N : the beard - most African men have a sparse beard, which they shave - mature men sometimes wear chin beards

kɔ́á tí ndɛkɛ N : a feather

kɔ́á tí tɛ́rɛ́ N : body hair

kɔ́á yángá N : whiskers, moustache - a few men wear moustaches {tongana mɛ́rɛngɛ́ akpíngba kɔ́li awe, kɔ́á yángá tí lo acommencer tí sí gígí : when a boy becomes a mature man, then his whiskers begin to grow out}

kɔ́dá N : a debt, an obligation of a material nature, often arising out of social relationships - debt incurred through credit purchase or the taking of a loan is called bon N

kɔkɔ N : a kind of edible leaf (Gnetum africanum Welw.) {mɔ zía da kpí tí sindi, na mafuta na kɔkɔ na oignon, sí mɔ lɛkɛ nzoní mɔ tɛ : you put in sesame paste, and oil and kɔkɔ greens and onions, so as to make it good to eat} - see kugbé for a list of edible leaves

kɔkɔra N : an arrow {gbá tí kɔkɔra : a bundle of arrows} - the shaft of the arrow is usually made of a special thin straight reed - the tip, barbed or unbarbed, is of iron or hard wood, fastened to the shaft by means of wound strips of raw latex - no feather is used - gindí is the bow - see zɛmbɛ for a list of weapons

kɔ́li [kɔ́li, kɔ́ri, kɔ̂li, kɔ̂ri] N : 1. a man, as opposed to a woman or child {mbi gá kɔ́li : I have become a man} {kobéla só asára kɔ́li, asára wále, asára mɛ́rɛngɛ́ kóé : this sickness affects men, it affects women, it affects children also} {fadesó áwále afáa yáká lége ɔ́kɔ tongana kɔ́li : nowadays women make fields just like men} - opp. wále 1, mɛ́rɛngɛ́ 2. a husband {ála tɛnɛ ála ɛkɛ mú kɔ́li gí na kété yoró tí bata tɛ́rɛ́ : they are saying that they get husbands just with the little charm that protects their bodies} {ámbéní wále ayí títɛnɛ, ákɔ́li tí ála afɔnɔ pɛpɛ : some women don't want their husbands to roam around} {aɛkɛ nzoní wále agonda ndeko tí lo na kɔ́li tí lo ? : is it proper for a woman to praise her lover before her husband?} - opp. wále 2 - see also mariage, marier

3. a male, human or animal, usually used to qualify some other noun {mɛ́rɛngɛ́ tí kɔ́li, mɛ́rɛngɛ́ kɔ́li : a male child, a boy} {íta tí mbi tí kɔ́li : my male sibling, my brother} {kɔ́li dole, kɔ́li tí dole : a male elephant} {kɔ́li kɔ́ndɔ : a rooster} - opp. wále 3

kɔ́li pendere N : a young man, a youth, a male adolescent - used especially in songs - the more generally used syn. is pendere kɔ́li - see also for contrast kpíngba kɔ́li, pendere wále

kɔ́ndɔ N : a domestic chicken - chickens are universally domesticated, but eggs are rarely used as food and chickens are killed for food only on ceremonial or important occasions - they are rather a form of wealth, like goats, and are used for gifts to important people and for sacrifices - they are not fed, but forage for themselves during the day and are kept either in the house or in a special coop at night -

wále kɔ́ndɔ is a hen, kɔ́li kɔ́ndɔ a rooster, mɛ́rɛngɛ́ kɔ́ndɔ a chick, párá kɔ́ndɔ́ an egg

kɔ́ngba N 1 : a frog - syn. bíanga

kɔ́ngɔ́ [kɔ́ngɔ́, kɔ́ngó] N : a rainbow {kɔ́ngɔ́ así gígí na devant tí mbínda : the rainbow appeared in front of the cloud}

kɔ́ngɔ́ N 2 : a shout, a yell - usually used in dé kɔ́ngɔ́

kɔnɔ́ N : a hippopotamus - found in the Oubangui, the Sangha, and a few other large rivers

kɔnɔ [kɔnɔ, kono, kǫnɔ] V : to be or become big, to grow in size, to grow up {yá tí mbi asúku, akɔnɔ tongana ballon : my stomach swelled up, it became big like a balloon} {mɛ́rɛngɛ́ tí mbi akɔnɔ tongana só ká : my child is as big as that one there} {mbi kɔnɔ na Bangassou : I grew up in Bangassou} {mɔ gá zo só mɔ kɔnɔ mbírímbírí : you have become a person who grew properly, i.e. who developed normally} {fadé kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́ tí Bangui aɛkɛ kɔnɔ ânde : the city of Bangui will get big soon} - opp. ngɛ - súku means to swell

kɔ́nɔ́ngɔ́ N : size, growth - also big {só kɔnɔ́ngó ní : that is a big one} - see kótá - from kɔnɔ

kɔ́rɔ́ N : a cold, especially one accompanied by a running nose and/or sneezing - see kobéla

kɔ́rɔ V : to dig into so as to make a hole, to pierce, to bore {mbi kɔ́rɔ dú : I dug a hole} - zí emphasizes the digging action rather than the resulting hole, while kpɔ is to puncture rather than to dig or bore

kɔ́sɔ N : 1. any of several plants cultivated for their oily edible seeds (Citrullus vulgaris Schrad., Lagenaria vulgaris L., or Cucumeropsis Manii Nand.) - mbɛ́rɛ́kɛ́ also refers to at least one of these

2. the seeds of any of these plants {mɔ gá na kɔ́sɔ, mɔ yɔ́rɔ mɔ píka na yá tí kpu : you bring the kɔ́sɔ seeds, you fry them and pound them in the mortar} - kɔ́sɔ may be extension be used to refer to any edible oily seed, syn. kpí N 1

kɔtɔ N : a foundation of beaten earth about a foot high on which some peoples, e.g. the Kąrę, traditionally built their houses - see da - the more general term for a foundation is gɛ́rɛ́ tí da

kɔtɔ V : to scratch, as with the fingernails {lo kɔtɔ mbi na nzɛnɛ tí mabɔ́kɔ : he scratched me with his fingernails} - ása means to dig in, kpaka to scrape with an instrument

kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́ [kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́, kɔ́dɔ́rɔ́, kɔ́trɔ́, kɛ́drɔ́] N : any organized and settled human community which inspires loyalty and a feeling of belonging : a homestead, a village, a town, a city, a tribal community, a nation - especially one's own home community {kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́ ayɔ́ míngi : the village is far away} {makunzi vɛní acommander kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́ : it is the chief who rules the village} {mbi kírí na kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́ : I returned to my home community} {Bangui aɛkɛ kótá kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́ : Bangui is a big city} {kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́ tí République Centrafricaine aɛkɛ gá ánde kótá kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́ : the Central African Republic nation will soon become a great nation} {ála girísa yí tí kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́ awe : they have forgotten the things of the community, i.e. the traditional customs} {na kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́ tí í na Gbanu, aɛkɛ tongasó : in our community the Gbanu (a tribal unit), it is like this} - in contrast with sése, the land, and ngonda, the bush or wilderness - see goe kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́, zo tí kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́

kɔ́ya [kɔ́ya, kwíya] N : 1. an uncle, especially one's mother's brother - syn. aú 1 - see famille for the kinship system

2. used as a term of respect in addressing an older man - syn. aú 2

kpa V : to resemble {mɔ kpa babá tí mɔ : you resemble your father}

kpaka V : to scrape with a tool or instrument {mɔ kpaka kíi tí makongó ngbangatí agbó gɔ́ tí mɔ : scrape the fuzz off the caterpillars so it doesn't catch in your throat} - ása means to dig in with the hands, kɔtɔ to scratch as with the fingernails

kpalakongo* N : a scorpion - see voma for a list of insects and arachnids

kpangba* N : a temporary structure of poles supporting a thatched roof, a shed such as is used to shelter mourners and the corpse at a funeral kpángbálá An : flat - applied to dishes and to land {kpángbálá sεmbέ : a flat plate} {kpángbálá sése : flat land, a plain} - for a flat dish, see also kolóngo

kpangbala N : a machete - syn. coupe-coupe, nzεnzε

kpangbi* N : the wing of a bird {kɔ́ndɔ abóngbi ámέrεngέ tí lo na kpangbi tí lo : the hen gathers her chicks under her wings}

kpé [kpé, kpέ] V : to run, to run away, to run away from, to flee {lo εkε kpé na gέrέ : he is running on foot} {lo kpé na vélo míngi : he ran fast on a bicycle} {í tomba pεkɔ́ tí ádole ngbii, ála kpé awe : we chased after the elephants for a while, but they had run away} {áBambinga akpé dole pεpε : the Pygmies don't run away from elephants} {lo kpé tí goe báa kámba tí lo : he ran to go see his snare} {auto ní akpé alíngbi pεpε : the car ran too fast, or very fast} - see also kpé lɔ́rɔ́, kpé mbito - used in li ... kpé

kpé kɔ́li V : of a woman : to run away from her husband, to divorce him - if she takes the initiative, she leaves - if he does, he chases her away, tomba wále - syn. kę kɔ́li, zía kɔ́li - see also mariage, marier

kpé lɔ́rɔ́ V : to race, to run fast {mbi na ála, í sára ngiá, í kpé lɔ́rɔ́ : they and I, we had fun, we raced} {mɔ hínga tí kpé lɔ́rɔ́ pεpε : you don't know how to run fast} - see also gbíma ndɔkɔ

kpé mbito V : to fear, to be afraid, to flee for fear, to respect, to reverence {ázo tí kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́ akpé mbito tí lukundú míngi : the villagers fear witch spirits greatly} {kózo ní mbi kpé mbito tí ambunzú : formerly, I used to fear white men}

kpere* N : a kind of antelope of the genus Cephalophus - see yąma tí ngonda

kpí [kpí, kpé] V : to be or become sour, to ferment {ála fúru bóndó, sí tongana akpí awe, sí ála sára hárágе : they mixed the mil with water, and when it had fermented, they made a distilled liquor of it} {kóbe ní akpí, títεnε anzεrε pεpε : the food is sour, that is it doεsn't taste good} - sé means to be bitter, nzεrε to taste good or sweet kpí [kpí, kpé] N : 1. any oily edible grain or seed {só mafuta aεkε da, tongana mɔ nεka, só kpí : whatever has oil when you crush it, that's kpí} - the most common grains so designated are káráko peanuts, kósɔ and mbέrέkέ the seeds of various kinds of squash-like plants, and sindi sesame

2. a paste made of any of these seeds and used as an ingredient in many sauces {mɔ píka kpí tí sindi na kpu na yíngɔ́ tí basánze : you pound the sesame paste in the mortar with home-made salt} - see kása, yabándá

kpíkara N : a pangolin or scaly ant-eater (genus Manis) - with tεrε, the spider, a frequent character in fables {tongana zo andú kpíkara, lo sára manière, alángó tongana lo kúí : when people touch the pangolin, he uses guile, and plays dead}

kpíngba V : 1. to harden, to be or become hard, solid, firm {mbéní kóbe só akpíngba na yángá tí kpu aεkε pεpε : there is no kind of food that can harden itself against the mouth of the mortar, i.e. that is hard enough to resist grinding in the mortar} {lo tε kpíngba kóbe : he ate solid food} {pɔtɔpɔ́tɔ ní akpíngba awe : the mud has hardened} - see gbó 5, coller V, ngangó

2. to mature, as a person, animal, or plant {mɔ kpíngba awe : you have matured} {tongana kása akpíngba awe, sí fadé í fáa : when the food plants mature, then we will harvest them} - see also kpíngba kɔ́li, lé ... kpíngba, li ... kpíngba - mą́į̧ speaks of the whole organism in the process of developing, while kpíngba speaks of the end result or fruit

kpíngba kɔ́li N : a mature man {aεkε tí mú wále fadé fadé na mέrεngέ ní pεpε, mais abata lo jusqu'à, tongana mέrεngέ ní agá kpíngba kɔ́li awe : it is not (done) to give the woman immediately to the boy, but we keep her for a while, until the boy has become a mature man} - opp. pendere kɔ́li

kpíngbángó N : hard, mature {mbi yí kpíngbángó ní : I want a hard one} - from kpíngba

kpíngba wále N : an adult woman - opp. pendere wále

kpíngba zo N : a mature adult, in opp. to pendere adolescent, mɛ́rɛngɛ́ a child, and mbakɔ́rɔ an old person - see zo

kpítíkpítí Av : an ideophone used to intensify the verb vɔkɔ́ {ndo avɔkɔ́ kpítíkpítí : the place became pitch black}

kpó [kpó, kpɔ́] Av : quiet, quietly, at rest, at peace {lo dutí kpó na kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́ : he remained quietly in the village} {mɔ zía mbi kpó : leave me in peace} - this last may be a gallicism on the model of laissez-moi tranquille - used usually with dutí

kpókpó N : a pipe for smoking - the traditional pipe has a baked clay bowl and a hollowed wooden stem, and is shaped somewhat like a Meerschaum pipe - mánga is the tobacco

kpoto N : a hat - syn. chapeau

kpɔ V : 1. to pierce, to puncture, to stab {ála kpɔ tɛ́rɛ́ tí ála : they stabbed themselves (or each other)} {mbi kpɔ yąma na likongó : I pierced the animal with a spear} - kɔ́rɔ means to bore or dig through, zí 2 means to dig, and fáa means to cut

2. to plant cuttings by poking them into the ground - this is how manioc is planted

3. to poke small bundles of grass into place prior to tying them down to the framework of a roof {mbi fáa péré, mbi goe mbi kpɔ na ní kóé : I cut grass, and I went and poked it all in}

4. to string tobacco leaves before hanging them to dry - see mánga

kpɔ́ka N : a hoe - there are three types of traditional hoes : two have identical iron blades of roughly trapezoid shape, about seven inches long and four wide, with a socket into which a wooden handle is fitted, while the other has a narrower and thicker blade fitted onto a long handle and is used for digging holes - the first two are distinguished in that one has an L-shaped handle about eighteen inches long and is used with a chopping motion as person bends over while the other has a T-shaped handle ten inches long and is used with a shoving motion as person squats - see kóngo 2 - syn. ngáfó kpɔ mɔ ngangó N : a kind of burr - see also sisi

kpɔrɔ [kpɔrɔ, kpɔlɔ] V : to bubble, to boil (ngú só aεkε na wá só, aεkε kpɔrɔ : the water which is on the fire is boiling) (na ndá ní mɔ kpɔrɔ lo, jusqu'à : in the end you boil it a while) - the same word describes the bubbling of carbonated beverages - tɔ́ means to cook by boiling

kpɔ́rɔ́ngó ngú N : boiled or boiling water - see ngú 1, ngú tí wá - opp. ngú tí dé

kpu N : a mortar, in which food is pounded (kárákó, gɔzɔ, ngunzá, café, yí só kóé mɔ píka gí na yá tí kpu : peanuts, manioc, greens, coffee, all these things you pound in the mortar) - the mortar is carved out of a single block of hardwood, and is shaped like a thick hourglass about fifteen inches high or more and twelve inches in maximum diameter - a pestle is used to crush grain and other foods in the mortar

kpuˀ Av : an ideophone expressing an explosive sound, as of a gun (ngombe ní atoto, kpuˀ : the gun sounded out, kpuˀ)

kú V : to wait, to wait for (ála língbi tí kú : you can wait) (ázo aεkε kú kɔa tí ála : the people are waiting for their jobs) (mbi ngbá tí kú tí má ndá ní : I remained to wait to hear the end of it) (mɔ goe kú mbi na lége : go wait for me on the road)

kugbé [kugbé, kukpé] N : 1. any kind of leaf from a plant - edible leaves or greens include gúsá, gbutu, kɔkɔ, kawai, ngunzá, ngágo - see yabándá, kása

2. by extension, a sheet of paper, a page (mɔ sára mbέtí na ndó tí kugbé tí mbέtí só : write on this sheet of paper)

kúí [kwí] V : to die (babá na mamá akúí awe : father and mother have both died)- used in lá kúí - see also kúí N, kɔ́á N 2

kúí [kwí, kwíi] N : 1. death, a specific instance of death (kúí aεkε da míngi : there are many deaths there) (mbi sára tέnέ tí kúí tí lo : I spoke about his death) (lo payer kúí tí wále ní : he paid (damages) for the death of the woman) - kɔ́á N 2.1 means death in general

2. the dead body of an animal - *kɔ́á* N 2.2 means a human corpse
3. a wreck, as of a bicycle or automobile {kúí tí vélo : the wreck of a bicycle}

kúí nzala V : to be very hungry, to starve - see *nzala* ... *fáa*

kuku* V : to kneel - see also *ba*, *dénge*, *zúku*

kulá N : revenge, retaliation - used especially in *fúta kulá*, to avenge, to retaliate - in traditional custom, every injury occasioned resentment (*vundú*), which could not be appeased until vengeance had been made, by curse, by death, or by the payment of damages - a form of *lex talionis* was in operation

kúma N : a python - *ngbɔ́* is any snake

kunde N : a sort of traditional guitar - see *píka bíá*

kúngbi V : 1. to fold {kúngbi yá ní : fold it in the middle} - syn. *ngombi*
2. to break by bending, as a stick {kéké ní akúngbi : the stick broke} {kúngbi kéké ní : break the stick} - see *fáa* for various related terms

kuní N : knee - less commonly used than *genou*

kúrú N : something thoroughly dried {kúrú tí susu : dried fish} {kúrú tí yąma : dried meat} {kúrú sése : arid land, desert} - see also *ole*, *óléngó*

kusára [kusára, kosára, kɔsára, kusála, kosála, kɔsála, gosára] N : work, job, task, employment {mbi ɛkɛ zo tí kusára : I am a work (ing) man} {mɔ ɛkɛ fúta lo kusára só lo ɛkɛ sára na mɔ ngú otá só : you will pay him for the work he has done for you these three years} - syn. *kɔą* N 1

kutu N : a thousand - see *ɔ́kɔ* for the number system

kutukutu N : an automobile {kutukutu akpé lɔ́rɔ́ : the automobile is running fast} - *auto* is sometimes restricted to passenger cars, while *camion* is a truck and *autocar* is a bus

- L -

lá N : 1. the sun {ákótará tí í asambéla kéké, na péré, na nzɛ, na lá : our ancestors worshipped trees, and grass, and the moon,and the sun} {na lá kúí, lá tongasó, í goe : in the late afternoon, the sun (being) like this (pointing), we went} - see kótá lá, lá kṹí, lá ... kúí, lá ... lóndó

2. a day, 24-hour period, daylight, a date, the time when something happens {lá tí dimanche : the Sunday-day, i.e. Sunday} {lá tí vingt juin mil-neuf cent soixante-deux : the twentieth of June 1962} {lá tí voter : election day} {lá tí kótá bóngbi tí ála : the timc of their great meeting} {mbi tɛnɛ lá ní na ála kóé ... : I said that day to you all ...} {lá ní só mbi goe na kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́ ... : that day when I went home ...} - see lángó N 2 - the dating system includes the following terms :

bírí, yesterday
mbéní bírí, day before yesterday
kékéréke, tomorrow
mbéní kékéréke, day after tomorrow
lá só, today
mbéní lá, lá ɔ́kɔ, a certain day, one day
lá kóé, every day, always

in addition, the entire French dating system, including the names of the days of the week and months of the year and the French numeral system - see ɔ́kɔ

laá SP : emphatic and explanatory particle {ní laá lo ɛkɛ sára matánga só : that's why he is making this celebration} {lo lángó na ndó tí sése míngi laá : he has lived long on this earh, that's why} {gí tɛ́nɛ́ ní laá : that's the matter right there} - (Grammar p. 152-155)

lait** [lɛ́ɛ, dulɛ́] N : milk, especially animal milk, canned milk or powdered milk as used in human nutrition - human mother's milk is ngú tí mɛ

lakéré N : a lateritic plateau - hence, any large flat rock, especially one on which manioc is pounded {wále anɛ fúku na lakéré : women pound flour on the flat rock} - these special rocks are community property

lá kóé N : daily, every day, always - reduplicated, it can simply emphasize the daily element, or it can mean forever {lá kóé, mbi tɛ gí ngunzá : every day, I eat just greens} {lo toto ngbangatí mɔ lá kóé : he cries for you all the time} {lo ɛkɛ changer bɔngɔ́ lá kóé lá kóé : he changes clothes every single day} {mɔ ɛkɛ zo só mɔ ɛkɛ na kobéla lá kóé lá kóé pɛpɛ : you 're not the sort of person who's forever sick} - see lá 2 for the dating system

lá kúí N : late afternoon, sunset {lo ɛkɛ sára na mɔ na ndá péréré, así na lá kúí : he works for you from early morning until sunset} - see heure for the divisions of the day

lá ... kúí V : sun ... set {lá akúí awe : the sun has already set} - opp. lá ... lóndó - see also lá 1, lá kúí - see heure for the divisions of the day

lá ... lóndó V : sun ... rise {lá alóndó awe : the sun has already risen} - see ndá ade, ndá péréré - opp. lá ... kúí - see heure for the divisions of the day

lampe** [lámpe] N : a lamp, especially a kerosene or gasoline pressure lamp or a wick lamp

lando [lando, landɔ] N : a grassy somewhat marshy or sometimes flooded plain, such as is frequented by herbivorous game - see ngonda, a general term for wilderness, péré, a grassy plain, and gbakó, meaning a gallery forest

lángó V : 1. to sleep, to go to sleep, to lie down to sleep {na Takorongo, zo tí lángó na kótá lá tongasó aɛkɛ pɛpɛ : in Takorongo, there is no one who sleeps at noon like that} {mamá atɛnɛ, mɔ toto pɛpɛ, mɔ lángó : mother says, don't cry, go to sleep} {lo sára manière, alángó tongana lo kúí : he used cunning, he lay down as if he had died} { na bí, mɔ ɛkɛ lángó : at night, you sleep} - sɛ́ tɛ́rɛ́ means to recline - zíngo is to awaken

2. of things : to lie, to remain {mɔ zía kóbe ní alángó : let the food remain there}

3. to live, to dwell, to reside, to remain {mbi lángó da, mbi sára ngú ɔ́kɔ na Grimari : I lived there, I spent one year at Grimari} - see also du 2, dutí 2

lángó N : 1. sleep, rest, nap {lángó asára lé tí mbi : sleep affects my eyes, i.e. I'm sleepy} {só lángó tí kɔa laá pɛpɛ ? : isn't that the rest (period) from work?} - see also hú tɛ́rɛ́

2. a day - used especially in counting the number of days {tɛrɛ adutí na pɛkɔ́ tí lo gí lángó ɔ́kɔ séngé : tɛrɛ remained after he (left) just one day} {asára ká lángó míngi : he spent many days there} {yoró ɔ́kɔ na lángó tí lo : each (dose of) medicine on its day} - see lá 2

lá ɔ́kɔ N : one day, a certain day, ever {lá ɔ́kɔ, mbi tɔ́ ngunzɔ́ lége otá : on one day, I cooked greens three times} {mbéní lá ɔ́kɔ, akɛ tí fúta lo ? : has he ever refused to pay him?}

lá ɔ́kɔ ... pɛpɛ N : never {lá ɔ́kɔ mɔ mú na mbi kóbe pɛpɛ : never have you given me food} {akái na kobéla só lá ɔ́kɔ pɛpɛ : they never cure this sickness}

lá só N : today {ála má éré tí ála lá só pɛpɛ : you didn't hear your names today} - see lá 2 for the dating system

lángó na V : a euphemism : to have sexual intercourse with {kɔ́li alángó na wále : the man slept, i.e. had intercourse, with the woman} - syn. gba

langue** [láŋgar] N : the tongue - syn. mɛ́ngá

lavú N : a bee - bees are kept in large, bullet-shaped hives, about six or seven feet long and over a foot in diameter, made of straw, in the forks of bush trees - the honey (ngú lavú, mafuta tí wótoro) and the wax (mafuta tí wótoro) are gathered and used or sold, as well as those from wild bees - a kind of mead (duma) is made of the honey - syn. wótoro - see voma for a list of insects

lá wa N : 1. what day, when (lo gá lá wa : when did he come?) - syn. lá yę
2. an exclamation expressing derisive or indignant doubt or objection : it's ridiculous to think that (mbi tomba Kamara lá wa : it's ridiculous to think that I drove Kamara away) (mɔ língbi tí kę lo ngbangatí bɔngɔ́ lá wa : how could you ever reject him over clothes!) - tongana yę can have a similar exclamatory use, though the doubt expressed is not as strong as with lá wa

lá yę N : when, what day - syn. lá wa

lé [lé, lɛ́, ré, rɛ́] N 1 : 1. eye (lé tí lo óse kóé asɔ lo : both his eyes hurt him) (Bangui agá kɔ́tá kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́ na lé tí í : Bangui has become a big city in our eyes) - used in báa na lé, ngú lé, vɔkɔ́ lé, lé ... yí - see tɛ́rɛ́ 1
2. face (lo sukúla lé tí lo : he washed his face) (nzala asára mbi tí báa lé tí mɔ : desire to see your face affects me i.e. I miss you) - used in ndó lé, lé na lé, hínga lé tí, lé ... kpíngba, lé ndúzú - see tɛ́rɛ́ 1
3. presence (mbi ɛkɛ tɛnɛ, na lé tí ála kóé ... : I'm saying, in the presence of you all ...) - na lé tí means in the presence of, before - see na 3 - syn. gbɛ́ lé, devant
4. surface (lo sára mbɛ́tí na ndó lé tí mbɛ́tí só : he wrote on the surface of the paper) - see also lé tí ngú
5. flat of the blade (lé tí zɛmbɛ : the flat of a knife blade) - yángá is the edge of the blade

lé N 2 : seed, fruit (lé tí kóbe ndé ndé aɛkɛ : there are various kinds of edible seeds (or fruits)) - see lé V - this term includes all of the edible grains and seeds, as well as all edible fruits : mil (bóndó, zuru), maize (nzó, gbánza), peanuts (káráko), sesame (sindi), various squash seeds (kósɔ, mbɛ́rɛ́kɛ́), mango (mángo), etc. - most edible fruits are known by their French names (oranges, pineapples, papayas, etc.) - see lé tí kéké lé [lé, lí] V : to bear fruit or seed {sése ní aεkε nzoní pεpε, alé pεpε : the soil is not good, it does not produce fruit} {kéké tí sioní alé sioní : a bad tree bears bad fruit} - see *lé* N 2, *léngó*

lége [lége, lége, rége, rége] N : 1. a path, a road {lége tí Paoua : the road to Paoua} {mɔ kú mbi na lége : wait for me on the path} {í goe fáa lége : we crossed the road} {lo sí na yɔngɔ́rɔ lége : he arrived on a long (i.e. faraway) road} {í sára kótá lége : we made a wide road} {lo húnda lége tí Takorongo : he asked for the road to Takorongo} {mbέtí tí lo angbá na lége : his letter is still on the road} {lo zía likongó na lége tí dole : he put a spear in the path of the elephant} - see *kánga lége*, *mú lége*, *zía ... na lége*

2. manner, way, custom {yí só ála sára aεkε lége ní pεpε : what they have done is not the (right) way} {só lége ní laá : that's the (right) way there} {ála zía lége tí ákótará : they have left the customs of the ancestors} {ála girísa lége tí lεkε ta awe : they have lost the manner of making pots} {commandant akę lége ní awe : the district officer condemned this manner} - na lége tí/ní is a "prepositional expression" of means, manner, cause, and topic {abata lo gí na lége tí mε : she kept him (i.e. fed him) just by means of the breast} {í sára kóbe na lége ní pεpε : we did not make the food in the right way} {gendarme agá na lége tí zo tí nzí : the policeman comes on account of the thief} {na lége tí ákótará tí í ... : concerning our ancestors ...} - see *na* 3 - see *gí lége*, *hínga lége*, *fa lége*, *wara lége* - of *malin*, *manière*, *ndaráa*

3. with a numeral : times {mbi báa lo lége otá : I saw him three times} - see *lége ɔ́kɔ* 1

lége ɔ́kɔ Av : 1. once, one time - see *lége* 3

2. together, the same, alike, in the same manner, at the same time {abóngbi lége ɔ́kɔ na ngunzá : you put it together with the greens} {wále afáa yáká lége ɔ́kɔ tongana kɔ́li : women make gardens in the same way as men} {í dutí kóé lége ɔ́kɔ : we stayed together} {Sango na Banda aεkε lége ɔ́kɔ : Sango and Banda are alike}

lekpa [lekpa, rekpa] N : a small antelope, a sitatunga (*Strepsiceros spekei*) lé ... kpíngba V : to be or become mature, to mature {lé tí mbi acommencer kpíngba awe : I had begun to mature} - see *kpíngba*

lélé N : a donkey, an ass - used primarily by Muslim ambulant traders and herdsmen

lele N : a bush-tailed porcupine (genus *Atheruru*)

lé na lé Av : face to face (mbi tɛnɛ na lo, lé na lé ... : I told him, face to face ...} - see *lé* N 1.2

lé ndúzú N : the sky - syn. *ndúzú*

lengé N : a certain dance for girls among the Yakoma, at which time their front teeth are knocked out - this is a sort of initiatory rite {tongana mɔ zí pɛ́mbɛ́ tí mɔ sí mɔ lungúla pɛpɛ, zo tí lengé apíka li tí mɔ : if you don't loosen your teeth so that they come out, the lengé participants will hit you on the head} - see *dɔ́dɔ́*

lenge N 1 : beads, especially a string of beads - *kísi* is the special term for a string of beads to be worn about the hips - *ngbéréná* and *yí tí mɛ́* are other personal adornments

lenge* N 2 : a type of creeping vine which is planted by the house and used medicinally

léngó N : fruit, harvest increase, yield - from *lé* V - syn. *lé* N 2

lé tí kéké : any fleshy fruit grown on a tree, as the mango, etc. - see *lé* N 2

lé tí ngú N : the surface of the water {bi ngɔ́ tí mɔ na lé tí ngú : thrust your boat out on the surface of the water} {lé tí ngú ní aɛkɛ kété : the surface of the river is narrow} - see *lé* N 1.4

lé tí wá N : a glowing coal {ndao agbó wɛ́ ní na lé tí wá : the smith took hold of the iron in the coals} - *píndírí* refers to embers

lé ... yí V : to desire in a transitory and casual way {lé tí lo ayí bɔngɔ́ só : he wants this garment} - *bɛ́ ... yí* is a much stronger desire or love lɛkɛ [lɛkɛ, lekɛ, reke, rɛgɛ] V : 1. to make, especially in the sense of manufacture of fabricate {fadesó áwále azía lége tí lɛkɛ ta : now the women have abandoned the manner of making pots} - sára 1 is a much broader term

2. to arrange, to organize, to set in order {mbi lɛkɛ yí kóé pendere : I arranged everything beautifully} {ámbéní wále ahínga tí lɛkɛ yá tí da tí ála : some women know how to organize the inside of their houses} {kɔa tí mbi aɛkɛ tí lɛkɛ ngbanga tí ázo tí kusára na ámbunzú : my job is to fix up the problems of workingmen and white men} {í bóngbi na ála lége ɔ́kɔ tí lɛkɛ kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́ tí í : we get together with them to organize our country} - an extension of this sense is found in lɛkɛ kóbe

3. to repair, to fix {wɛ̨ ní afáa sí ndao alɛkɛ : the iron broke, so the smith repaired it}

lɛkɛ bɛ́ V : to change the mind, to repent {lo lɛkɛ bɛ́ tí lo : he changed his mind, he repented}

lɛkɛ kóbe V : to prepare food - a more specific term meaning to prepare dough is mɛ́ kóbe - see lɛkɛ 2

lɛkɛ na kámba ní V : to arrange in a row, to set in order - see lɛkɛ 2

lɛkɛ tɛ́nɛ́ V : to compose differences, to bring a disagreement or dispute to an end, to reconcile - see sára sóngó

li V : to enter {í li na yá tí gbakó ní : we entered the gallery forest} {ngusú ali na tɛ́rɛ́ tí mbi kíríkiri : chiggers entered into my body all over} - sí means to arrive, linda to go down into - see also gá, goe

li [li, ri] N : 1. head {ála píka li tí mɛ́rɛngɛ́ só : they beat the head of this child} {mɔ yú kpoto na li tí mɔ : wear a hat on your head} {ála yɔ́ kóngbá na li tí ála : they bore loads on their heads} {li tí ála aɛkɛ míngi pɛpɛ : their heads (i.e. they) are not many} - see báa li, bóngbi li tí, hínga li tí, lí ngú, li ... ɛkɛ ngangó, li ... tourner, li ... kpíngba, li ... wɔ́kɔ - see tɛ́rɛ́ 1

2. top {mbi tambéla na li tí bɔngɔ́ só : I walked on top of this cloth}

{li tí hɔ́tɔ́ : the top of a hill} {li tí kéké : the top of a tree} - na li tí means on top of, at the head of, in front of {mbi ɛkɛ na li tí gouvernement : I am at the head of the government} {mbi tambéla na li ní : I walked out in front} - see na 3 - see li tí da, ndó

li bɛ́ N : the part of the chest including the breasts - kate is the chest, mɛ the breast

li ... (ɛkɛ) ngangó V : to be obdurate or stupid {ámbéní só li tí ála (aɛkɛ) ngangó, ála ngbá tí fáa zo : some who remain obdurate, they are still killing people} - opp. li ... wɔ́kɔ

likongó N : a spear - usually about six feet long, with a hardwood shaft (kéké) and a triangular iron blade (wɛ̨́), either barbed or unbarbed - the spear was traditionally used for big game, in conjunction with nets (gbánda), while bows and arrows (gindí, kɔkɔra) were used for small game - see gí yąma - see zɛmbɛ for a list of weapons

li ... kpé V : to be astonished {li tí ála akpé : they were astonished}

li ... kpíngba V : to be proud {li tí lo akpíngba : he is proud} - see also fandara, baba

linda [linda, lenda] V : to descend into, to enter, to be deep {ála linda na yá tí ngú : they descended into the water} {zo tí lukundú alinda na yá da tí camarade tí lo : the witch enters the house of his comrade} {dú ní alinda míngi : the hole is very deep}

língbi [língbi, ríngbi, léngbi, límbi] V : 1. to suffice, to be adequate, to attain the precisely exact measure {mbi tɛ, alíngbi na mbi pɛpɛ : I ate, it did not suffice for me} {tongana lo vɔ tí páta osió, alíngbi lo : if she buys twenty francs' worth, it suffices her} {tongana heure tí kíríngó alíngbi awe ... : when the hour to return has arrived precisely ...} {midi alíngbi awe : noon has come exactly} {kusára aɛkɛ míngi, mais ázo ní alíngbi pɛpɛ : there is much work, but the people do not suffice, i.e. there are not enough people} {alíngbi awe : that's just enough} - see língbi pɛpɛ

2. by extension : to be able, to be capable, can - sometimes, to be

obligated {gí Nzapá ɔ́kɔ alíngbi tí sára só : only God can do that} {yoró ní alíngbi tí língbi pɛpɛ : the medicine cannot be enough} {mbi língbi tí sára búbá da pɛpɛ : I cannot (or, I must not, I dare not) play the fool in it} {ála língbi tí kú : you can wait} {kóbe ní akpí, alíngbi títɛnɛ anzɛrɛ pɛpɛ : the food is sour, it cannot be said to taste good} {fadé í língbi títɛnɛ, í lɛkɛ kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́ tí í : we will be able, so to speak, to organize our nation} - in Protestant usage, a sort of pseudo-impersonal expression of obligation preceding the main clause has been formed with this verb, which is not standard usage {alíngbi mɔ sára : you must do it}

língbi pɛpɛ V : to fail to attain the precise and exact measure, either by insufficiency or by excess - hence, to be insufficient, to exceed - in the latter sense, this is used as a sort of strongly superlative expression {da ní agbí ká, alíngbi pɛpɛ : houses burned there, beyond measure, i.e. a great many houses} {ála goe tiri ká ngbii, alíngbi pɛpɛ : they went and fought there a while, with great excess} - see also hɔ́ ndó

li ngú N : a spring of water

li tí da N : the roof of a building - two models are common : the conical and the hip roof - both consist of poles (kéké) resting either on the wall poles only or on these and special center poles, tied at the top either to each other or to a ridgepole - between the sloping poles, at intervals of about eight inches, are bamboo poles (bambou 2) - across all these, at four-inch intervals, are tied long flexible reeds (sɔsɔngɔ), and to these are tied the small bundles of grass (péré, bebé) - the framework is called gángárá

li tí mabɔ́kɔ N : shoulder - syn. ndó tí mabɔ́kɔ - see mabɔ́kɔ

li ... tourner** [turnée] V : to go crazy, to become demented {li tí lo atourner : he has become demented}

li ... wɔ́kɔ V : to be smart, to be capable of learning, to be open to learning {li tí lo awɔ́kɔ : he is smart} - opp. li ... (ɛkɛ) ngangó

3

lo P : third person singular pronoun, predominantly for animate beings (Grammar p. 135-137) {lo pousser ngɔ́ na le tí ngú : he (or she) propelled the boat on the surface of the water} {babá atɛnɛ na lo ... : father told him (or her)} {da tí lo : his (or her) house} {só tí lo : this is his (or hers)} - see mbi for the pronominal system

lógo N : a taste, a sample {mú na mbi lógo, mbi tara mbi báa : give me a taste, I'll try it and see} - see tara

lombé N : a conqueror, a hero in combat, a valiant man

lóndó [lóndó, lúndú] V : 1. to rise, to arise, to get up {kɔ́ya, mɔ lóndó : uncle, get up} - opp. lángó V 1, sɛ́ - see lá ... lóndó

2. to depart, to leave - used only in a locative sense {mbi tomba Kamara lá wa, lo lóndó, lo vení : I did not drive away Kamara, he left, himself} {lo lóndó na kɔa : he left work} {lo lóndó tí goe na berá : he departed to go to war} {mɔ píka mbérékɛ́, póró ní alóndó : you pound the squash seeds, and the husks leave (i.e. loosen)} - syn. quitter, zía 2 - see goe 3 - opp. gá· sí

lɔ* V : to gather up, to pick up one by one, to select {tongana káráko atúku na sése, mɔ lɔ na place ní : when the peanuts spill on the ground, you gather them up} {lɔ nzoní ní : select the good ones}

lɔkpɔtɔ N : a kind of beer made of sprouted corn - see samba for a list of alcoholic beverages

lɔ́rɔ́ N : speed - used in kpé lɔ́rɔ́, zía lɔ́rɔ́ da

lɔ́sɔ [lɔ́sɔ, lóso, rɔ́sɔ, róso] N : rice - a kind of mountain rice is cultivated as a secondary crop in a few parts of the Central African Republic, but rice does not constitute a significant part of the indigenous diet

lú V : to plant, to bury {lo lú káráko : he planted peanuts} {ála lú kɔ́á tí mérɛngɛ́ ní : they buried the body of the child}

lukundú [lukundú, rukundú, likundú] N : a witch spirit {lukundú aɛkɛ tongana kété kété yąma, aɛkɛ na yá tí zo, sí na bí, zo na tɛ́rɛ́ tí lo na lukundú, ála sí gígí, ála goe tí tɛ mɛ́nɛ́ tí zo : the witch spirit

is like a very small animal, it is inside a person, so that at night, the person and his body and the spirit, they go to eat the blood of people} {lo mú kéké, lo dé bá da míngi, lo tɛnɛ ázo tí lukundú, tongana ála sí gígí na bí, fadé kéké só afáa ála : he takes a stick, he swears over it a great deal, he tells the witches that if they go out at night, this stick will kill them} {tongana mɔ ɛkɛ na lukundú pɛpɛ, mɔ língbi tí hínga zo tí lukundú pɛpɛ : if you do not have a witch spirit, you cannot know (i.e. recognize) a witch} - the witch spirit is conceived of as possessing and controlling an individual without his consent, so that he is in a real sense not responsible for the actions of the witch spirit - the lukundú is thought to cause many illnesses and deaths by eating either the liver or the blood of the victims - the witch is zo tí lukundú

lungúla [lungúla, lungɛ́la, longɛ́la] V : to remove, to take away, to open, to demolish {ála lungúla kíi ní : they removed the thorns} {mbi lungúla pémbɛ́ tí mbi : I removed my teeth} {ála yí tí lungúla gouvernement na mabɔ́kɔ tí mbi : they want to take the government away from my hands} {lo lungúla lé tí kɔ́li só : he opened the eyes of this man} {ála lungúla ngbéré da ní na sése : they demolished the old building}

lungúla korogbó V : to castrate

lutí V : to stand, to stand up - see also lóndó ¹ - opp. dutí, lángó V

- M -

má [má, máá, mɛ́] V : 1. to hear {mbi má tɛ́nɛ́ tí yí só ngá : I have heard the report of this matter also} {mɔ má gɔ́ tí ámakáko ní : you hear the voices of the monkeys} {mbi má atɛnɛ mɔ ɛkɛ na mɛ́rɛngɛ́ : I have heard it said that you have a child} {mbi má ála awe : I have heard you} - *báa* 1.2 is another verb of sense perception of much broader scope

2. to listen, to give heed, to pay attention {ála má fadesó tɛrɛ ní : listen now to the fable} {ála má mbi fadesó : pay attention to me now} - syn. *gɛngi* *mɛ́* - see also *má* *yángá*

3. to understand, to comprehend {mɔ má awe ? : do you understand?} {mbi má awe, Monsieur : I understand, sir} {mbi má Sango mbírímbírí pɛpɛ : I don't understand Sango thoroughly} - see *má* *ndá*, *báa* 5

ma SP : particle of emphasis and insistence (*Grammar* p. 147-148) {ní laá ma : that's it, precisely!} {mɔ túku mbéní na lo ma : pour him some, why don't you} {kɔ́li tí mɔ ayí mɔ pɛpɛ ma : your husband doesn't love you, undoubtedly} {mɔ diminuer ngéré ní na mbi ma : come on, bring down the price for me!}

má ... bɛ́ V : expression coined by the Protestant missions and used in their Bible traslations to denote believe, have faith - thus, má bɛ́ becomes faith, ma na bɛ́ means to believe, wa má bɛ́ is a believer - this is not consistent with Sango word and phrase formation and is not part of standard Sango - *zía* *bɛ́* is the standard equivalent

mabɔ́kɔ [mabɔ́kɔ, mabóko, mabɛ́kɔ] N : 1. hand, wrist, arm, wing (of bird) {fadé mbi gbó mabɔ́kɔ tí lo : I will grip his hand} {lo mú kpɔ́ka na mabɔ́kɔ tí lo : he took the hoe in his hand} {yɔ́rɔ mabɔ́kɔ na ndúzú : hold up your hand} {asára taá na mabɔ́kɔ tí lo : he did it with his own hands} {azía gouvernement na mabɔ́kɔ tí lo : they put the government into his hands} {mbi tɛ kóbe na mabɔ́kɔ tí lo : I eat food from his hand, i.e. through his kindness} {tongana mabɔ́kɔ tí lo ayí da pɛpɛ fadé asára yę : if his hand (i.e. he) dows not agree (to do it), what will be done?} {asúru mabɔ́kɔ tí lo : he cut open (i.e. vaccinated) his arm} {mabɔ́kɔ tí ndɛkɛ ní afáa : the wing of the bird is broken} - syn. ti - kpangbi is a more specific word for the wing of a bird - see also ndó tí mabɔ́kɔ, li tí mabɔ́kɔ, mabɔ́kɔ tí kɔ́li, mabɔ́kɔ tí wále, gbɛ́ tí mabɔ́kɔ, kété mabɔ́kɔ, kótá mabɔ́kɔ, nzɛné tí mabɔ́kɔ, yá tí mabɔ́kɔ - see tɛ́rɛ́ 1

2. a handle {gbara aɛkɛ mbéní mará tí kopo só mabɔ́kɔ ní aɛkɛ da : the frying pan is a kind of container which has a handle}

mabɔ́kɔ tí kɔ́li N : the right hand - syn. koti - see also mabɔ́kɔ, mbáge tí kɔ́li

mabɔ́kɔ tí wále N : the left hand - syn. gati - see also mabɔ́kɔ, mbáge tí wále

machine** [masíin] N : any kind of machine - the term is used most frequently in referring to sewing machines, typewriters and spring traps, which are otherwise called by their full French names

madame** [madáam] N : lady, madam, Mrs. {madame só ahínga tí lɛkɛ yá da tí lo nzoní : this lady knows how to fix up the inside of her house} - see monsieur

mademoiselle** [madamwazɛ́ɛl] N : a single lady, Miss

mafuta [mafuta, mafɔta, mafata] N : oil, fat, grease {mɔ zía mafuta na kɔkɔ na oignon da kóé, sí mɔ tɛ : you put in fat and greens and onions, then you eat it} {lo gá na lá kúí, bɔngɔ́ tí lo gí mafuta : he comes (home) in the evening, his clothes are greasy all over} {zo só aɛkɛ mafuta míngi : this person is very fat} - the most common cooking oil is mafuta tí káráko, peanut oil - in the southern forest zone, bingbá mafuta, palm oil, is often used, while in the north mafuta tí báláwá or shea butter is used

mafuta tí báláwá N : a buttery fat made from shea nuts and used as a cooking fat, especially by Muslims and West Africans and those who have been influenced by them {mɔ vɔ mafuta tí báláwá, mɔ túku na yá ngunzá ní, mɔ tɔ́ na ní ngbii kóé : you buy shea butter, you put into the greens, and you cook it all together for a while}

mafuta tí káráko N : peanut oil - the most common cooking oil in the Central African Republic - the Kąrę of the Bozoum area, among others, have developed a fairly important commerce in peanut oil made by traditional methods

mafuta tí wótoro N : 1. honey - syn. ngú lavú
2. beeswax

magasin** [magazɛ̨̂ɛ̨] N : a store, a storehouse, a warehouse {kózo ní mbi ɛkɛ gérant tí magasin : formerly I was the manager of a store} - syn. da tí magasin

mą̂ɨ [mą̂ɨ, mái] V : to grow, to develop - used primarily of plants {tongana sése ní aɛkɛ nzoní tí lú kóbe da sí, kóbe ní alíngbi tí mą̂ɨ,: when the soil is good for planting food, then the food can grow} - kpíngba 2 refers primarily to the end result of the growth process, and more specifically to the fruit rather than to the whole plant

maire** [mɛ́ɛr] N : the mayor of an organized city - in colonial days, an appointed official, now elected - see ville, also république

mais** [mɛ] C : and, but - used only to join clauses or sentences (Grammar p. 68-69), where it is syn. with na {mɛ́rɛngɛ́ asára mbáná na lo, mais lo kpé ; the youth was being idle for him, and then he ran away} {lo sára tɛ́nɛ́ sioní míngi na li tí mɔ, mais mɔ hínga pɛpɛ : he says many evil things about you, but you don't know} - et, et puis are syn. but much less common

makáko [makáko, mokáko] N : any kind of monkey (superfamily Cercopithecoidea) - ngui is a colobus monkey, bákoyá a baboon, makáko tí bingbá a red or patas monkey, and vurú makáko another kind, unidentified

makáko tí bingbá N : a red monkey, a patas monkey (Erythrocebus patas)

makala N : a kind of fritter made of European wheat flour fried in deep fat, filled with either hot pepper or sugar, and sold as a snack in markets all over the Central African Republic

makongó [makongó, makɔngɔ́] N : a caterpillar - some kinds are used in making a number of sauces {ámamá agoe na ngonda tí gí makongó : the mothers go into the bush to hunt for caterpillars} {ála zía makongó na yá tí sakpá, ála túku lé tí wá na ndó ní, kíi ní agbí kóé : they put the caterpillars into a basket, and dump in glowing coals, and the fuzz is all burned off} - see kása, kóbe - see vomɛ for a list of insects

makɔrɔ́ N : slander, betrayal - see sára makɔrɔ́

makunzi [makunzi, makanzi, mokonzi] N : 1. a chief, especially a village chief or the chief of a petty administrative unit {tongana í fáa yąma awe, í mú mbéní, í mú na makunzi : when we've killed an animal, we take some (meat) and give it to the chief} - gbíá refers to a king, kapíta to a subordinate chief, the headman of a settlement or homestead - because in colonial times the administration selected village chiefs with little understanding of traditional power structures and the mechanisms of power transfer, and because the chiefs became often little more than flunkies of the alien administration, they were often despised by the people - in some cases, the real traditional chiefs concealed their identity to avoid serving in this demeaning role - as a result, the institution of chieftainship is moribund, especially since independence

2. by extension, a leader or chief in any domain, a political boss {mbi ɛkɛ fadesó makunzi tí áfonctionnaire : I am now the boss of the civil service}

malade** [maláde, maráde] N : illness, sickness, disease {malade aɛkɛ na ndo só míngi : there is much sickness here} - kobéla and malade are syn. to such an extent that they are interchangeable in all usages and environments

malin** [malɛ́ɛ] N : cunning, skill {mɔ hínga malin ní pɛpɛ, sí mɔ sára samba : you don't know the skill to make beer} - syn. ndaráa, manière, lége 2 malínga N : any dance of European origin or in the European style (lo dɔ́ malínga : he danced a European dance) - syn. nylon 1 - coller N refers especially to the close physical contact between the sexes in the European dance - dɔ́dɔ́ is a general term for all dances

mamá N : mother, in a biological and social sense - usually accompanied by a specifying complement (mamá tí mbi akúí : my mother has died) (mamá agá amú mbi akírí na kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́ tí aú tí lo : mother came and got me and returned to her uncle's village) - see babá 1, famille
2. usually plural : collectively, the members of the mother's clan, including maternal ancestors (fadé ámamá tí mbi atɛnɛ mbi ɛkɛ zo tí búbá : my maternal clansmen will say I am a fool) - see babá 2
3. usually with some specifying complement : a member of one's mother's clan, especially one's mother's sisters - kété mamá is her younger sister, kótá mamá is her older sister - see babá 3
4. used honorifically of an older woman, especially one's hostess (tongana mɔ fɔnɔ na mbéní zo mɔ éré lo mamá tí gonda lo, mais taá mamá pɛpɛ : when you are visiting someone, you call her mother to honor her, but (she is) not a real mother) - see also áta 3, babá 4, aú 2, kɔ́ya 2

mamá ... (ɛkɛ) ndé An : added to babá ɔ́kɔ, specifies a half-sibling (íta tí mbi, babá ɔ́kɔ, mamá (aɛkɛ) ndé : a sibling, one father but the mother (is) different, i.e. a half-sibling) - cf. mamá ɔ́kɔ

mamá ɔ́kɔ An : added to babá ɔ́kɔ, specifies a full sibling (íta tí mbi, babá ɔ́kɔ, mamá ɔ́kɔ : my full sibling) - cf. mamá ... (ɛkɛ) ndé

mamá tí clé N : a lock - mérɛngé tí clé is a key - see also clé

mamá tí mápa N : yeast, of the kind used in baking bread - sái is the kind used in brewing bíríbiri, a kind of beer

mamá tí ngɔ N : a pregnant woman

má ndá V : to understand fully (zía mbi má ndá ní bíaní : let me understand it fully) (fadesó mbi má ndá ní awe : now I understand it fully) - this means to get the essence of a matter - see also má 3, báa 5 manda V : to learn {tongana mbunzú así na lége tí coton, wále acommencer tí sára yáká, acommencer tí manda : when white men came with the practice of cotton, women began to make fields, they began to learn} {ála manda kɔa ní : they learned the job} - see also gí lége, hínga lége, hínga

mánga N : 1. tobacco, cigarette - tobacco is grown locally in small family fields, and is cured by traditional methods and smoked in a pipe, or made into cigaretts in a factory {zo só ayɔ̨ mánga : this person is smoking (lit. sucking) tobacco} - see kpɔ́ 4, kpókpɔ́, yɔ́

mangbéré N : a portion of manioc crushed with water, wrapped in leaves, and roasted or boiled - mangbéré are sold as snacks in markets all over the Central African Republic

mángo N : a mango tree or fruit - mangoes are one of the commonest of all fruits in the Central African Republic

manière** [manyɛ́ɛr, maniyɛ́r, mɔniyɛ́ɛr, monyɛ́r, mayɛ̨́r, mɔniyɛ́rɛ, mayɛ́rɛ] N : way, manner, skill, ability, cunning, guile, wiles {kɔ́li ayí tí dutí, manière aɛkɛ pɛpɛ : the man wanted to stay, but there was no way} {mɔ̄ fa na mbi manière tí kɔa só : show me the skill of this job} {lo hínga manière tí kpíkara ní kózo pɛpɛ : he did not know before the pangolin's manner (of acting)} {zo wa sí aɛkɛ na manière ahɔ̨ íta tí lo ? : which one had more cunning than his comrade?} {fadé mbéní zo agá na manière, atɛnɛ ní ɛkɛ taá zo tí Nzapá : some people will come with guile, claiming to be really God's people} {lo gí manière tí nzí : he sought the cunning to steal} {mɔ hínga manière tí wále aɛkɛ ndé ndé pɛpɛ ? : don't you know that the wiles of women are various?} - syn. lége 2, malin, ndaráa - see also sára manière

manoeuvre** [manɛ́vre, manívɛrɛ] N : a laborer, an unskilled workman

manquer** [mąké, maŋkée] V : to fail, to be missing, lacking, or absent, to overlook {yí amanquer í na ndo só pɛpɛ : nothing is lacking for us here} {í mú wángó ní títɛnɛ ála manquer pɛpɛ : we give you this notice so that you won't be absent} {ála manquer mbi na sambéla tí ála pɛpɛ : don't overlook me in your prayers} {fadé í na mɔ í dé bá da, amanquer pɛpɛ : you and I will take an oath about it, it won't fail} {lo manquer tí gá pɛpɛ : he will certainly come (lit. he will not fail to come)} {amanquer lo pɛpɛ : it is very likely him}

mápa [mápa, mámpa] N ; bread - used also of some local approximations of bread made from manioc - see also mangbéré̜, makala

mará N : a classificatory term : kind, sort, type, clan, tribe, nationality {mará aɛkɛ, só atɛnɛ, clan : there is the mará, that is to say, the clan} {mbéní mará tí kóbe : a certain sort of food} {mbéní mará tí kobéla : a certain kind of disease} {ála tɛnɛ mará tí tɛ́nɛ́ tongasó : they said this kind of thing} {mará tí yí só ála sára ... : the kinds of things they did ...} {mará ní aɛkɛ ndé ndé : there are various sorts of them} {mará tí mbi aɛkɛ Ką̈rę : my tribe is Kare} - qualité is a sophisticated syn. especially in speaking of merchandise

marché** [marsée] N : market, market-place - syn. galá 1

mariage** [mariyáaz, mariyázi] N : marriage - traditionally arranged by the two families and formalized by the payment of a bride-price (wę́, mɔsɔrɔ) and often also by a period of bride-labor - see also marier, famille, kɔ́li 2, wále 2

2. a spouse {mariage tí mbi akúí awe : my spouse is dead} - see kɔ́li 2, wále 2

mariage tí bureau** N : civil marriage

mariage tí mission** N : religious marriage

marier** [mariyée] V : to marry - more common expressions are : for the man, mú wále, for the woman, mų́ kɔ́li, goe na da tí kɔ́li - expressions meaning to divorce are : zía wále, zía kɔ́li, kę wále, kę kɔ́li, tomba wále, kpé kɔ́li (the last two reflecting virilocal residence) - divorce is a complicated and disruptive procedure, because proper arrangements must be made regarding repaying the bride-price, and also regarding the children

marmiton** [marmitɔ́ɔ] N : a kitchen flunky, usually a young boy who does the menial and subordinate kitchen tasks - he is the lowest ranking and the lowest paid domestic employee - syn. kété bói - see also bói

másarágba N : a rhinoceros - rare in the Central African Republic

masía N : an unmarried girl, a bachelor girl, especially a young one {mbi ngbá kété masía, mbi yí tí goe na école : I remained a young unmarried girl, I wanted to go to school} - kombáámba is a male bachelor, but the specific indication of youth is absent - pendere wále is a general term for a young girl, a female adolescent

matabísi N : a gift, a gratuity, a tip, a bribe {só mbi vɔ yąma awe só, mɔ zía da mbéní kété matabísi ma : now that I've bought the meat, throw in a little gift, won't you}

matánga N : a celebration, a holiday {matánga só ngbangatí lo sára ngú bale otá na ndó tí sése : this celebration is because he has lived thirty years on the earth} - fête refers more specifically to a religious or legal holiday, while matánga emphasizes the festive and gay atmosphere and speaks often of personal or family celebrations

mawa N : 1. suffering, specifically misery {zo tí mawa : a miserable person, a pitiable person} {kobéla só asára mawa míngi : this sickness causes much misery} - see also finóo, pási, sáná
2. pity, compassion, mercy {mawa agbó mérɛngɛ́ só : pity seized this youth} - see bɛ́ nzoní, mawa ... gbó

mawa ... gbó V : to have pity, to pity, to be merciful, to have compassion {mawa agbó lo : pity seized him, i.e. he pitied} - see also sára mawa 2

má yángá V : to obey {tongana mɔ ɛkɛ mɛ́rɛngɛ́, aɛkɛ tɛ́nɛ́ tí mɔ tí má yángá tí babá tí mɔ, na tí má yángá tí mamá tí mɔ : when you are a child, it is your business to obey your father and to obey your mother}

mbá N : a compatriot, a fellow-citizen {ámbéní mbunzú, ála sára kusára na í, ngbangatí só ála ngá, ála ɛkɛ mbá tí í : some white men, they work with us, because they too are our compatriots} - by extension, anyone with whom one may have a cordial working relationship - camarade and ndeko suggest intimacy, fó is a co-worker, ndoé is someone having the same name as oneself

mbadi N : divination - see báa mbadi, sára mbade - zéké is the act of telling fortunes, as with cards

mbáge N : side, direction - used with na 3 : beside, on the side, at the side, toward, at {zía mbéní yą̂ma ní na mbáge : put some of the meat to one side} {ámɛ́rɛngɛ́ aɛkɛ na mbáge tí tɛ : the children were to one side to eat} {mɔ dénge gɔ́ tí mɔ na mbáge tongasó : you bend your neck to one side like that} {na mbáge ká : in that direction, over there} {mbi lángó na mbáge tí mamá tí mbi : I lived over at my mother's} {na mbáge tí ngú ká : over toward the river} {na mbáge tí í aɛkɛ tongasó : at our (place) it is like that} - tɛ́rɛ́ suggests a closer and more intimate relationship

mbáge tí kɔ́li N : the right side - see also mabɔ́kɔ tí kɔ́li

mbáge tí wále N : the left side - see also mabɔ́kɔ tí wále

mbakɔ́rɔ N : an old person - syn. kótá zo - kɔ́li or wále can be added to specify sex - kángba is an old man - age confers prestige, authority, and dignity - see also vieux, zo

mbamba N : 1. oysters, which are found in the larger rivers, but not eaten 2. lime made by roasting oyster shells and used to whitewash buildings {zía mbamba na da : put whitewash on the house} - vurú sése is a white clay which is also used to whitewash buildings

mbáná [mbáná, mbálá] N : deliberate or malicious idleness or laziness, malingering, featherbedding, avoiding work on a false pretext, lack of integrity {mérɛngɛ́ ní asára mbáná na lo, lo kpé awe : the youth had been purposely idle for him, and then he ran away} {lo tɛ kóbe tí mbi gí na mbáná : he eats my food in an idle, unappreciative way} - goigói lacks the element of purpose or malice

mbandako N : a canoe race - see ngó

mbángbá N : cheek - lé N 1.2 is the whole face

mbange* N : marijuana {lo yɔ̨́ mbange : he smoked marijuana} - the use of marijuana is almost entirely an urban phenomenon, predominantly among the youth

mbanu N : a sort of cross-bow

mbarata* N : a horse - because of sleeping sickness, horses are very rare in the Central African Republic, but some Muslim chiefs have them {kózo ní ámbunzú agá gí na mbarata : at first the white men came just on horses}

mbáráwárá N : a monitor lizard (genus *Varanus*) - the flesh of this very large lizard is eaten, and its skin is used for knife scabbards - *katá* is a small grey lizard

mbásámbárá [mbásámbárá, mbálámbálá, mbárámbárá, mbásámbálá] An : seven - see *ɔ́kɔ* for the numeral system

mbengé N : a bush pig (*Potamochoerus koiropotamus* or *Koiropotamus k.*) - a reddish wild hog hunted for its meat - *cochon* is a domestic pig, and *cochon tí gígí* or *cochon tí ngonda* refer to a wart hog - see *yąma tí ngonda*

mbé ngú N : the other side of a river {lo goe na mbé ngú : he went across the river}

mbéní [mbéní, mbɛ́ní] An : 1. certain, a certain, some, other, another, any {mbéní sioní kobéla : a certain bad disease} {mbi má gí na yángá tí mbéní zo tí kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́ : I heard it just from a certain villager} {í hínga mbéní yí ɔ́kɔ tí sára pɛpɛ : we don't know any one (i.e. a single) thing to do} {lo mú mbéní nginza tí kóbe : he took some of the food money} {ámbéní wále ayí kɔ́li tí ála afɔnɔ pɛpɛ : certain women don't want their husbands to roam about} {afáa mbéní zo tí kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́, ákɔ́á otá tongasó : it killed certain villagers, (there) were about three deaths} {mɔ goe na mbéní ndo : you went to another place} {Nzapá amú na mbi mbéní firí mérɛngɛ́ : God gave me a new child} - *ndé* means different - the two can co-occur, with the meaning another {mbéní yí ndé : another, different thing}

2. with verbs : again, any more {mbéní, mɔ mú kóbe ní : again, you

take the food} {papa aɛkɛ mbéní pɛpɛ : there are not any (i.e. no) more quarrels} {mbi goe ká mbéní : I went there again} - syn. encore has in addition the meanings of still, yet - the two can co-occur {mbi yí lo encore mbéní pɛpɛ : I no longer like him}

mbéní bírí N : day before yesterday - see lá for the dating system

mbéní kékéréke N : day after tomorrow - see lá for the dating system

mbéní lá N : a certain day, one day, some day {tongasó mbéní lá mbi goe tí tɛ mbéní mará tí kóbe : so one day (or, on a certain day) I went to eat another kind of food} - syn. lá ɔ́kɔ - the two can be telescoped {mbéní lá ɔ́kɔ, lé tí lo óse kóé aɛkɛ sɔ lo : one day, both her eyes hurt her}

mbɛ́rɛ́kɛ́ N : an oily edible seed - syn. kɔ́sɔ - see kpí N, the collective term for such seeds

mbɛ́tí [mbɛ́tí, mbétí] N : 1. paper - kugbé 2 is a sheet of paper - syn. papier 1

2. a letter, a document of any sort {ála toka mbɛ́tí na í ge : you all send us letters here} - syn. papier 2 means a document

3. a book, a magazine, etc.

4. used in díkɔ mbɛ́tí to read, sára mbɛ́tí to write, and píka mbɛ́tí, to print

mbɛ́tí tí Nzapá N : the Bible

mbi P : first person singular pronoun {í mú pɛkɔ́ tí mbi : follow me} {mbi hínga kóé : I know it well} {da tí mbi : my house} {só tí mbi : this is mine} - the pronominal system is as follows (Grammar p. 135-138)

	Singular	Plural
1.	mbi	í (Protestant missions ání)
2.	mɔ	ála (Christian missions í)
3.	lo (animate beings)	ála

mbi ɛkɛ I : I am (all right) - response to the interrogation mɔ ɛkɛ ? - see bara N for the greeting formulas mbínda N : a cloud, fog {mbínda akánga lé ndúzú : a cloud (or fog) is obstructing the sky}

mbíó N : a red cosmetic powder made from the bark of a certain tree and used to adorn the body in connection with the ngbángérénǵú dance - see fúku for other terms denoting powders

mbírímbírí [mbirímbirí, mbílimbílí, mbímbilí, mbrímbrí] An : 1. straight, physically and morally - right, just, upright, righteous {bɛ́ tí ála aɛkɛ mbírímbírí : their characters are upright} {kéké ní aɛkɛ mbírímbírí : the pole is straight} {zo tí mbírímbírí : a just person} - syn. nzoní means good in general - opp. kírîkiri, sioní
2. with a verb : right, justly, properly, correctly {lo sára mbírimbírí awe : he has done it right} {mbi hinga lége ní mbirimbírí : I know the way properly} {mbi tɛnɛ ála má mbírímbírí : I'll tell it so you understand it correctly} - syn. nzoní - opp. kírîkiri

mbito [mbito, mbeto] N : fear, apprehension, fright, terror {yí tí mbito : a fearful thing} {mbito asára lo : fear affected him, i.e. he was afraid} {mbito tí kɔ́á amú mbi ɔ́kɔ pɛpɛ : the fear of death does not seize me at all} {mbito agbó lo : fear gripped him, i.e. he was terrified} - kpé mbito is to fear, to respect, to reverence

mbo N : domesticated dog {lo dára mbo ní, lo tɛnɛ, čaʔ : he sicked on the dog, saying, čaʔ} - dogs are commonly raised, and are used for hunting, but for the most part they forage for themselves rather than being fed by their owners - sónzó is a wild dog

mbo V : to wipe, to erase by wiping {babá ambo ngú lé tí mérɛngɛ́ : the father wiped the tears of the child} {lo mbo lé tí tableau : he erased the surface of the blackboard}

mbongí N : a deaf person

mbóo N : breath - see hú mbóo

mbɔ́kɔ V : 1. to be bruised or ulcerated, to be disfigured {lé tí lo ambɔ́kɔ kóé : her face was all disfigured}
2. to be bald {li tí ambɔ́kɔ : he is bald}

mbɔsɔ N : lead, solder - syn. tungu

mbúlú N : 1. gunpowder
2. powdered ashes used for medicinal purposes - fúku is a general term for powder

mbuma* V : to bud, as a newly planted slip or shoot, or as a branch (kéké tí gɔzɔ ambuma : the manioc shoot budded) - syn. tǫ

mbunzú [mbunzú, munzú, bunzú, bunžú, mužú] N : a white person (mbi tɛnɛ na ámbunzú só kóé, aɛkɛ nzoní í na ála kóé í bóngbi tɛ́rɛ́ lége ɔ́kɔ : I say to these white men, it would be a good thing for them and us to join together) - vɔkɔ́ zo is a black man

mbunzú vɔkɔ́ N : a clerical worker, especially a civil servant or bureaucrat

mbúrú N : the oil palm (Elaeis guineense Jacq.), grown or wild especially in the southern forest zone - the fruit gives a rich red oil (bingbá mafuta) which is widely used in cooking - the kernel is exported as a source of fat - the fronds are used for various purposes, especially for roofing

mbutu N : sand - for other terms referring to powdered or granulated substances, see fúku

mélanger** [melánze, melaŋgá] V : to mix, to stir (mɔ mélanger tongasó, sí mɔ tɛ : you stir it like that, then you eat) (mɔ mélanger susu na yá ní wala : do you mix fish in it, or not?) - tourner means to stir - fúru is a related term

membre** [mámbre] N : a member - used especially by Protestants to refer to members in good standing in a Christian congregation - this term is more restrictive than chrétien or mɛ́rɛngɛ́ tí Nzapá

même** [mɛ́m, mɛ́mɛ, mɛ́mɔ] C : even, even if (même, lo yí kékéréke mbi ɛkɛ kírí na kɔa : even if he should want, tomorrow I would return to work) (même, mbi aussi, mbi wɔ́kɔ : even I also am weary) - syn. quand même

merci** [mɛrsíi, mersé, mɛsíi, mɛrsí] N : 1. thanks (mbi mú na mɔ merci míngi : I give you many thanks}

2. used as an interjection : thanks, thank you - also used as a general expression of pleasure of gratification, e.g. as a response to good news or in receiving a greeting or message

mɛ́ N : the ear, the lobe of the ear - the ear hole is dú tí mɛ́ - see tɛ́rɛ́ 1

mɛ N : the breast, the nipple - breast milk is ngú tí mɛ - see tɛ́rɛ́ 1

mɛ́ kóbe V : to prepare food, especially to stir or mix with an implement (e.g. kéké tí gɔzɔ), to mix ingredients together {tongana ngú tí kóbe akpɔrɔ awe, sí lo mɛ́ kóbe ní : when the water for the food has boiled, then she stirs in the food (i.e. the flour to make the dough)} {fadesó amɛ́ gɔzɔ da asía na sése : now she stirs in the manioc and sets it aside} - tourner, mélanger are more general terms for stirring or mixing - fúru means to mix with the hands - still more general terms are lɛkɛ kóbe, sára kóbe - see also kóbe

mɛ́nɛ́ N : blood, as opposed to mi flesh and bíó bone - see tɛ́rɛ́ 1

mɛnɛ V : to swallow, to gulp {susu amɛnɛ yángó : the fish swallowed the hook} - tɛ is to bite or chew

méngá N : the tongue - syn. langue - see tɛ́rɛ́ 1, yángá the mouth

mɛ́ ngɔ V : to conceive, to become pregnant - mamá tí ngɔ is a pregnant woman

mɛrdée V : see emmerder

mɛ́rɛngɛ́ [mɛ́rɛngɛ́, mɛ́lɛngɛ́, mérengé, mélengé, mórɛngɛ́, mórengé, mɔ́lɛngɛ́, márɛngɛ́, málɛngɛ́, márengé, málengé] N : 1. a child, a baby, an infant, a youth {mbi sára só giriri na mɛ́rɛngɛ́ : I did this a long time ago as a child} {lo de kété kété mɛ́rɛngɛ́ : he remained a very small child, i.e. a baby} {mɛ́rɛngɛ́ tí mɔ asára kɔa tí yę : what kind of work does your child do?} {mɛ́rɛngɛ́ só asára mawa na wále ní : this youth had pity on the woman} - mɛ́rɛngɛ́ (tí) kɔ́li is a boy, a son - mɛ́rɛngɛ́ (tí) wále is a girl, a daughter - mɛ́rɛngɛ́ tí mía, mɛ́rɛngɛ́ tí ngbɔ́ are two ways of referring to twins - see also pendere, pendere kɔ́li, pendere wále, famille - see zo

2. the young of animals {kɔ́ndɔ abata ámɛ́rɛngɛ́ tí lo : the hen protects her chicks}

mɛ́rɛngɛ́ tí clé N : a key - mamá tí clé is a lock - see also clé

mɛ́rɛngɛ́ (tí) kɔ́li N : a boy, a son

mɛ́rɛngɛ́ tí mía, mɛ́rɛngɛ́ tí ngbɔ N : twins

mɛ́rɛngɛ́ tí ngú N : a feeder stream

mɛ́rɛngɛ́ tí Nzapá N : a Christian - syn. chrétien

mɛ́rɛngɛ́ (tí) wále : a girl, a daughter

mi N : flesh, as opposed to bíó bone or mɛ́nɛ́ blood - used in mi tɛ́rɛ́ - see tɛ́rɛ́ 1

mía N : see mɛ́rɛngɛ́ tí mía

midi** [midíi] N : mid-day, noon - somewhat more precise than syn. kótá lá - see heure for the divisions of the day

midi tí bí N : midnight - syn. bé bí - see heure for the divisions of the day

milieu** [milyée, milée] N : the middle, the midst - used with na 3 {mɔ gá na milieu tí dole ní : you came in the midst of the elephants} - syn. bé, pɛ́pó 1

míngi An : much, many, very {li tí ála míngi : they (were) many} {kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́ ade yɔngɔ́rɔ míngi : the village was still very far away} {míngi aɛkɛ goe tí báa kótá ngú só : many are going to see this big river} {lo penser kpíkara aɛkɛ na famille míngi : he thought the pangolin had many relatives} {déma tongasó míngi pɛpɛ : don't carry on like that so much} {awɔ́kɔ nzoní míngi : it was very nicely softened} {mbi ɛkɛ na ngiá míngi : I have much joy} - emphasized by reduplication {ála gá míngi míngi : they came, very many} - (Grammar p. 56)

míngɔ [míngɔ, míngo, mɛ́ngɔ] V : to extinguish {amíngɔ wá ní : he extinguished the fire} {ála míngɔ da : they extinguished the (burning) house} - opp. tínga wá - see also zɔ́ and gbí miombe [miombe, myombe, meombe, mɔmbe, mɔyɛmbɛ, meyembe, myɛmbɛ, mwɛmbɛ] An : eight - see ɔ́kɔ for the numeral system

mission** [misyǫ́ǫ] N : 1. a religious or other mission, a mission station 2. among less acculturated speakers : a church edifice, a chapel - syn. da tí Nzapá, chapelle, église 2

mi tɛ́rɛ́ N : flesh - syn. mi

mois** [mwáa] N : a month - syn. nzɛ 2

moitié** [motyée] N : half, halfway point {mbi sí na moitié : I reached the halfway point}

monganga [monganga, mɔnganga] N : a medicine man, whose function is to treat illness and to divine the cause of death {ála commencer tí sára na monganga tí ála, tí soigner tɛ́rɛ́ tí ála : they began to cooperate with their medicine man, to care for their bodies} - see nganga

moniteur** [monitɛ́ɛr] N : an instructor, a teacher of a lower echelon and lower qualifications and who teaches in the lower grades

monsieur** [mösyö́, mesyö́, misyö́, mesö́, mesé, mɛsé, misyé] N : sir, Mr. {mbi bara madame tí monsieur ngá : I also greet the lady (i.e. the wife) of Mr. also} - see madame

monter** [monté] V : 1. to climb, to ascend {mbi monter na ndúzú : I ascended into the air} {lo monter hɔ́tɔ́ ní : he climbed the hill - opp. descendre
2. of animals : to copulate {mbo amonter na ndó wále ní : the dog copulated with the female} - syn. uru 2 - for humans see gba

mon vieux** [mǫvyö, mɔvé, mvé] I : an exclamation of surprise, of astonishment, of disappointment, of disgust {mon vieux, yí tí sése aɛkɛ tongasó : well, the ways of this earth are like that} {mon vieux, só yáká tí kóbe sí aɛkɛ na aú só : wow, is that ever a food garden that uncle has there!} - syn. babá 5

mosúmá N : a dream, a vision - syn. súmá - see also báa li moule** [múul] N : sun-dried mud brick - made near the building site by digging into the best available soil (termite hill clay is favored), tramping in water until the mud is the right consistency, and packing into a wooden mold about 6 x 5 x 12 inches, after which the blocks are dried in the sun and used for building - see tɛ́rɛ́ tí da

moyen** [mwayɛ̧, mwɛ̧] N : means {í ɛkɛ na moyen títɛnɛ í mú dole, í goe na ní, aɛkɛ pɛpɛ : we had no means of taking the elephant and carrying it away} - manière, lége, etc. emphasize rather the skill, ability, or manner, while moyen emphasizes the physical means

mɔ [mɔ, mo] P : second person singular pronoun {mɔ píka gí na yá tí kpu : you pound it just in a mortar} {babá atɛnɛ na mɔ : father told you} {tɛ́rɛ́ tí mɔ : your body} {só tí mɔ : this is yours} - see mbi for the pronominal system (Grammar p. 135-138)

mɔa* N : a flood

mɔ ɛkɛ I : how are you? (lit. are you?) - in the greeting procedure, this immediately follows the exchange of bara N - the response is mbi ɛkɛ

mɔsɔrɔ* N : wealth, especially the bride-price - see also wɛ̧ 2, tɛ nginza, nginza, vɔ, ká, fúta, payer

mú V : 1. to give {mú na mbi nginza : give me money} {ála ɛkɛ mú na mɔ yoró : they give you medicine} {piqûre só amú na zo : injections which they give to people} {mbi yí tí mú wángó só na áita : I want to give this advice to (our) friends}

2. to take, to get, to receive {ayí tí mú mbéní mɛ́rɛngɛ́ tí kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́ : he wants to take some of the children of the village} {mɔ mú papa tí fúku ɔ́kɔ : you take one spoonful of flour} {mɔ mú piqûre ní kóé : you receive all the injections} {mamá amú mbi na docteur : mother took me to the doctor} {kɔ́á alíngbi tí mú mɔ : death can get you} - kamáta means more specifically to take, gbɔ́ to grasp, to seize, goe na to take with, wara to receive, to obtain

mú lége V : to take to the road, to start off, to begin a trip {lo mú lége tí goe na Bangui : he started off for Bangui} - see lége 1 mú lége na ... tí V : to allow, to permit {mbi mú lége na lo tí goe na Bangui : I allowed him to go to Bangui} - also said zía lége na ... tí

mú ... na pópó V : to choose - syn. choisir, kamáta ... na pópó

mú ngiá na bɛ́ tí V : to give pleasure or joy {yí amú ngiá na bɛ́ tí mbi míngi : this thing gave me much pleasure} - syn. zía ngiá na bɛ́ tí - see bɛ́, ngiá

mú pardon V : to apologize - see pardon

mú pɛkɔ́ V : to follow {mú pɛkɔ́ tí mbi : follow me} - this expression implies often a close personal relationship between the persons involved, while gá na pɛkɔ́ emphasizes as the goal the person being followed and goe na pɛkɔ́ emphasizes the point of departure or the relative detachment of the speaker

mú yángá V : to discourage, to get one down {kɔa só amú yángá tí mbi míngi : this job really has me discouraged} - be, kara are a syn. - emmerder means to annoy, to bother, as does gêner

mú susu V : to catch fish {í bi gbánda tí mú susu : we cast the net to catch fish} - see also gí susu

na C : (Grammar p. 69-88) 1. a general coordinating connective joining two units of the same class : words, phrases, clauses, sentences : and, but {mɔ na lo : you and he} {lo na zo vɔkɔ́ : he and a black man} {babá na mamá : father and mother} {ála sambéla kéké, na péré, na nzɛ, na lá : they worshipped trees, and grass, and the moon, and the sun} {aɛkɛ tɛ́nɛ́ tí mɔ tí má yángá tí babá tí mɔ na tí má yángá tí mamá tí mɔ : it is your business to obey your father and to obey your mother} {mbi wara yíngɔ́ tí zía da, na mbi wara mbéní kpí tí zía da : I got some salt to put in, and I got some paste to put in} - *et* is a syn. used predominantly in French numerals or between sentences - *et puis* and *mais* are syn. used only to join clauses and sentences - et and mais may be used together with na, preceding na
2. a general subordinating connective, uniting complements other than "genitive" types to their head : with, at, in, to, from, etc. {mbi sára na kpí : I made paste with it} {mbi dutí na Bangui : I remained at Bangui} {lo lángó na da : he slept in the house} {lo goe na kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́ : he went to the village} {lo lóndó na tangé : he got up from the bed} {lo gá na mɔ : he came to you, or he came with you (i.e. he brought or accompanied you)} {lo mú na mɔ : he gave it to you} {lo sára só na mɔ : he did this to you} {lo húnda na mɔ : he asked it of you} {lo gá na lá kúí : he came in the afternoon} {lo wara nginza tí vɔ na yí tí lo : he obtained money to buy something for himself with} {ázo kóé na sése só : everyone on the earth} {gí kusára na nginza sí atambéla : only work for money "goes"} - *tí* is the other major subordinating connective, expressing most of the "genitive" type relationships, while na is used for locative, temporal, instrumental, attributive, and "circumstantial" relationships - other subordinating connectives are : *ka*, *ngbangatí*, *tɛnɛtí*, *tongana*
3. na is used to introduce many "prepositional" (or adverbial) expressions (*Grammar* p. 76-79, 105-106) with the structure na + noun

(+ tí/ní) - the nouns so used are primarily bę́, ndá, devant, gbɛ́, gígí, lé, lége, li, mbáge, milieu, ndó, ndo, ndúzú, pɛkɔ́, pópó, sése, tɛ́rɛ́, yá, yángá - the meanings of these expressions are listed under the respective nouns - in general, they are more specific and precise than na alone

ndá N : 1. the lower back, the hips, the buttocks - syn. ngbundá - see also pɛkɔ́, gbó ndá

2. the end of something {ndá tí kámba ní : the end of the rope} - this suggests the far end, while yángá is used of the near edge or end

3. the essence or ultimate meaning of something, a reason {mbi má ndá ní awe : I've understood the end, i.e. the essence of it} {ndá tí tɛ́nɛ́ só yę : what is the meaning of this?} {mbi hínga ndá ní : I understand it thoroughly} {ndá ní só, sí sése tí í atí : that is the reason why our land fell} - used in ndá ní - see na 3

ndá ade V : to be before sunrise - hence, the early morning before sunrise {ndá ade, lo gá : before sunrise, he came} - see heure for the divisions of the day

ndakóro N : a kind of plant - the skin of the fruit is dried and used as a washcloth

ndámbu N : a remainder, a portion left over {mbi lángó ká nzɛ otá na ndámbu : I lived there three months and some over} - syn. tanga

ndá ní N : after, afterwards {na ndá ní, ála mú mbéní : afterwards, they took more} - syn. pɛkɔ́ ní - both of these expressions can be used with or without introducing na

ndao N : a blacksmith - traditionally, the smith smelted the iron ore in a clay furnace, using charcoal (charbon), and then forged the iron (wę́) to make tools and weapons, as well as ornaments and the bars used in paying bride-price - see zɛmbɛ, ríga, likongó, kpɔ́ka, ngáfó - the smiths belonged to special clans

ndá péréré [ndá péréré, ndá pér̃é, ndá prélé, ndá pér̃, ndá pr̃é] N : morning, after sunrise {lo dutí na da na ndá péréré, así na lá kúí :

he sat in the house from morning until sunset} - see heure for the divisions of the day

ndaráa N : ingenuity, skill, cleverness {wále ní aɛkɛ wále tí ndaráa : this woman is an ingenious woman} - closely related meanings are expressed by manière, malin, lége 2

ndarangba N : a hare, a domestic or wild rabbit

ndá táá mɔ : a very serious curse, a very gross insult - apparently making some reference to the anatomy of the victim's mother - see zonga

ndavɛkɛ N : syphilis - see kobéla

ndé An : different - repeated it has a distributive meaning {mará tí dɔ́dɔ́ ndé ndé : many different kinds of dances} {mbéní yí ndé : another different thing, a certain different thing} - (Grammar p. 56-57) - see also mbéní, which among other things means other - but while ndé stresses a different kind, mbéní usually refers to another of the same kind

ndeko [ndeko, ndɛkɔ] N : an intimate friend of either sex, hence : a mistress, a lover, a paramour {aɛkɛ nzoní wále agonda ándeko tí lo na kɔ́li tí lo ? : is it proper for a woman to praise her lovers before her husband?} {ízo tí lukundú atambéla na bí tí gí ándeko tí ála : witches go about at night to seek their comrades} - camarade refers to friends of the same sex, fó is a co-worker, mbá is a compatriot, ndoé is a person having the same name as oneself, íta is a relative or someone whose friendship is so intimate as to warrant a sort of honorary inclusion in the family - wato is an enemy

ndembú N : cured rubber, or that which is made of it, as a rubber ball {asára balle na ndembú : they make balls out of rubber} - bángá is primarily raw rubber or latex - see also píka ndembú

ndɛkɛ [ndɛkɛ, ndeke] N : any kind of bird

ndɛkɛ tí ngbáa N : a buffalo bird, i.e. a bird which follows the herd of buffalo and feeds on insects aroused by their movements ndiá N : a law, an ordinance, a rule, a decree - *lú ndiá* means to promulgate or enact a law

ndó N : the top of something (só ndó tí table : that is the top of the table) - ndó suggests a surface, while *li* 2 suggests the top part or portion of something - used in *ndó bé*, *ndó gɔ́*, *ndó lé*, *ndó tí*, *ndó (tí) mabɔ́kɔ*, *hɔ̨́ ndó* - na ndó tí means on top of - see *na* 3

ndo N : a place, an environment (mbi tɛ kóbe na ndo tí lo : I ate at his place) (ndo avɔkɔ́ awe : the place was dark) (lo goe na ndo yɔngɔ́rɔ : he went to a far-off place) (lo balayer ndo : she swept the place) (alóndó agoe na mbéní ndo : he left and went to another place) - syn. *place* - used as an "empty" object in expressions such as in *báa ndo*, *éré ndo*, *yí tí báa ndo*, *ndo só*, *ndo wa*

ndo ahá [ndo ahą́, ahą́] V : of the sun : to rise (ndo ahá awe : the sun has risen) - see *heure* for the divisions of the day

ndó bé N : the center of something (eh bien mɔ mú kɔkɔ fadesó, mɔ túku na ndó bé ní : well then you take some greens and dump them right in the middle of it) - *bé* means the middle, and ndó adds the idea of approaching the middle from above

ndoé [ndoé, ndɔé, ndoyé, ndɔyɛ́, ndɔyé] N : 1. a person having the same name as oneself, a bosom friend (lo ɛkɛ ndoé tí mbi : he's my intimate friend, my other self) - see *ndeko* for a list of related terms 2. among persons who learned Sango through Protestant missions, ndoé is used to mean love, both V and N, which in standard Sango are expressed by *bɛ́ ... yí*

ndó gɔ́ N : the nape of the neck - see *gɔ́*

ndó lé N : the forehead - see *lé* N 1

ndóndó li N : the brain - see *li*

ndóngé [ndóngé, ndóngɔ́] N : small red pepper (*Capsicum annum* L. or *Capsicum fruticosum* L.), used as a condiment (na pɛkɔ́ tí káráko mbi tɔ́ ndóngé na yá ní, sí i tɛ yá tí i asɔ pɛpɛ : after the peanuts, I boil red peppers in it, so that when we eat our stomachs won't hurt) ndóo N : clay for making pots - see ta

ndo só N : here, this place - used usually with na 3 {mbi gá na ndo só : I came here} {na ndo só, na Bangui ... : here, in Bangui ...} {ála sára sioní míngi ndo só : they did much wrong here} - syn. ge - see ndo wa

ndó tí N : used with na : 1. on top of, above, over, in addition to {atúku kpí tí sindi na ndó tí makongó : you dump the sesame paste on top of the caterpillars} {í zɔ gí na ndó tí wá : we just roast it over the fire} {lége tí yó na ndó tí caisse aɛkɛ pɛpɛ : there was no way of carrying it in addition to the crate} {í dé bá na ndó ní ngá : let's swear upon it also} - syn. li 2 - see also ndúzú 2
2. in numbers, joins units of one order to the next higher order of units in the decimal system {bale ɔ́kɔ na ndó ní óse : one ten plus two, i.e. twelve} - see ɔ́kɔ for the number system

ndó (tí) mabɔ́kɔ N : the shoulder {agoe tí súru ndó tí mabɔ́kɔ tí mɔ : they are going to cut open (i.e. vaccinate) your shoulder} - syn. li tí mabɔ́kɔ

ndo wa N : what place, where - usually used with na {mɔ wara pendere bɔngó só na ndo wa : where did you get that beautiful dress?} - see also ndo só

ndɔ́kɔ́ N : a flower - sára ndɔ́kɔ́ means to bloom

ndú V : to touch {tongana zo andú kpíkara, lo lángó tongana lo kúí : when someone touches the pangolin, he lies down and plays dead} - syn. toucher

ndunda* N : sisal - grown locally in plantations started through French initiative

ndurú [ndurú, ndulú] An : 1. short {kéké ní aɛkɛ ndurú ndurú : the stick is very short} {mɔ sára ngá ndurú tɛ́nɛ́ : make your talk short} - opp. yɔngɔ́rɔ
2. with verbs : near, nearby, close {mɔ gá ndurú : come near} {kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́ aɛkɛ ndurú pɛpɛ ? : isn't the village nearby?} - see gá ndurú

ndurú gɔzɔ N : a small remnant of manioc - see ndámbu

ndurú mápa N : a small remnant of bread - see ndámbu

ndú tέrέ tí ... vεní na mbáná V : to masturbate

ndúzú N : 1. the sky, the air {yąma tí ndúzú : an aerial animal} {lo εkε na ndúzú, na lo gá na sése": he was in the sky, and he dame to the earth} {ádɔla só auru na ndúzú : moths which fly in the air} - ía emphasizes the air, yáyú means heaven
2. with na 3 : up, upwards, up in the air {yɔ́rɔ mabɔ́kɔ na ndúzú : put up your hand} {mbi monter na ndúzú : I climbed up{ {lo kánga kámba tí lo na ndúzú : he fastened his snare up in the air}

nε V : 1. to bear down hard - hence the following meanings
2. to be heavy {caisse ní anε, alíngbi pεpε : the crate was much too heavy}
3. to crush or roll out, as paste {lo nε kpí tí káráko : she crushed peanut paste} - this is done with some kind of roller, e.g. a bottle - syn. nεka - pεtε means to crush by pounding - ri means to be thoroughly crushed
4. to bite with the molars, to chew - tε means to bite with the incisors

nεka [nεka, nakpą] V : to crush {mamá anεka kpí míngi, azía na tέrέ tí susu : mother crushed a lot of paste and put it with the fish} - syn. nε 3 - pεtε means to crush by pounding, ri means to be thoroughly crushed

nέngó N : 1. weight, heaviness {mbi mú nέngó ní : I took the heavy one} - from nε 2
2. thickness {nέngó tí kéké aεkε tois centimètres : the thickness of the board was three centimeters}

ngá An : also, too {mɔ yí tí vɔ ngá yí só : you want to buy this also} {babá akúí ngá : father died too} {ázo só ngá aεkε wara kobéla : these people also get sick} - syn. aussi - both can be used together - (Grammar p. 57) ngaánga N : a fetish - see yoró

ngáfó N : a hoe {ngáfó aɛkɛ kpɔ́ka, mais ngáfó aɛkɛ yángá tí Banda : a ngáfó is a hoe, but ngáfó is in the Banda language} - both ngáfó and kpɔ́ka are used extensively - see zɛmbɛ for a list of tools

ngágo N : a kind of spinach-like edible greens (Solanum aethiopicum L.) grown for food {tongana mɔ yí tí tɔ́ kúrú tí yąma na kugbé tí ngágo, mɔ tɔ́ : if you want to cook dried meat with ngágo leaves, you do} - for a list of edible leaves, see kugbé

ngambe [ngambe, ngambi] N : a younger sibling {mbéní ngambe tí mbi ... : a certain younger sibling of mine ...} - íta is any sibling, while kótá zo is an older brother - see famille for the kinship system

ngángá N : a gourd, cut open at the small end so as to form a kind of bottle - syn. bouteille - kangú is a gourd cut longitudinally so as to form a dipper

nganga N : a kind of medicine which is put on a dead man or on his grave, when the person responsible for the death is not known, to kill the culprit

ngangó [ngangó, ngangú] N : hardness, difficulty, strength, power, severity, force, violence {mɔ sára kɔa na ngangó tí tɛ́rɛ́ tí mɔ : work with the strength of your body} {zo tí ngangó : a strong man} {ngangó tí yoró ahǫ́ ndó tí ngangó tí tɛ́rɛ́ tí mɔ : the strength of the medicine overcame the strength of your body} {tongana mɔ zía na wá jusqu'à, fadé kɔkɔ ní agá ngangó : if you leave them on the fire for a long time, the greens will get hard, i.e. tough} {mɔ dé kɔ́ngɔ́ na li tí lo ngangó míngi : you shout after him with much force, i.e. loudly} {ála tomba ázo tí sára kɔa na ngangó : they drive out people by force to work} {ngú tí Gbutu sɔ́ aɛkɛ tí na ngangó : the water of Gbutu (Falls) which falls with violence} {nginza tí wále aɛkɛ ngangó míngi : the cost of a wife is very hard, i.e. expensive} {mɔ yí tí vɔ na ngangó ? : do you want to buy by force?} {kɔa tí lo aɛkɛ ngangó : his work is difficult} {pasteur awa ála ngangó : the pastor admonished them severely} {yí fadesó ngangó míngi : things are tough now} {mbéní téné tí ngangó na téné tí pási aɛkɛ da mingi : there is much difficulty and pain in it} - see *sára ngangó*, *yí tí ngangó* - *wɔ́kɔ* is a verb expressing an opposite idea

ngása N : a goat - universally kept, goats are not milked and are eaten only on ceremonial or festive occasions - like chickens, they are a form of wealth and are used primarily as gifts and to pay the bride-price

ngasá [ngasá, ngásá] N : a wild yam (*Dioscorea sagittifolia* Pax ?) found in the bush and eaten when better food is not available

ngása Ngbaka N : Protestant word for sheep - see *taba*

ngbá V : to remain (from the past), to be left over, to survive, to continue {tongana tanga ní angbá, í vɔ : when there is some left, we sell it} {mbi ngbá : I remained} {tongana mɔ báa kɔ́á na lé tí mɔ, mɔ língbi títɛnɛ mɔ ngbá pɛpɛ : if you see death (from smallpox), you won't be able to survive} {mbi ngbá na ngbéré bɔngɔ́ : I remain with just an old garment} {mbi ngbá na ndo só : I remain here} {angbá saleté : it is still dirty} {mbi ngbá tí tambéla : I'm still walking} - syn. *continuer* - *de* is oriented to the future, with the idea of "not yet" - *du* V 2 and *dutí* 2 are more static

ngbá kété V : used pre-clausally : just a little more, just a little longer {angbá kété, ála fáa mbi : just a little more, and they would have killed me}

ngbáá [ngbáá, ngbáa] N : a slave - in traditional society, slaves could be either captured or bought - as long as they caused no trouble, they had certain rights and were treated as junior members of their master's household - in some cases there was a slave caste {awara lo, amú lo tongana ngbáá : he found him and took him as a slave} {yí só ála ɛkɛ vɔ na wále na lá ní ká, aɛkɛ tí fúta na mbéní ngbáá : what they used in those days to buy wives, was to pay (for them) with some slaves} - *bɔ́i* is a servant or domestic employee in a more modern sense and context

ngbáa [ngbáa, ngbáá] N : a Cape buffalo - syn. *gɔ́gɔ́á*, and rarely *bágara* 2 ngbagba N : the lower mandible, the lower jaw, the chin - see *lé* the face

ngbágo N : 1. a distilled alcoholic beverage, syn. *hárágе* - see *samba* for a list of alcoholic beverages
2. by extension : various forms of commercial or medical alcohol, e.g. methyl, ethyl, isopropyl

ngbálo N : a kind of head disease, possibly apoplexy {lo kúí na kobéla tí ngbálo : he died of apoplexy} - see *kobéla*

ngbanga [ngbanga, mbanga, maŋa, ngbange] N : a matter, an affair, a palaver, a dispute - used especially of matters requiring arbitration or judgment - also : need, in expressions of obligation {ngbanga tí kusára : a labor dispute} {kɔa tí mbi tí lɛkɛ ngbanga tí ázo tí kusára na ámbunzú : my work is to settle the palavers of workmen and white men} {aɛkɛ ngbanga tí lo tí gá na lá ní : he heeds to (or must) come on the day} - this is more specific than *tɛ́nɛ́* 2 - *fáa ngbanga* is to judge, to arbitrate, to make a formal decision - *da tí ngbanga* is the edifice where matters are settled

ngbangatí [ngbangatí, mbangatí, mgaŋ(a)tí, ngbątí, mbątí, ngbatí, mbatí] C : a connective of cause, reason, or purpose : for, because of, on account of, to, in order to {aɛkɛ ngbangatí nginza : it is on account of money} {mɔ língbi tí kę lo ngbangatí bɔngɔ́ lá wa : how can you reject him because of clothes} {í fɔnɔ ngbangatí gí dole : we walked about in order to hunt elephants} {lo mú na mbi ngbangatí mɔ : he gave it to me for you} - (*Grammar* p. 88-91) - syn. *tɛnɛtí*

ngbangatí yę Av : used either pre-clausally or post-verbally : for what reason, why {mɔ dé éré tí lo ngbangatí yę : why did you say his name?} {ngbangatí yę mɔ dé éré tí lo : why did you say his name?} - syn. *tɛnɛtí yę*

ngbangbu N : a hundred {ngbangbu óse na ndó ní bale ɔ́kɔ : one hundred and ten} - see *ɔ́kɔ* for the number system

ngbángéréngú N : a cult and dance characterized by prolonged manifestations of frenzy or violent (spirit) possession {mbi dɔ́ ngbángéréngú : I danced the ngbángéréngú} - the possession lasts for several months and culminates in a dance during which initiates paint their bodies with a red powder called mbíó - persons looking on from outside sometimes consider this a sickness, a form of unbalance

ngbéré [ngbéré, ngbɛ́rɛ́] : old - used of objects {ngbéré da : an old house} {ngbéré tɛ́nɛ́ : an old matter} {ngbéré bɔngɔ́ : old clothes} - mbakɔ́rɔ is used of old people

ngbéréná N : 1. brass coiled bracelets and anklets - kisi, lenge, and yí tí mɛ́
2. a brass bell tied to a dog's neck

ngbii Av : an ideophone : for a while, for a long time - can be reduplicated for emphasis, or used together with its syn. jusqu'à (Grammar p. 60-61) {tɛ́rɛ́ tí lo asɔ lo ngbii : his body hurt him for a while} {mɔ píka yá ní ngbii kóé : you pound it for a while until (it is) done} {mɔ goe na ní ngbii ngbii ngbii : you should continue it for a long, long time} {í yí tí lɛkɛ jusqu'à ngbii : we want to (keep on) organizing it for a very long time} - ngbii tends to have a future or time-neutral orientation, while depuis has a distinctly past perfective orientation

ngbingbi N : a dam, built to catch fish {lo ɛkɛ zía ngbingbi tí lo na ngú tí mú susu : he put his dam across the stream to catch fish} - see éré ngú, gí susu

ngbɔ́ N : a snake - kúma is a python

ngbɔ́kɔ́ N : sugar cane - cultivated mostly in the southern zone of the Central African Republic

ngbundá [ngbundá, mbundá] N : the lower back, the hips, the buttocks {ála fáa mbéní kugbé só áwále akánga na ngbundá tí ála kózo ní : they cut some of those leaves which women used to tie about their hips} - syn. ndá 1 - see tɛ́rɛ́ 1

ngbúru V : to embroil, to enmesh {ayí tí ngbúru zo na yá tí tɛ́nɛ́ ní : he wants to embroil someone in the affair} ngeki lé N : eyebrow - see lé

ngé lángó N : sleeping sickness (trypanosomiasis) - formerly endemic in the Central African Republic - a form of curse is to wish the sleeping sickness upon someone {lo éré ngé lángó na li tí mbéní zo : he called down sleeping sickness upon someone} - see kobéla

ngéré [ngéré, ngɛ́rɛ́] N : cost, price, value {ngéré ní aɛkɛ ngangó : the cost is high} {ngéré ní awɔ́kɔ : the cost is reasonable} {ngéré ní ɔ́kɛ ɔ́kɛ : how much are they apiece?} - see also fúta, payer, nginza, vɔ ngéré

ngɛ V : to be or become thin, to waste away - used only of living beings {mɔ ngɛ míngi : you have become very thin} - kété is used for things - opp. kɔnɔ, mafuta

ngiá N : cordiality, amiability, sociability, joy, happiness, gladness, fun, amusement, fellowship {ála báa mbi na ngiá : they looked upon me cordially} {mbi ɛkɛ na ngiá míngi : I am very happy} {aɛkɛ yí tí ngiá pɛpɛ : it's not a laughing matter} {aɛkɛ tɛ́nɛ́ tí ngiá pɛpɛ : it's not a laughing matter} - ngiá arises from the prior condition of good interpersonal relationships, free of guile, rancor, suspicion, or envy - bɛ́ ɔ́kɔ is a closely related idea - see also ngiá ... sí bɛ́, mú ngiá na bɛ́ tí, zía ngiá na bɛ́ tí, hé ngiá, sára ngiá

ngiá ... sí bɛ́ V : to rejoice greatly, to be very happy {ngiá así bɛ́ tí mbi : I am very happy} - the expression can also be inverted {bɛ́ tí mbi así na ngiá : my heart is full of joy}

ngiba* N : leprosy - syn. buruma - see kobéla

ngindí N : a rat snare made of a cord noose stretched by a spring made of flexible stick - larger models are used to catch other animals such as the ratel (zarí) - perhaps the same as gindí - kámba 3 is a more general term - see also sɔ̨́

nginza N : money {lo wara nginza ɔ́kɔ pɛpɛ : he has obtained no money} {í vɔ na nginza : we bought it for money, i.e. cash} {nginza tí boîte só aɛkɛ ngangó míngi : the cost of a can is very high} {ála língbi tí tɛ nginza tí mɔ pɛpɛ : they cannot receive the bride-price for you} - see pata, franc, tɛ nginza, vɔ, ká V, mɔsɔrɔ, ngéré, fúta, payer, vɔ ngéré, par jour, which all express financial or commercial concepts

ngobo N : a fist {lo píka kate tí lo na ngobo tí lo : he hit his chest with his fist} - syn. coup de poing 1 - mabɔ́kɔ is the hand and arm

ngói N : a season, a time characterized by some event or activity {ngói tí lú káráko : the season for planting peanuts}

ngómbá N : an indigenous xylophone - see píka bíá

ngombáyá* An : nine - see ɔ́kɔ for the number system

ngombe N : a gun - few Africans have guns, and most of those in use are either shotguns or muzzle-loaders (piston) - see gí yąma - see zɛmbɛ for a list of weapons

ngombi V : to fold, as clothes {mɔ ngombi bɔngɔ́ sí mɔ zía na sandúku : fold the clothes before putting them into the box} - syn. kúngbi 1

ngonda N : the bush, the wilderness - in most parts of the Central African Republic, this is savanna {mɔ fáa ngunzá na ngonda : you cut greens in the bush} - péré is a more specific term for savanna, while lando refers to a low-lying, sometimes marshy plain - gbakɔ́ is a gallery forest along a stream - opp. kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́ - sése is the most general term for land - see also goe (na) ngonda, bi na ngonda, yąma tí ngonda

ngóngóá [ngóngóá, ngɔ́ngɔ́a] N : that which is impure or defiled as the result of death, e.g. a house, a garden where death has occurred

ngongoa N : seed of animals {tongana lo wara yąma, fadé lo fáa ngongoa tí yąma ní kóé ahúnzi : if he finds animals, he will wipe out the seed (i.e. posterity) of the animal, and all will disappear}

ngonzo [ngonzo, ngɔnzɔ] N : 1. the bile - bozó tí ngonzo is the gall bladder

2. anger {tɛ́nɛ́ tí ngonzo : angry words} {ngonzo alóndó na lé tí lo :

anger rose in his face} - see also ngonzo ... sára, ngonzo ... gbó, sára ngonzo - vundú is rather resentment and a desire for retaliation for an injury - for other emotions, see bɛ́

ngonzo ... gbó : to be very angry, to be controlled by anger {ngonzo agbó lo : he was very angry} - this is stronger than ngonzo ... sára, sára ngonzo

ngonzo ... sára V : to be angry {ngonzo asára mbi : I was angry} - syn. sára ngonzo - ngonzo ... gbó is stronger

ngóro N : a cheetah ?

ngɔ́ N : a boat, especially a dugout canoe made from the trunk of a tree - dugouts are used extensively for transport and for fishing by all the peoples living near larger rivers {na kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́ tí Yakoma giriri, ála tambéla na gɛ́rɛ́ pɛpɛ, gí ngɔ́ na lé tí ngú : in Yakoma country formerly, they didn't travel on foot, only by canoe on the water} - for larger boats or ships of European origin, French bateau is used

ngɔ N 1 : a drum or gong - there are two models of indigenous drums, both basically carved out of a section of a large log hollowed out - the gong, used especially in transmitting messages and "announcements", is laid on its side and has uppermost a longitudinal slit, and is beat upon either with the hand or fist or with a stick - the drum proper, used mainly for dances, stands upright and has a rawhide drumhead, and is played primarily with the hands - see píka bía

ngɔ N 2 : a fetus {wále tí mbi aɛkɛ na ngɔ : my wife is pregnant} {lo kúí na ngɔ : she died in childbirth} - mɛ́ ngɔ is to conceive, mamá tí ngɔ is a pregnant woman, ngɔ ... buba means to abort or have a miscarriage, dú V means to give birth

ngɔ ... buba V : to abort, to have a miscarriage {ngɔ ní abuba awe : she had a miscarriage, lit. the fetus was destroyed}

ngɔ́lɔ N : a wicker fish-trap or weir - see gí susu for a description of fishing

ngɔlɔ N : a palaver, a quarrel - used only in gí ngɔlɔ - more general syn.

are ngbanga, téné 2

ngɔ́rɔ [ngɔ́rɔ, ngóro, ngúru] V : to surround, to circle, to go around {í ngɔ́rɔ kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́ : we circled the village} {gbágbá angɔ́rɔ bála : the fence surrounds the enclosure}

ngú N : 1. water {mɔ mú na lo ngú, lo sukúla lé tí lo : give him water to wash his face} {zía ngú na wá akpɔrɔ : put water on the fire to boil} - see sukúla ngú, dú ngú, ngú tí wá, ngú tí dé, kɔɔ́rɔ́ngó ngú
2. by extension : any liquid - see ngú lavú, ngú lé, ngú tí bángá, ngú tí mbétí, ngú tí mɛ, ngú vurú, ngú tí kɔ́li
3. a stream, a river, a lake, a pond, a sea, etc. {place só ngú asɔa da : the place where the stream flows} {í fáa ngú : we crossed the stream} {ngú tí Gbutu só aɛkɛ tí na ngangó só : those waterfalls of Gbutu which fall with such violence} {mbéní kótá ngú : a certain wide river} - see lé tí ngú, yángá tí ngú, éré ngú, li ngú
4. rain, rainfall - see ngú ... píka, ngú (tí) Nzapá
5. rainy season - hence, because the passage of time is reckoned in terms of the passage of rainy seasons, a year {ngú tí mbi ade títɛnɛ mbi mú wále : my years remain (i.e. I am not old enough) to take a wife} {na ngú só : this year} {ngú na ngú : every year, year by year} {ngú otá : three years} - gbé ngú means in the rainy season - buru, vuru ndo refer to the dry season - nzɛ is a month

ngui [ngui, ngwíi, wíi] N : a colobus monkey (Colobus abyssinicus) - the black and white pelt of this monkey is made into a kind of hat the wearing of which is culturally restricted - see makáko, the general term for monkey

ngú lavú N : honey - syn. mafuta tí wótoro 1

ngú lé N : tears, weeping - see lé N 1.1

ngundé N : a crocodile - found in the larger rivers only

ngungu* N : a mosquito - see voma for a list of insects

ngunzá [ngunzá, ngonzá] N : greens, either manioc leaves or certain wild edible leaves - the most common green vegetables, an ingredient in various sauces (kása) {mɔ goe tí fáa ngunzá na ngonda : you go cut greens in the bush} {mɔ fáa ngunzá ní, mɔ bi kéké ní na sése, mɔ zía na yá tí ngú sí akporɔ, mɔ tourner, mɔ zía na yá tí kpu, mɔ píka : you cut up the greens, you throw away the stems, you put them into water to boil, you stir them, you put them into a mortar, and you pound them} - see kugbé for a list of edible leaves

ngú ... píka V : to rain {ngú apíka míngi lá só : it rained hard today} - see ngú (tí) Nzapá

ngusú N : 1. a chigger, a small six-legged larval mite (family Trombiculidae) that burrows into the skin, usually around the toenails, and lays eggs in a sac - especially common in the south, where people's toes are often deformed - see voma for a list of insects and arachnids
2. a maggot {voma adú ngusú na yą̧ma : flies lay maggots in meat} - see voma

ngú tí dé N : cold water - see ngú 1 - opp. ngú tí wá

ngú tí bángá N : raw rubber, latex - syn. bángá

ngú tí kɔ́li N : semen - syn. ngú vurú

ngú tí mbétí N : ink - the French encre is much more common

ngú tí mɛ N : breast milk, mother's milk - canned or powdered milk is lait

ngú (tí) Nzapá N : rain {ngú Nzapá aɛkɛ kánga yángá tí ála : rain shut their mouths, i.e. made it impossible for them to eat by preventing them from going to the fields to get food} - syn. ngú 4 - see also ngú ... píka

ngú tí wá N : hot water - see ngú 1, also kpɔ́rɔ́ngɔ́ ngú - opp. ngú tí dé

ngú vurú N : any thick, milky discharge from the body, as pus, semen - sánzɔ́ is a term for pus - ngú tí kɔ́li is a syn. for semen

ní An : 1. with nouns : a restrictive and/or anaphoric determinant (Grammar p. 38-45) : the, the one {mú na mbi yą̧ma ní : give me the animal (previously referred to or present to sight)} {mɔ zía kpí, kpí ní aɛkɛ kɔ́sɔ́ : you put in paste, the paste is of squash seed} -

used often to replace a complement consisting of a phrase introduced by tí {li tí hɔ́tɔ́ : the top of the hill} {li ní : the top of it}
2. used alone : mainly in indirect discourse as a pronoun referring to the person speaking {tɛrɛ atɛnɛ, lo mú na ní mbo tí ní : tɛrɛ said that he (another person) should give him (tɛrɛ) his (tɛrɛ's) dog}

nínga V : to hold back, to stop short, to refrain from, to last a long time {áwále tí giriri, anínga na ní míngi : women formerly held back (i.e. were very reluctant) from it much} {kobéla anínga tí fáa zo pɛpɛ : this disease does not stop short of killing people} - see also pɛkɔ́ ní anínga pɛpɛ

non** [nɔ̨, nɔ] I : no {non, mbi ɛkɛ na wále pɛpɛ : no, I am not married} - opp. oui - pɛpɛ is the corresponding sentence particle

numéro** [nimerɔ́o] N : number, especially in an ordinal set {numéro bale ɔ́kɔ : number ten} - see ɔ́kɔ for the number system

nylon** [nilɔ̨́ɔ̨] N : 1. nylon
2. a European dance {ála kɛ̨ tí dɔ́ ngaragé, gí nylon ɔ́kɔ, ála hínga : they refuse to dance the ngaragé, they know only the nylon}
3. anything which is modern, stylish, up to date, chic {aɛkɛ nylon : it's the latest!}

nzá N : horn of an animal - syn. dede

nzala [nzala, nzara] N : appetite, hunger, desire, craving, urge, lust, {nzala ahánda zo : appetite tempts a person} {heure tí nzala : a time of hunger, i.e. famine} {nzala tí mɔ aśára mbi míngi : a desire for you affects me very much, i.e. I want badly to see you} - see nzala ...fáa, kúí nzala

nzala ... fáa V : to be very hungry, to starve {nzala afáa lo : he was very hungry, he was starving} - syn. kúí nzala

nzanza* N : a kind of grass which grows near water and which is used to make large, strong baskets in which raw cotton is carried to market, and also for making woven granary walls and fences - see péré for a list of grasses and reeds

Nzapá N : 1. originally, probably a kind of sky-god - this is the name adopted by Christian missions to refer to the God of the Bible {sambéla Nzapá ɔ́kɔ : worship God only} {lo húnda Nzapá babá ... : he asked God the father ...} {Nzapá aɛkɛ : God is, i.e. you can depend on Him to set things right and to avenge wrongs done to you} - sambéla, díkɔ mean to pray, to worship, sepála means to praise God - da tí Nzapá is a church edifice, mbɛ́tí tí Nzapá is the Bible, tɛ́nɛ́ tí Nzapá is the word of God, Yingɔ́ tí Nzapá is the Spirit of God, mɛ́rɛngɛ́ tí Nzapá is a Christian, ngú (tí) Nzapá is rain
2. an oath attesting one's truthfulness {Nzapá ! : I swear it's true!}

nzére yí N : different kinds of things usually small

nzɛ́ V : to get weary or discouraged, to give up, to fail to persevere {quand même ála kɛ̨ lo, bɛ́ tí lo anzɛ́ pɛpɛ : even though they rejected him, he did not give up} - used in bɛ́ ... nzɛ́ - wɔ́kɔ emphasizes physical weakness - see also be 1, gêner

nzɛ N : 1. the moon {mɔ língbi tí báa nzɛ pɛpɛ, lé tí nzɛ ní avɔkɔ́ : you can't see the moon, the face of the moon is completely dark} {ákótará asambéla kéké, na péré, na nzɛ, na lá : the ancestors worshipped trees, and grass, and the moon, and the sun}
2. a month {mɔ fúta lo na nzɛ : pay him by the month} {nzɛ na nzɛ : month by month, every month} {í lángó ká nzɛ otá : we stayed there three months} - syn. mois - ngú 5 is a year - see also báa nzɛ, bángó nzɛ

nzɛnɛ́, nzɛnɛ́ tí mabɔ́kɔ N : a fingernail, a claw - see mabɔ́kɔ

nzɛnzɛ N : a machete - syn. coupe-coupe, kpangbala - see zɛmbɛ for a list of tools

nzɛrɛ [nzɛrɛ, nzere] V : to please, to give or receive pleasure, to taste sweet, to taste good {kóbe ní akpí, anzɛrɛ pɛpɛ : the food was sour, it didn't taste good} {tongana anzɛrɛ na lé tí mɔ, mɔ sára : if it pleases you, you do it} {yí ní anzɛrɛ na mbi míngi : the thing pleases me greatly} - see bɛ́ ... nzɛrɛ, nzɛrɛ na bɛ́ nzɛrɛ na bɛ́ V : to please, to give pleasure {yí só anzɛrɛ na bɛ́ tí mbi : this thing pleases me}

nzí V : to steal {lo vɛní, lo nzí : he's the one who stole} {mbi nzí bulée tí sentinelle : I stole the bananas of the watchman} - see also zo tí nzí, wa nzí, which are terms for a thief

nzinga* N : poverty, poor - wa nzinga is a poor person

nzó N : corn, maize - syn. gbánza

nzoní [nzoní, nzɔní, nžoní, nžɔní, nzon, nzɔ, nzo] An : 1. good, in the most general sense, nice {lo mú nzoní yí na í míngi : he gave us many good things} {í goe tí báa nzoní manière só ála sára na kɔa tí yáká : we went to see the good manner in which they worked the fields} {kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́ ní aɛkɛ nzoní pɛpɛ : the village is no good} {ála sára na mbi nzoní tɛ́nɛ́ míngi : they said many nice things to me} {mɔ fa na ála lége tí nzoní : show them a good way} {ndo aɛkɛ nzoní : the place is good, i.e. we are having good weather} - see bɛ́ nzoní - see also mbírímbírí, which means straight or upright, nzɛrɛ, meaning to please or to taste good - opp. sioní - see also ɛkɛ nzoní 2. with verbs : well, nicely {mɔ sukúla ní nzoní : wash it well} {ála sára kɔa nzoní pɛpɛ : they didn't do the work well} {vɛkɛ awɔ́kɔ nzoní : the okra was nicely tender} {lo sára nzoní míngi na mbi : he acted very well toward me} {mbi bara mɔ nzoní : I greet you cordially} - see gá nzoní, goe nzoní, dutí nzoní

- O -

o SP : a particle expressing politemess, endearment, supplication, etc. (Grammar p. 147-148) {ála hé pɛ́mbɛ́ tí mbi pɛpɛ o : please don't make fun of my teeth!} {bara o : greetings!}

oignon** [ɔnyɔ̨́ɔ̨, ɔ̨yɔ̨́ɔ̨, ziɔ̨́] N : an onion - some are grown locally, some are imported from the Chad - they are used to season sauces

ole [ole, woli, wore, hure] V : to dry {tongana ndo acommencer tí ole, mɔ báa átɔngɔ́rɔ omaná só : when the place begins to dry up, you can see those six stars} {ngú ní aole : the stream dried up} - see kúrú

óléngó N : dried {óléngó susu : dried fish} - syn. kúrú

omaná [omaná, omɛnɛ́] An : six - see ɔ́kɔ for the number system

omba [omba, womba] N : father's sister, aunt - see famille for the kinship system

óse [óse, úse, úsi, ósi, úsɛ] An : two - used in sára na mabɔ́kɔ óse - see ɔ́kɔ for the number system

osió [osió, osyó, usió, usyó] An : four - see ɔ́kɔ for the number system

otá An : three - see ɔ́kɔ for the number system

oui** [wíi] I : yes {oui, mɔ hínga aɛkɛ tongasó : yes, you know it is like that} - opp. non ɔ́kɛ [ɔ́kɛ, ɔ́ke] An : how many, how much {ázo ɔ́kɛ ayí tí sára : how many people want to do it?} {ngéré ní ɔ́kɛ : how much is it?} {ngéré ní ɔ́kɛ ɔ́kɛ : how much are they apiece?} - (Grammar p. 57)

ɔ́kɔ [ɔ́kɔ, óko, ókɔ] An : one, only, alone, a certain, each, together {préavis aɛkɛ nzɛ ɔ́kɔ : notice is one month} {mbéní alú gí ɔ́kɔ : some planted only one} {mariage ní gí ɔ́kɔ awe : there is only one marriage, that's all} {mɔ mú yoró ɔ́kɔ na lá tí lo : take each (dose of) medicine on its day} {gí kɔa tí da tí kɔ́li ɔ́kɔ awe : just the work of your husband's house only, that's all} {mbi báa mɛ́rɛngɛ́ kɔ́li ɔ́kɔ ... : I saw a certain youth ...} {mbi ɔ́kɔ awe : only me} {lo goe lo ɔ́kɔ na li tí hɔ́tɔ́ : he went alone to the top of a hill} {í yǫ́ samba ɔ́kɔ : we drank beer together} - see also bɛ́ ɔ́kɔ, lá ɔ́kɔ, lége ɔ́kɔ, ɔ́kɔ ɔ́kɔ, ɔ́kɔ pɛpɛ, yí ɔ́kɔ - the number system is as follows (Grammar p. 45-47) :

ɔ́kɔ - one
óse - two
otá - three
osió - four
ukú - five

omaná - six
mbásámbárá - seven
miombe - eight
ngombáyá - nine
bale ɔ́kɔ - ten

bale ɔ́kɔ na ndó ní ɔ́kɔ - eleven
bale óse - twenty
ngbangbu ɔ́kɔ - one hundred
ngbangbu ɔ́kɔ na (ndó ní) bale ɔ́kɔ - one hundred and ten
kutu ɔ́kɔ - one thousand

the Sango numbers are used in counting most things, especially traditional things - they are used in counting money by páta's (five-franc units) - French numerals are used in counting units of the metric system, in dates, and in most cases for counting money in francs - there is a large area of fluctuation between the two systems, but they are never mixed

ɔ́kɔ ɔ́kɔ [ɔ́kɔɔ́kɔ, kɔ́kɔ́kɔ́] An : each and every one {zo ɔ́kɔ ɔ́kɔ aɛkɛ gá : each and every person is coming} ɔ́kɔ pɛpɛ An : not at all, not a single one {lo kę tí fúta lo awe ? ɔ́kɔ pɛpɛ : did he refuse to pay him? not at all} {zo alíngbi tí gbánzi na lo ɔ́kɔ pɛpɛ : one can withhold it from him not at all} {awara susu ɔ́kɔ pɛpɛ : they found not a single fish}

- P -

pá éré V : to slander, to accuse on suspicion, to destroy someone's reputation (zo ní apá éré tí lo : the man slandered him) - see also réclamer, which suggests accusation on more substantial grounds - sára makɔró is to betray

paire** [pɛ́ɛr] N : 1. sometimes, used as in French to mean a pair of anything
2. more commonly : a pair of shoes (lo vɔ paire ɔ́kɔ : he bought one pair of shoes) - this refers especially to European style shoes, while pápa is a sandal or thong and póró 3 and póró tí géré are general terms for any kind of shoe - French soulier is also used

pandé N : a pattern, a model, an image to be copied (mɔ sára na lége tí pandé ní : do it according to the pattern) - the model can be concrete, verbal, or ideal - photo suggests the image of the model in some contexts, though the two terms are not precisely correlated

pápa N : sandals, thongs - the traditional sandals had soles of rawhide and a simple leather thong passing between the toes - since the arrival of European goods, many have soles made of pieces of automobile tire casings and thongs of inner tube rubber - the term is also applied to imported plastic thongs - póró 3 and póró tí géré are general terms for shoes, while paire 2 is a pair of European shoes

papa V : to quarrel, to argue passionately and with bitter feelings (ála papa ngangó míngi : they quarreled bitterly) - dé kíté means to object, to express doubts or reservations - tiri means to fight

papa N 1 : a quarrel, a bitter argument, a dispute (papa aɛkɛ mbéní pɛpɛ : there is no more quarrel) - this is more specific than ngbanga or téné, which can also refer to purely abstract or dispassionate matters papa N 2 : a spoon, a spoonful {mɔ mú papa tí fúku ɔ́kɔ : take one spoonful of flour}

papier** [papyée] N : 1. paper - syn. mbɛ́tí 1
2. a document - syn. mbɛ́tí 2

párá N : an egg

párá (tí) kɔ́ndɔ N : a chicken egg

pardon** [pardǫ́ǫ] N : 1. an apology, an excuse - by extension, any expression of a humble recognition of dependence or obligation {mbi mú pardon míngi na mɔ : I humbly apologize to you} {mbi mú pardon míngi na Nzapá : I express my humble and unworthy dependence upon God}
2. used as an interjection : a placating, apologetic, or ingratiating expression {pardon íta, í sára tɛ́nɛ́ só na pópó tí í pɛpɛ ? : pardon me, brother, but didn't we agree to this thing between ourselves?}

pardonner** [pardɔnée] V : to forgive, to pardon, to excuse {mɔ pardonner mbi monsieur : please forgive me,sir}

par jour** [parzúur] N : 1. a daily wage, as of a laborer {par jour tí ála aɛkɛ ndé : their daily wage is different} - see nginza, payer, fúta
2. also used, as in French, as a complement to the verb : by the day {amú na mbi nginza gí par jour : they just pay me by the day}

pási N : suffering, especially that occasioned by burdensome toil {pási tí yę sí mbi ɛkɛ báa só. kɔa tí mbi ahǫ́ ndó tí mbi : what suffering I am experiencing! my work is too much for me} - used mostly in the expression báa pási, to experience suffering {í báa pási na bí ngbii, ndá adé, í wara yí pɛpɛ : we toiled all night, and at dawn we hadn't caught anything} - finóo means pain, pɔnɔ́ and sáná suggest suffering caused by the ill-will or malice of others, and mawa means misery

passer** [pasée] V : 1. to pass, to pass by, to pass through, to happen {mbi báa yí só apasser : I watch what happens} {ála passer na yá tí kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́ : they passed through the village} {mbi passer concours tí mbi : I passed my examination} - sí V 1 means to happen, hɔ́ V means to pass or pass on, wara can mean to pass an examination

2. to sift, to strain through a lieve, a colander, or a strainer, to drain {mɔ píka, mɔ passer ngú ní kóé : you pound it and drain out the water (i.e. in a strainer)} {mɔ mú yɛngɛrɛ mɔ passer na fúku ní : you take the sieve and sift the flour with it} - yɛngɛrɛ V means to sift

3. a shortened form of repasser : to press clothes, to iron {mbi sára kɔa tí passer bɔngɔ́ : I did the work of pressing clothes}

pasteur** [pastɛ́ɛr] N : among Protestants, an ordained minister, a pastor - an ordained Catholic priest is père, while in both communions an unordained leader or catechist is catéchiste

páta N : a unit of five francs - most retail prices are in multiples of five francs, and smaller pieces of money are very rarely used - money is often counted in páta's, usually with Sango numerals {páta osió : four páta's, i.e. twenty francs - see franc, bon N, fúta, payer, nginza, ngéré, vɔ, ká V, vɔ ngéré, which all express financial concepts

pátárá N : a die for gambling {lo nzí nginza na pátárá : he stole money with dice} - see píka pátárá

payer** [pɛyée] V : to pay, as for work or goods, to recompense for services or damages {lo payer nginza na ázo tí kusára : he paid money to the workmen} {lo payer impôt : he paid taxes} - syn. fúta - see also nginza, franc, páta, bon, par jour, vɔ, ká, vɔ ngéré, ngéré, which express financial concepts

pé kámba V : to twist rope, to make rope by twisting fibers - há is a more general verb, including the notions of weaving and plaiting

pendere [pendere, pɛndɛrɛ] An : 1. young, youth {ápendere agá : the young (people) came} - used especially in pendere kɔ́li, pendere wále

2. beautiful, beauty {pendere bɔngɔ́ : beautiful clothes} {ála báa pendere tí kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́ : they saw the beauty of the village} {pendere biá :

a beautiful song} {mbi ɛkɛ pendere míngi : I am very beautiful} - nzoní is a much less specific partial synonym - see zo

pendere kɔ́li N : a young man, a youth, a male adolescent - in songs, sometimes kɔ́li pendere - kpíngba kɔ́li is a mature man, pendere wále is a young girl, mérɛngɛ́ is a child

pendere wále N : a young girl, a young woman, a female adolescent {ápendere wále asára kóbe : the young girls made food} - masía means specifically an unmarried girl of marriageable age - pendere kɔ́li is a young man, mérɛngɛ́ is a child, kótá wále is an old woman

penser** [pąsée, panzée] V : to think, to consider, to meditate {mbi penser mɔ ɛkɛ na tɛ́nɛ́ tí tɛnɛ : I think you have something to say} {mɔ penser tongana yę : what do you think?} {mbi penser mbi tɛnɛ ... : I think ...} {mbi penser tɛ́nɛ́ ní gbá : I considered the matter in vain} {lo penser ngbii : he meditated for a while} - syn. b'anda, báa 7, báa ... tɛnɛ, báa tongana, hą́, gí bɛ́

péré N : a generic term for grass {tongana coton ní asungba awe, mɔ goe na yá tí ngonda tí gí péré tí sakpá ní : when the cotton bolls burst, you go into the bush to hunt for grass for the baskets} - various kinds of grass have specific uses :
bebé is a grass used as a roofing material
nzanza is a coarse, tough grass used to make large heavy-duty baskets, fences, and granary walls
sɔsɔngɔ is a kind of reed used in making the framework of a roof before tying on the bebé

père** [pɛ́ɛr, lepɛ́ɛr] N : 1. a Catholic ordained priest - most priests are European, but a few are Africans - Protestant ordained leaders are called pasteur, and lay leaders in both churches are called catéchiste

2. by extension : the Catholic church or mission {mbi sára école na père : I went to school at the Catholic mission}

peut-être** [pɛtɛ́trɛ, pötɛ́trɛ] C : perhaps, possibly {peut-être, tongana mbi kúí na deux heures ... : perhaps, if I die in the early afternoon ...}

{peut-être bέ tí lo ayí mɔ pεpε : possibly he doesn't love you} - syn. hínga pεpε

pέ V : 1. to wave the hand, to beckon or signal with the hand {mbi pέ tí tí mbi sí ázo ahínga mbi sára tέnέ pεpε : I signal with my hand so that people will realize I can't talk}
2. to winnow grain and other kinds of food {lo pέ saleté tí sindi : he winnowed the chaff of the sesame} {lo pέ kɔ́á tí bobo : he winnowed the wings of the termites} - diki is a syn. - the winnowing is done by letting the grain fall into the wind from a broad woven scoop - sɔsɔ means to thresh, to pound the grain before winnowing

pεkɔ́ [pεkɔ́, pekɔ́, pekó, pikɔ́, pikó, pɔkɔ́, pokó] N : 1. the back, as a part of the anatomy {lo kpaka pεkɔ́ tí lo : he scraped his back} - ngbundɔ́ and ndá refer to the lower back, the hips, the buttocks - see tέrέ 1
2. the rest, the following portion, the follow-up of a communication {lo sára pεkɔ́ tí mbέtí ní : he wrote the rest of the letter} {mamá asára pεkɔ́ ní : mother followed it (i.e. the letter) up} - cf. ndá 3 which refers to the meaning of the communication
3. used in a tí phrase, as the complement of a noun : following, next, subsequent {dimanche tí pεkɔ́ : the following Sunday, next Sunday}

pεkɔ́ (ní/tí) N : used frequently in a na 3 phrase : after, afterwards, behind, in back of {na pεkɔ́ ní, mbi sára kɔa : afterwards, I worked} {mamá asára tέnέ na pεkɔ́ (ní) : mother spoke afterwards} {wále tí lo así na pεkɔ́ tí í : his wife arrived after us} {aéré ndo na pεkɔ́ tí lo : they called out after him} {kapíta só aεkε na pεkɔ́ tí makunzi : the headman who is after the chief} {mbi dutí na pεkɔ́ tí école : I stayed behind the school} - see kírí na pεkɔ́, mú pεkɔ́, gá na pεkɔ́, goe na pεkɔ́, tomba pεkɔ́ - syn. ndá ní - opp. devant, gbέ lé

pεkɔ́ ní anínga pεpε Av : used pre-clausally soon afterwards - see nínga

pεkɔ́ ... yɔ́ Av : used pre-clausally : a while later {pεkɔ́ ní ayɔ́ kété ... : some time later ...}

pɛ́mbɛ́ N : a tooth - kɔ́tá pɛ́mbɛ́ is a molar, kété pɛ́mbɛ́ is an incisor - see yángá the mouth

pɛ́mbɛ́ tí dole N : an elephant tusk

pɛpɛ [pɛpɛ, pepe, apɛ, ɛpɛ] SP : the negative sentence particle (Grammar p. 148-152) - used generally at the end of the sentence, though a few particles can follow it (ála hé pɛ́mbɛ́ tí mbi pɛpɛ o : please don't laugh at my teeth) (mbi wara bɔngɔ́ pɛpɛ ma : I don't receive clothes) (gí ní laá pɛpɛ ? : isn't that just it?) (tongasɔ́ pɛpɛ, ka mbi mú : if it were not for that, I would have taken it) - see also ɔ́kɔ pɛpɛ, hínga pɛpɛ, língbi pɛpɛ, pɛkɔ́ ní anínga pɛpɛ

pɛtɛ V : to pound, to crush by pounding, to mush (mɔ mú lé tí káráko, mɔ zɔ́ kɔ́é awe, mɔ mú kugbé tí tomate mɔ pɛtɛ da mɔ sára na pɔtɔpɔ́tɔ : you take peanuts and roast them, you take tomato leaves and pound them into it and make a mush) - nɛ 3 and nɛka mean to crush by rolling - pɛtɛ is used of relatively soft things, e.g. manioc, while sɔsɔ means to thresh grain - píka 1 is a general term for pounding

photo** [fotóo] N : a photograph, a picture, an illustration (só photo tí lo : this is his photograph, his picture) (ngɔ́ tí Pierre aɛkɛ tongana photo tí église : Peter's boat is like an illustration of the church) - pandé is a model, a pattern, though the two terms are not precisely correlated

1. píka [píka, péka] V : 1. to hit, to strike, to beat, to pound (ála píka mérɛngɛ́ só : they hit this child) (lo píka gɔzɔ : she beat the manioc) (lo píka ngɔ : he beat the drum) (lo píka kpí tí sindi : she pounded the sesame paste) - pɛtɛ is a more specific term for pounding relatively soft foods, e.g. manioc, while sɔsɔ means to thresh grain or to pound relatively hard foods - see also ngú ... píka

2. by extension, in a context of hunting : to kill (lo píka cochon ní na ngombe : he killed the pig with a gun)

3. by extension, in a context of building : to nail roofing to a house (lo píka da ní na tôle : he nailed sheet-metal roofing on the house)

píka berá V : to wage a war - see also *goe berá na li tí*, *tiri*, *tí na ndo*

píka ... bíá V : to play music, either on an instrument or on a record player (mbi yí tí píka na mɔ pendere bíá : I want to play for you a beautiful song) - French disque can replace *bíá* - *kunde*, a sort of traditional guitar, and *ngombá*, a sort of xylophone, are the two major instruments with variable pitch, while *ngɔ́* is the drum - *sanze* is a sort of portable instrument consisting of iron keys fastened to a hollow wooden body - *úlu* is used of wind instruments

píka mbétí V : to type, to print (lo píka mbétí só na machine : he typed this letter on a typewriter) - *sára mbétí* is to write, *díkɔ mbétí* is to read

píka ndembú V : to play soccer, by far the most popular of imported sports or games - from the fact that balls are made of rubber, *ndembú* - also píka ballon

píka pátárá V : to gamble with dice, to throw the dice (lo píka pátárá : he threw the dice)

píka senga V : to telephone, to telegraph (mbi yí tí píka senga na mɔ : I want to phone you) - from *senga*, a wire

píndírí (tí wá) N : embers, usually smoldering - *lé tí wá* is glowing coals, *charbon* is charcoal

piquet** [pikée] N : 1. a stake, e.g. to mark the corners of a lot 2. a field of the legally prescribed size for planting cotton, in the days of compulsory cultivation of cotton - the fields were marked off and the work supervised by petty agricultural officials called *bɔ́i coton*

piqûre** [pikúur] N : a hypodermic injection - European medicine is classified into piqûre and *quinine*, which means any form of dry pellets of medicine - the injection is popularly ascribed much greater potency - *yoró* is a generic term for medicine

pitą́ą N : fornication, adultery - see *sára pitą́ą*, *wále tí pitą́ą* pitó N : the foreskin - kéngé is the penis, fáa ganzá is to circumsize

place** [pláse, plási] N : a place {mbi kę place tí mamá tí mbi : I have rejected my mother's (home) place} {mɔ sí na place ní : you arrived at the place} - syn. ndo

poche** [bózo] N : a pocket, a pocketbook, a wallet - by confusion of the French word with bozó, a carrying bag

pointe** [pónte] N : a nail (for building)

pont** [pǫ́ǫ] N : a bridge - smaller bridges are often built of logs thrown across a stream slightly above the level of the water and covered with rocks and earth - such bridges are often washed out when the waters rise during the rainy season

pópó N 1 : a horizontal or oblique ornamental scar on the cheek just below the eyes, esp. among the Yakoma

pópó [pópó, pɔ́pɔ́] N 2 : midst, middle - used with introductory na 3 : between, among {na pópó tí ála : among them} {na pópó tí lo na íta tí lo : between him and his brother} - syn. bé, milieu - used in pópó hɔ́tɔ́

pópó hɔ́tɔ́ N : a valley

póró [póró, pɔ́rɔ́] N : 1. skin, hide, bark, shell {vurú póró : white skin} {póró tí zɛ : leopard hide} {póró tí kalá : snail shell}
2. leather, rawhide
3. a generic term for shoes {ála yú póró tí ála : they put on their shoes} - syn. póró tí géré - pápa are sandals or thongs, paire 2 are European style shoes - French soulier is also used

póró tí géré N : shoes - syn. póró 3

póró tí yángá N : a lip {póró tí yángá tí lo anɛ pɛpɛ : his lips are not thick} - yángá is the mouth

póró tí zɛmbɛ N : a sheath or scabbard for a knife, zɛmbɛ

poste** N : 1. [pɔ́ɔst, lapóste, lapóstä] : a post-office, the post-office department

2. [pɔ́ɔst, póste] : an administrative center {Bossangoa poste : the administrative center of Bossangoa}

pousser** [púsu, pusée] V : 1. to push, to propel, to incite, to urge strongly, to impel {yí só apousser í, sí í sára kɔa : this thing incited (or impelled) us to work} {lo pousser ngɔ́ na lé tí ngú : he propelled the boat over the water} - *forcer* means to compel - *bi* is used of propelling a boat

2. especially in injunctions : move over {mɔ pousser! : move over!}

pɔnɔ́ N : suffering, often such as results from the ill-will or malice of others, persecution - used in *hú pɔnɔ́*, to suffer - syn. *sána*, *yí tí vundú* - *finóo* suggests physical pain, *pási* the suffering of burdensome toil, and *mawa* can mean misery

pɔtɔpɔ́tɔ [pɔtɔpɔ́tɔ, potopóto, pɔpɔ́tɔ, pɔrɔpɔ́te] N : anything of a soft mushy consistency : mud, soft clay, mush, gruel {mɔ sára pɔtɔpɔ́tɔ kété, lo yǫ́, sí lo tɛ kpíngba kóbe : you make a little gruel, and he drinks it before eating solid food} {ála sára kótá pɔtɔpɔ́tɔ, amonter na ndúzú : they made a great (pile of) mud. it went up into the air} {mbi fáa kéké tí pɔtɔpɔ́tɔ : I cut the poles (upon which is put) the mud (i.e. to build a wall)} - *kóbe* is the staple dough of manioc or mil, *kása* is a sauce, *ndóo* is potter's clay

préfecture** [prefɛktüür] N : the name given since independence to the former *région*, one of the approximately ten administrative units into which the Central African Republic is divided - each is subdivided into two or more units called *sous-préfecture* - the head of a préfecture is a *préfet* - see *république* for the administrative organization of the country

préfet** [prefɛɛ] N : the career civil servant who is the appointed administrative head of a *préfecture* - before independence, the French official who filled this office was a chef de région or *commandant* - see *république* for the administrative organization of the country

président** [prezidą́ą, preizdą́ą] N : 1. the president of the Republic, often called président tí république - see république for the administrative organization of the country
2. the elected chief official of a collectivité, a sort of township chairman - usually called président tí collectivité, he replaced after independence the roughly hereditary canton 2

propre** [próp, própre, própro] Av : clean, properly {mɔ sukúla propre : wash it clean} {mbi hínga Sango bien propre : I know Sango really properly} {mɔ tɔ́ kóbe nzoní propre : cook food nicely and cleanly} -opp. saleté

pulú nzo (purú nzó ?) N : cold corn meal mush cut into slices and sold

pupu N : wind - the proper verb is ía {pupu aía : the wind blew}

pupu sése N : dust - other kinds of powder include : fúku, a flour, meal, or similar fine powder - mbúlú, or gunpowder - mbíó, a red powder used to adorn the body of participants in a certain possession dance - mbutu, or sand

purú N : 1. excrement - sára purú is to defecate - sára purú na mɛ́nɛ́ is to have dysentery
2. by extension : slag from smelting, or any waste of similar consistency {purú ní así gígí kɔ́ɛ́, na taá wɛ̨́ ní aɛkɛ : all the slag runs out, and the true iron remains}

- Q -

qualité** [kalitée] N : sort, kind - a sophisticated syn. for *mará*, the general classificatory term - used especially in speaking of merchandise

quand même** [kaméɛm] C : 1 even, even if {quand même mbi yú pɛpɛ tɛ́nɛ́ aɛkɛ pɛpɛ : even if I don't wear it there isn't any problem} - syn. *même*

2. neverthelèss {quand même mbi ngbá tí sára école : nevertheless I continued to go to school}

quartier** [kartyée] N : an administrative subdivision of a large city, e.g. Bangui - frequently based on ethnic divisions - each quartier has its chief, *makunzi* - see *république* for the administrative organization of the country

quinine** [kiníin] N : originally, quinine - by extension : any sort of dry pellet of medicine to be taken by mouth : pill, tablet, capsule - the other major classification of European medicine is *piqûre*, a hypodermic injection - *yoró* is a generic term for medicine

quitter** [kitée] V : to leave {mbi quitter na Rafai : I left Rafai} {lo quitter wále tí lo : he left his wife} - syn. *lóndó* 2, *zía* - *goe* is a much more general term

- R -

réclamer** [klamée, kalamée, karamée, kalɛmɛ́] V : to accuse {wále ní aréclamer kɔ́li tí lo : the woman accused her husband} {lo réclamer mbi na zo só séngé séngé : he accused me to this man absolutely for no reason} - pá éré is a syn. suggesting more specifically idle, malicious, and unfounded accusation and slander - sára makɔrɔ́ is to betray - zí na ngbanga means to acquit

région** [rezyǫ̂ǫ] N : before independence, the largest administrative unit within the country - replaced since independence by the préfecture - the administrative head of the région was a chef de région or commandant - see république for the administrative organization of the country

repasser V : see passer 3

république** [repüblíik, republíik, larepublíik] N : a republic - esp. the Central African Republic, properly called République Centrafricaine - the administrative organization of the country, before and after independence, with the terms corresponding horizontally, is as follows :

before independence		since independence	
unit:	chief officer:	unit:	chief officer:
Oubangui-Chari	gouverneur	RCA	président tí RCA
région	commandant	préfecture	préfet
district	commandant	sous-préfecture	sous-préfet
canton	canton	collectivité	président tí c.
ville	maire	ville	maire
kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́ (village)	makunzi	kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́	
quartier (ward)	makunzi	quartier	

the few larger cities have always had a separate European type municipal structure, and have been called ville

ri V : to be thoroughly crushed so that no grainy particles remain {káráko ní ari nzoní míngi : the peanuts were very smoothly crushed} - used especially of oleaginous material, kpi - nɛ 3, nɛka refer to the crushing process by rolling, ri refers to the resulting state

riga N : a throwing knife - usually an F-shaped iron blade about eighteen inches long in its largest dimension and used as a projectile in war and hunting - see zɛmbɛ for a list of weapons

- S -

sá V : to pour, to spill {ngú asá na sése : the water spilled on the ground} {zo asá mɛ́nɛ́ tí mbéní zo : someone spilled the blood of another person} {lo sá ngú na sɛmbɛ́ : he poured water into a dish} - yuru means to leak or seep, gara means to flow (as blood in the veins), sɔa means to flow (as a river), túku means to tip over, to dump out

są́ N : salt made by burning the leaves of certain plants and leaching the ashes - also called yíngó tí ngonda or yíngó tí basánze - in contrast to adorónu, or imported rock salt - yíngó is the generic term for salt

sac** [sáki] N : 1. a sack, a bag

2. much more frequently : a sum of one thousand francs {manoeuvre atɛ gí sac óse séngé : a laborer receives (lit eats) only two thousand francs} - see nginza, money, and páta, franc

sái [sáy] N : the yeast used to brew bíríbi, a kind of beer - mamá tí mápa is the kind of yeast used in bread

sakpá N : any sort of basket - the largest baskets are about eighteen inches high and three feet across, are made of nzanza and are used for carrying raw cotton to market - a smaller open-work basket lined with leaves is used for transporting manioc flour

saleté** [saltée, sartée, sardé, saleté, salité] An : 1. dirty {mbi ɛkɛ taá saleté : I was really dirty} {mɔ sukúla tɛ́rɛ́ ní pɛpɛ, angbá saleté : you didn't wash the sides of it, it remains dirty} - opp. propre

2. in talking of, e.g. a cotton garden : weeds

sambá N : a co-wife, i.e. the mutual relationship of the several wives of a polygynous husband {mamá amú tí lo, na ą́samba tí lo amú tí ála : mother took hers, and her co-wives took theirs} {na heure só wále adú só, ásambá aaider lo : at the time when a woman is giving birth, the co-wives help her} - wále is a wife, kɔ́li a husband samba N : a generic term for fermented, especially brewed beverages {samba asára lo : beer is affecting him, i.e. he is drunk} {í bóngbi tɛ́rɛ́ í yɔ́ samba lége ɔ́kɔ : we got together and drank beer} - samba includes bière imported beer, bíríbiri a grain beer, duma mead, lɔkpɔtɔ a beer made of corn, kanguya palm wine, vin imported wine, and by extension hárága and ngbágo distilled beverages

sambéla [sambéla, sambúla, sambúra] V : to pray, to worship {mbi goe na kéké tí sambéla mbéní pɛpɛ : I no longer go to a tree to pray} {í sambéla Nzapá lá kóé : we always worship (or pray to) God} {mɔ sambéla ngbangatí mbi : pray for me} -syn. dikɔ 3 - sepála and gonda mean to praise, but the first applies to God, and the second to creatures - zúku means to bow, to kneel (as in worship)

sáná N : suffering, usually caused by someone's ill-will or malice, persecution {lo yí mɔ pɛpɛ laá aɛkɛ sára mɔ sáná só : it's because he doesn't love you that he causes you so much suffering} - pɔnɔ́ and yí tí vundú are syn. - finóo suggests physical pain, pási the pain of burdensome toil, and mawa means misery

sandúku N : a wooden box or chest, a wooden home-made suitcase {sandúku tí nginza : a money box} {ála zía na yá tí sandúku tí ála : they put it into their chest} - boîte is smaller and usually not wooden, caisse is a crate

sangbí lége N : a cross-roads - syn. croisement

sa (ngú) V : to swim {lo hínga tí sa ngú : he knows how to swim} {lo sa jusqu'à na mbé ngú : he swam all the way over to the other side of the river}

sanze* N : a small musical instrument on which iron keys are plucked with the fingers and the sound is amplified by a hollow, oblong wooden body to which the keys are fastened - see píka biá

sánzó N : pus, or other thick milky discharge from the body - syn. ngú vurú

sárá N : the itch, scabies - an eruptive, contagious, and itchy skin disease, very prevalent among children sára [sára, sála, sár] V : 1. a virtually empty verb meaning basically to do or make - hence, depending on the object : to make, to create, to fabricate, to manufacture, to prepare, to constitute, to institute, to establish, to build, to erect, etc. {ála sára yí ní gbá : they (tried to) do the thing in vain} {ála sára da : they built a house} {fadé í sárɛ gouvernement : we will establish a government} {fadé āla sára tongana yę : what will you do?} {lo sára sioní na mbi : he acted very badly toward me, i.e. treated me badly} {gí Nzapá ɔ́kɔ alíngbi tí sára só : only God can do that} {wále só asára ta : this woman is making a pot} {mɔ sára pɔtɔpɔ́tɔ na lo : make him gruel} {í yí tí sára yáká : we want to make a garden} {ála sára wá : they made a fire} - lɛkɛ can be used in many of the same ways - see also the many entries in which sára is the first element

2. with na and a noun denoting a person : to serve, to work for {mbi sára na lo ngú otá : I served him (or worked for him) three years} - see also sára kɔa, sára bɔ́i

3. with a noun denoting a function or office : to serve as {lo sára pasteur tí í : he served as our pastor}

4. with a subject denoting a state, an emotion, an illness, or a circumstance and an object denoting a person : to affect {kobéla asára lo : disease affected him, i.e. he was sick} {mbito asára mbi : fear affected me, i.e. I was afraid} {dé asára mbi : cold affects me, i.e. I am cold} {nzala tí mɔ asára mbi : desire for you affects me, i.e. I miss you} {sambɛ asára lo : beer affects him, i.e. he is drunk} - see ngonzo ... sára - where the emotions are concerned, gbó expresses a stronger idea - see bɛ́ for the emotions, kobéla for the illnesses

5. with a noun denoting a period of time : to spend {mbi sára ngú otá ká : I spent three years there}

6. when the context, linguistic or situational, makes clear what the complement is, sára can substitute for any of the entries in which it is the head word { (kɔa ... mbi sára : ... I worked}

sara N : a forked pole or stick, esp. the kind that serves as an upright post supporting cross-beams in construction sára attention** [tąsyǫ̂ǫ] V : to be careful, to watch out, to pay attention {lo sára attention pɛpɛ : he wan't careful}

sára bɛ́ ɔ́kɔ V : to have fellowship, to agree with {ála sára bɛ́ ɔ́kɔ : they had fellowship} - sára sóngó, gá sóngo suggest a reconciliation after conflict

sára bíá V : to sing - syn. hé bíá

sára bon V : to incur debt, to buy on credit, to take out a loan {lo sára bon tí boîte otá : he bought three boxes on credit}

sára bɔ́i V : to act as a servant, to kowtow {mbi lingbi tí sára bɔ́i na mɔ pɛpɛ : I refuse to kowtow to you} - bɔ́i is a servant

sára búbá V : to act foolishly or irresponsibly {tongana mbi sára bubá na sése tí babá tí mbi, fadé áita tí mbi kóé aɛkɛ zonga mbi : if I act irresponsibly in the land of my father, all my brothers will curse me}

sára école V : to go to school {mbi sára école na père : I go to school at the Catholic mission}

sára goigói V : to be lazy {ála sára goigói fadesó mingi : people are very lazy nowadays} - see also sára mbáná, which suggests more wilfull or malicious laziness

sára ínɔ V : to urinate - a euphemistic syn. is goe (na) ngonda

sára isɔrɔ́ V : to converse, to chat - syn. causer - see also isɔrɔ́, sára tɛ́nɛ́

sára kái V : to paddle (a canoe), to row (a boat)

sára kirímba* V : to agree with a co-worker to give him all or a share of one's wages one month in return for all or a share of his wages the next month - by this reciprocal arrangement, the various members of a group of co-workers in turn have a fairly large amount of money at one time - see fúta, payer, nginza, tɛ nginza

sára kóbe V : to prepare food - syn. lɛkɛ kóbe - mɛ́ kóbe means specifically to prepare the staple dough sára kɔa, sára kusára V : to work

sára kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́ V : to establish permanent residence {lo sára kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́ na Bambari : he established permanent residence at Bambari} - see kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́, dutí 2, lángó 3

sára makɔrɔ́ V : to betray {lo sára makɔrɔ́ tí mbi sí mbunzú atomba mbi : he betrayed me so that the white man fired me} - pá éré means more specifically to accuse idly and maliciously, réclamer means to accuse in general

sára manière** [mayɛ́rɛ] V : to use ingenuity, guile, wiles, or tricks {kpíkara asára manière, lo lángó tongana lo kúí : the pangolin used guile, he played dead} {fadé mbi sára manière tí báa : I'll use ingenuity to see} - see manière, gí lége

sára mariage** [mariyázi] V : to marry - syn. marier

sára matánga V : to celebrate

sára mawa V : 1. to cause suffering or misery {kobéla só asára mawa míngi : this disease causes much misery} - see báa finóo, báa pási, sára sáná for related ideas

2. to pity, to have mercy {mɔ sára mawa na mbi : have pity on me}

sára mbadi V : to practise divination {lo sára mbadi ní : he practised divination about it} - syn. báa mbadi

sára mbáná V : to be wilfully or maliciously lazy or idle, to act irresponsibly, to malinger, to featherbed {mɛ́rɛngɛ́ ní asára mbáná na lo : the youth was deliberately idle for him} - stronger than sára goigói

sára mbɛ́tí V : to write {lo hínga tí sára mbɛ́tí : he knows how to write} -díkɔ mbɛ́tí is to read, píka mbɛ́tí is to type or print

sára na mabɔ́kɔ óse V : to do things half-heartedly, with a divided allegiance or attention {lo sára na mabɔ́kɔ óse pɛpɛ, mais na bɛ́ ɔ́kɔ : he did not do it half-heartedly, but with a will} - opp. bɛ́ ɔ́kɔ

sára ndɔ́kɔ́ V : of a plant : to bloom - ndɔ́kɔ́ is a flower sára ngangó V : to treat harshly, to do violence, to be violent, to violate, to use force on someone {fadé í sára ngangó na ázo só ayí tí sára sioní na í, í tomba ála : we will treat harshly those who wish to treat us wrongly, we will drive them out}

sára ngiá V : 1. to have good fellowship, to chat {í sára ngiá, í tɛ kóbe ɔ́kɔ : we chatted, we ate together} - *causer* and *sára isɔrɔ́* are more strictly restricted to the conversational aspect of the relationship 2. to play, to have fun {ála sára ngiá mingi na lá tí matánga : they had a lot of fun on the day of the festival}

sára ngonzo V : to be angry {ála sára ngonzo, ála commencer tí tiri : they were angry, they began to fight} - syn. *ngonzo* ... *sára* - *ngonzo* ... *gbó* is stronger

sára pɛkɔ́ ní V : to act in response, to follow up, to go on with {mamá asára pɛkɔ́ ní : mother responded to it} {í ɛkɛ sára na ála pɛkɔ́ tí tɛ́nɛ́ ní : we are going on with (ensuing) matters} - see *pɛkɔ́* (*ní*/*tí*)

sára pitą́ą V : to commit fornication or adultery

sára purú V : to defecate - a euphemistic syn. is *goe* (*na*) *ngonda*

sára purú na mɛ́nɛ́ V : to have dysentery

sára sáná V : to persecute, to cause suffering to another {lo sára sáná na mɔ : he caused you much suffering} - *hú* *pɔnɔ́* is the subjective experience of such persecution

sára sóngó V : to make peace, to be reconciled {ála sára sóngó : they were reconciled} - *gá* *sóngó* is a syn. - *sára* *bɛ́* *ɔ́kɔ* suggests harmony without preceding conflict - *lɛkɛ* *tɛ́nɛ́* means to compose a difference, to bring a dispute to an end

sára tɛ́nɛ́ V : to speak, to talk {mɔ sára tɛ́nɛ́ na mbi : speak to me} {kété mɛ́rɛngɛ́ asára tɛ́nɛ́ pɛpɛ : small children don't talk} {lo sára tɛ́nɛ́ kíríkiri : he's talking nonsense} - *tɛnɛ* means to say, to tell - *causer*, *sára* *isɔrɔ́*, *sára* *ngiá* mean to chat, to converse, to visit - *húnda* is to ask, *kírí* *tɛ́nɛ́* is to answer, *dé* *kíté* is to object, *dé* *kɔ́ngɔ́* or *toto* is to shout sára vɛnɛ, sára wátáká V : to lie - syn. tɛnɛ vɛnɛ

sauvage** [sováaz, sowási] An : pertaining to traditional ways, in a strongly pejorative sense : barbarous, old-fashioned, etc. {yíngɔ́ tí sauvage : home-made traditional salt} {babá tí mbi aɛkɛ sauvage pɛpɛ : my father wasn't a savage} - much stronger than basárze, which applies only to things - opp. civiliser and service

savon** [savɔ̨̂ɔ̨] N : soap - one can find imported soap, locally-made European type soap, and locally-made Muslim soap

sé V : to be bitter {fúku tí gɔzɔ asé : manioc flour is bitter} {quinine asé : quinine is bitter} - kpí means to be sour, nzɛ̨rɛ to be sweet

seko N : chimpanzee, a relatively rare animal - see yąma tí ngonda

semaine** [seméɛn, sɛméɛn, säméɛn] N : a week - dimanche 2 is more common

séndá tí gɛ́rɛ́ N : 1. the sole of the foot - see gɛ́rɛ́
2. a footprint - see also gɛ́rɛ́ tí yąma

senga N : a wire - used in píka senga, to telephone or telegraph

séngé [séngé, sɛ́ngɛ́] An : a general term denoting the absence of something which is specified by the linguistic and situational context - hence : naked, worthless, purposeless, senseless, insignificant, free, well, for nothing, etc. {séngé zo : an ordinary person, i.e. one without distinction} {lo réclamer mbi séngé séngé ; he accused me without reason} {só séngé : that is nothing} {só aɛkɛ kusára tí séngé pɛpɛ : that is not work without value} {yí tí séngé : a worthless thing} {mɔ má séngé : you heard without difficulty} {zo aɛkɛ hánda mɔ séngé : someone is simply tricking you} {tɛ́rɛ́ tí mbi aɛkɛ séngé : my body is naked,or my body is well (i.e. absence of clothes or disease, depending on context} {mbi ɛkɛ séngé : I'm well} {mbi tɛ gí ngunzá séngé : I ate greens without anything else} {zía lo séngé : leave him alone} {lo mú na mbi séngé : he gave it to me free, i.e. for nothing}

sentinelle** [sątinɛ́ɛl, sinzíri] N : a watchman

sepála V : to praise {ála sepála Nzapá : they praised God} - used only of

God, while gonda is used of others - sambéla and díkɔ mean to pray, to worship

service** [sεrviis, sεrεvísi, sεrawísi, sarawísi] N : 1. employment in a European-type job, especially away from home (tongana mbi wara service, sí mbi goe na Bangui : if I get a job, then I'll go to Bangui) (i gá na service, sí i hinga Sango : we got a job, and then learned Sango)
2. pertaining to civilization or to European ways (na service atεnε, mɔ vɔ sése tí mɔ, mais na kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́ tí mbi, í vɔ sése vɔ́ngó pεpε : according to civilized ways, you buy land, but in my village, we didn't buy land) (kóbe tí service : European or civilized food) - syn. civiliser - opp. basánze, and esp. sauvage

sése [sése, sísi, sésε] N : earth, world, land, soil, ground (mɔ kinda mbi na sése : you knocked me to the ground) (ázo kóé tí sése só : all the people of the world) (sése tí République Centrafricaine : the land of the Central African Republic) (sése tí áGbanu : the land of the Gbanu) (kɔa tí sése : the work of the soil) (yąma tí sése : land animals) - zía ... na sése means to set aside - bi ... na sése means to throw away, to discard, to abandon - used with na 3

sεmbέ [sεmbέ, sembé, sambέ] N : a dish - dú sεmbέ is a deep dish, kopo is also a relatively deep container - kolóngo is a wide flat container, a platter or basin - kangú is a gourd dipper, ngángá is a gourd bottle - ta is a pot or kettle - gbara búba is a frying pan

sέ tέrέ V : to recline (lo sέ tέrέ tí lo : he reclined) - lárgó refers primarily to sleeping

sí V 1 : 1. of time or place : to arrive, to reach (mamá alóndó na Bangui así na ndo só : mother left Bangui and arrived here) (mbi sí awe : I have arrived) (mbέtí aεkε sí na í hiɔ pεpε : letters don't reach us quickly) (heure tí école así : the time for school has arrived) (así na lá kúí : it came to sunset, i.e. sunset came) (así na heure tí nzala : a time of famine came) - see also gé 2 and gá 3 - goe sí under goe considers the action from the point of departure - opp.

lóndó, quitter, zía
2. to appear {gbikí así síngó na tɛ́rɛ́ tí mbi : sweat appeared on my body} - syn. sí gígí

sí V 2 : to fill, to be filled {ngú así ta : the water filled the pot} {bɛ́ tí mbi así na ngiá : my heart is full of joy}

sí C : a sequential connective (Grammar p. 93-99) : and so, so then, so that {mɔ túku na yá tí kopo, sí mɔ yɔ̂ nzoní : you pour it into a container, and then you drink it} {aɛkɛ nzoní mɔ gá mɔ píka lé tí mbi sí mbi hínga mɔ ɛkɛ mɛ́rɛngɛ́ : it's good for you to come and slap my face so that I'll know that you are just a child} {abáa pási míngi na yá tí ngú bale osió, sí agá kótá : it suffered much for forty years, and then became great}
2. optionally follows pre-clausal constructions {só vɛní (sí) aɛkɛ nzoní : this is what is good} {birí (sí) madame amú bɔngɔ́ na mbi : it was yesterday that Madam gave me the clothes}

sí gígí V : to emerge, to come into view, to appear, to come out {yąma ní aɛkɛ sí gígí na mbéní kété dú : the animal was coming out of a small hole} {tongana mbi sí gígí na gbɛ́ tí kéké awe ... : when I had emerged from under the trees ...} {ábákoyá así gígí míngi na yáká ní : the baboons came into view in the field in great numbers}

síliki N : a head kerchief, a head scarf - worn almost universally by women and girls, esp. when they are dressed up

sindi N : sesame - a widespread secondary crop, part of the group of oleaginous foods called kpí N - an ingredient of many sauces - see kása

síngó N : arrival {síngó tí mɔ na Bangui ... : upon your arrival in Bangui ...} - from sí V 1

sinzíri N : see sentinelle

sioní [sioní, siɔní, syoní, sóní, sɔ́ní] An : bad, evil, in a very general sense {zo tí sioní : an evil person} {mbɛ́tí tí sioní : a bad letter or book} {ála báa tongana sioní : they considered it bad} {tɛnɛtí sioní tí mɔ ... : because of your badness ...} {kobéla tí sioní : a bad sickness} {aɛkɛ sioní míngi : it is very bad} {ála sára sioní míngi na í : they did us much evil, they treated us badly} - *kíríkiri* means crooked, either physically or morally - opp. *nzoní*

siriri N : peace, concord, harmony {mbi sára siriri na lo : I achieved harmony with him} - syn. *sóngó* - see also *bɛ́ ɔ́kɔ* - opp. *berá*, *tiri*, *papa* N 1 which denote various kinds of conflict

sisi N : thorns, burrs that grow close to the ground - see *kíi*

só An : a deictic and "relative" adjunctive (*Grammar* p. 47-53) : this, that {apíka mɛ́rɛngɛ́ só : they hit this girl} {da só : this house} {wále só amú kɔ́li : this woman took a husband} {tɛ́mɛ́ só wɛ̧ aɛkɛ na yá ní : a stone in which there is iron, lit. this stone, there is iron in it} {na lá ní só mbi goe ... : on the day when I went ..., lit. on that day, I went ...} {só aɛkɛ kusára tí wále : that is the work of women} {só séngé : that's all right} {só mɔ tɛnɛ awe (só), fadé mbi sára : since you have said this, I will do it} - used in *lá só*, *ndo só*

so V : to save, to rescue {lo so mbi na mabɔ́kɔ tí bámará : he rescued me from the lion}

sóá N : a needle - *fú* V 1 is to sew

soigner** [swanyée, swąyę́ę, sǫyée] V : to care for (a sick person), to treat medically {docteur asoigner mbi gbá : the doctor treated me in vain} {ála soigner tɛ́rɛ́ tí ázo : they treat the bodies of people} - *ça va*, and other verbs listed under it, mean to recover

sóngó N : peace, harmony {ámbéní amú kusára tí gbíá na berá, ámbéní amú na sóngó : some seized the power of a king by war, others took it peacefully} - syn. *siriri* - *bɛ́ ɔ́kɔ* means concord, unity of feeling, fellowship - opp. *berá*, *tiri*, *papa* N 1 which denote conflict - see also *gá sóngó*, *sára sóngó*

sónzó N : the African hunting dog (*Lycaon picta*) - a wild dog

sous-préfecture** [suprɛfɛktǘr] N : an administrative unit intermediate between the *préfecture* and the *collectivité* - before independence it was called district - the chief officer is a sous-préfet - see république for the administrative organization of the country

sous-préfet** [suprefɛɛ] N : the appointed career civil service chief officer of a sous-préfecture - see république for the administrative organization of the country

sɔ [sɔ, sɔ̨] V : to hurt, to ache, to pain, to harm {kobéla ní asɔ ahɔ̨́ ṇdó ní : this disease hurts beyond measure} {kɔa tí mbunzú asɔ zo míngi : work for white people hurts people greatly} {li tí mbi asɔ mbi : my head hurts me} - see sɔ bɛ́, bɛ́ ... sɔ

sɔ̨́ N : a trap, a cord snare {tongana mɔ goe na yáká tí mbéní zo, na yąma aɛkɛ na sɔ̨́ tí lo, mɔ mú pɛpɛ : if you go to the field of another person, and there is an animal in his trap, do not take it} - syn. ngindí, kámba 3

sɔa V 1 : to comb {mbi sɔa li tí mbi : I combed my head} - see sɔa li

sɔa V 2 : to flow {ngú ní asɔa gí na place ɔ́kɔ : the water flowed in only one place} - gara is used of blood - yuru means to leak or seep, sá means to pour or spill liquid

sɔa li N : a comb

sɔ bɛ́ V : to grieve {tɛ́nɛ́ só asɔ bɛ́ tí mbi míngi : this matter grieves me greatly}

sɔ́kɔ N : rust, corrosion {sɔ́kɔ atɛ wɛ̨́ ní : the rust has eaten the iron}

sɔ́sɔ́ V : to break wind

sɔsɔ V : to thresh, to pound grain and similar foods so as to loosen the husks before winnowing - this is done in a mortar, kpu - to winnow is diki or pɛ́ 2 - pɛtɛ is to mash or pound soft food, e.g. manioc - nɛ, nɛka mean to crush by rolling

sɔsɔngɔ N : a reed (Pennisetum purpureum Schum. and Thon. ?) which is used in making the framework of a roof - these reeds are tied horizontally at close intervals across the rafters, and the grass is then tied to the reeds - see péré for a list of grasses - see li tí da su I : an injunction or warning to a child to desist from something he is about to do, e.g. make noise, take something, or eat before being given permission - hence : hush, stop {su mérɛngɛ́ mɔ dutí : hush, child, sit down}

su V : to shine - used only of the sun {mɔ kú jusqu'à lá asu na tɛ́rɛ́ ní : wait until the sun shines beside it} - zá is used of other shiny or shining things

súku V : 1. to swell {yá tí mbi asúku : my stomach swelled}
2. followed by na and a noun denoting a person : to scold, to reprimand angrily {mɔ ɛkɛ súku na lo : you scold him} - syn. zíngo 2 is less strong

sukúla [sukùla, sukúra] V : 1. to wash {lo sukúla tɛ́rɛ́ tí lo : he washed his body} {lo sukúla bɔngɔ́ : he washed clothes} - syn. sukúla ngú
2. more generally : to cleanse, to sweep, to weed (a garden) - balayer is a more common syn.

sukúla ngú V : to bathe {tongana mɔ lóndó na kɔa, mɔ gá mɔ sukúla ngú, mɔ yú bɔngɔ́ tí mɔ : when you've left the job, you come and bathe and put on your clothes}

sukúla photo V : to develop and print photographs - see photo, tirer photo

súmá N : a dream, a vision - dreams are considered to be communications from the spirits of persons seen, especially those of dead relatives (tɔ́rɔ́) - a great deal of weight is attached to dreams, in both a literal and symbolic interpretation - syn. mosúmá, báa li

sumári [sumári, sumbári] N : a male secret society originating among the Banda but prevalent among a number of other tribes - members are initiated, and are given special names - they participate in a number of lodge activities, including a secret language and a special dance {lo goe sumári awe : he's gone sumári, i.e. has become a member, or has gone to participate in the activities} {ála ɛkɛ dɔ́ sumári : they are dancing the sumári} - see dɔ́dɔ́ - lengé is a Yakoma female society

sungba V : to burst {coton asungba : the cotton bolls burst} {békpá asungba : the thunder bursts}- see the ideophone kpu?, which expresses an explosive sound

súru V : to split {gbánda ní aɛkɛ súru : the net was splitting} {asúru na mbi fɔndɔ ɔ́kɔ : he split a plantain for me} {lo yí tí súru na kéké : he wants to split a log with it} {ála súru tɛ́rɛ́ tí ála, ála fáa tɛ́rɛ́ tí ála : they cut their bodies} {tongana mɔ súru tɛ́rɛ́ tí mɔ pɛpɛ, kɔ́li alíngbi tí kamáta mɔ tongana wále pɛpɛ : if you don't cut your body, i.e. so as to make ornamental scars, men won't marry you} - fáa denotes a crosswise cut, when it is distinguished from súru, which is not always the case

súru (ndó tí) mabɔ́kɔ V : to vaccinate - see ndó tí mabɔ́kɔ

susu N : a fish - eaten fresh or dried as a secondary element in the diet {finí susu : fresh fish} {kúrú tí susu : dried fish} - see gí susu and éré ngú for information on fishing - capitaine is a Nile perch, gugúrú refers to small fish

- T -

ta [ta] N : a pot, a kettle {mbi hinga lége tí sára ta pɛpɛ : I don't know how to make a pot} {lo kpɔrɔ na yá tí ta : it boils in the pot} - traditional pots were made of a special clay (ndóo) by women who specialized in pottery - used primarily for cooking and carrying water - a pot was built up of successive windings of long thin strips of clay rolled out between the hands - after firing, it was glossy black - increasingly, in the present situation, imported kettles of enamel ware, aluminum, or other metals, are replacing traditional pots for cooking, and five-gallon oil cans are used for carrying water - ta tí basánze is a traditional pot, ta tí vɔrɔ́ɔ is a pot kept for guests, and ta wɛ́ is a metal kettle

taá Au : true, real, genuine, truly, really, genuinely {ála hínga taá éré tí lo pɛpɛ : they didn't know his true name} {taá yángá tí mbi aɛkɛ Zande : my real language is Zande} {taá kɔa tí ndao : the real work of a blacksmith} {taá mamá tí mbi : my real mother} {mbi sára taá na mabɔ́kɔ : I really did it with my hands, or I did it with my own hands} {mbi ɛkɛ taá saleté : I was really dirty} - (Grammar p. 64) - used in taá tɛ́nɛ́

taá tɛ́nɛ́ N : truth, true speech or saying {só taá tɛ́nɛ́, wala vɛnɛ ? : is that the truth, or a lie?} {taá tɛ́nɛ́ tí mɔ ? : is your speech the truth?} {taá tɛ́nɛ́ : it's the truth} - opp. vɛnɛ, wátáká

taba N : a sheep - African sheep are tall, thin, and straight-haired rather than woolly - they are not nearly as common as ngása, goats - called by Protestants ngása Ngbaka (i.e. Ngbaka goats)

tágba N : a kob, a medium-sized antelope of the genus Adenota - see yama tí ngonda

tailleur** [tayɛ́ɛr] N : a tailor - every village has one or more of these men who, with a hand-cranked portable sewing machine, make the dresses, blouses, shirts, trousers, shorts, and loincloths needed by the inhabitants - the customer usually provides the cloth - the tailor works from another piece of clothing as a model rather than from a paper pattern - this is one of the most common European-type specializations and an occupation of some prestige

tambéla [tambéla, tambûla, tambíla] V : 1. to walk, to travel {mɔ tambéla ngbii, mɔ sí na yáká : you walk for a while, and then arrive at the field} {mbi tambéla na li ní ; I walked at the head} - fɔnɔ means to walk about, kpé means to run, goe means to go, gá means to come
2. of an impersonal entity, e.g. a machine or organization : to run, to work, to go {gí kɔa na nginza sí atambéla : only work for money goes} {vélo atambéla pɛpɛ : the bicycle does not work}

tambéla N : walking about, running about, going about {tambéla só Kamara aɛkɛ sára ... : the walking about that Kamara is doing ...}

tambéla remorque** [rɛmɔ́rke] V : to drag a song, to sing heavily and slowly - remorque means trailer, and trailer trucks travel slowly and ponderously

tanga [tanga, taŋa] N : the rest, the remainder, what is left over - used usually with ní or a complement introduced by tí {mú tanga ní só : take the rest of it} {ála kú tanga tí tɛ́nɛ́ kɔ́ɔ́ : wait for the rest of the matter} - ndámbu suggests a remaining piece of some solid whole

tangé N : a bed - this can refer either to an African bed made of bamboo (bambou 2) or to a European type bed - gbogbó is properly a sleeping mat, which is used either on a bed or on the floor, but it is also used to refer to a bed

tará N : 1. a grandmother on either side - syn. áta 1 - see famille for the kinship system
2. ancestors in the female line {mamá amú mbi na kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́ tí átará tí mbi : my mother took me to the village of my female ancestors}
3. used as a mark of respect in addressing an older woman {tará, yę asɔ mɔ ? : grandmother, what is hurting you?}

tara V : to taste, to sample, to try, to attempt {mɔ tara ma : taste it, why don't you!} {lo tara tí hínga lége tí tó ngú : she tried to learn how to dip up water} - lógo is a taste, a sample - see also gí lége

tatara N : a mirror, a sheet or pane of glass

tatara ndo V : to grope, to feel about (as a blind person)

ta tí basánze N : a traditional pot - see ta for details

ta tí vɔrɔ́ɔ N : a pot reserved for guests - see ta

ta wɛ́ [ta wɛ́, tawɛ́, tawá] N : a metal imported kettle - usually enameled or aluminum, though a few are steel or cast iron - see ta

té [té, tí] V : to meet, to encounter {mbi gá mbi té lo : I came and met him} - báa 6, báa lé tí, and báa tɛ́rɛ́ mean to meet socially

tende N : cotton - coton is the more common syn.

tɛ [tɛ, te] V : 1. to bite, especially with the incisors - used also of a snake or a dog biting, as well as of insects stinging - nɛ 4 means to chew with the molars - see also tɛ pémbɛ́

2. to eat {mbi tɛ alíngbi na mbi pɛpɛ : I ate, but it wasn't enough for me} - see tɛ kóbe - yɔ́ means to suck, to drink - mɛnɛ means to swallow, to gulp - see also tɛ nginza

3. to inflict a wound or pain, e.g. with a spear {likongó tí ála alíngbi tí tɛ zo mbéní pɛpɛ : their spears can no longer wound people} - kpɔ is more usual with the meaning of to stab - see also góá ... tɛ, tɛ bɛ́, tɛ ménɛ́

tɛ bɛ́ V : said of a witch : to eat someone's liver, that is to attack his vitals - this causes sickness and death {zo tí lukundú atɛ bɛ́ tí lo sí lángó osió ní lo kúí : the witch ate his liver so the fourth day he died} - syn. tɛ ménɛ́ - see lukundú, bɛ́

tɛ kóbe V : to eat, especially to eat a regular meal consisting of the staple dough (kóbe) and an accompanying sauce (kása) - the statement that one has not eaten, using this expression, often means simply that the speaker has not eaten a full meal, but that does not preclude his having eaten one or more snacks tɛ méné V : said of a witch - to eat the blood {lukundû ní así gígí na bí, ála goe tí tɛ méné tí zo ; witches come out at night, and go eat people's blood} - this, as with syn. tɛ bɛ́, causes sickness and death

tɛ nginza V : to receive money, especially a payment due, as wages or bride-price - a synonymous idea can be substituted for nginza {mbi tɛ nginza tí lo : I received the bride-price (which was paid) for her} {manoeuvre atɛ gí sac óse ; a laborer gets just two thousand francs} - see nginza for a list of terms referring to financial and economic concepts

tɛ pémbɛ́ V : to gnash the teeth {lo tɛ pémbɛ́ tí lo ; he gnashed his teeth}

tɛ́mɛ́ [tɛ́mɛ́, tɛ́nɛ́, témé, téné] N : a stone, a rock, a pebble

tɛ́nɛ́ [tɛ́nɛ́, téné, tén] N : a word, a saying, an utterance, a speech, a matter, an affair, an issue, a problem, news, a report {mɔ tenɛ ndurú tɛ́nɛ́ : say a short speech, i.e. speak briefly} {tɛ́nɛ́ tí mbį awe : my words are finished, i.e. I have finished speaking} {lo goe ká tí gí tɛ́nɛ́ ní : he went there to investigate the matter} {ndá tí tɛ́nɛ́ ní : the meaning of the matter} {acommencer tí gá tɛ́nɛ́ : it began to become a problem, i.e. an issue or subject of dispute} {aɛkɛ tɛ́nɛ́ tí wále ... : it is the business of women ...} {tɛ́nɛ́ ní así na ndo só ; the news reached here} {tɛ́nɛ́ tí ngonzo ; an angry issue, or a matter arousing anger} {ngangó tɛ́nɛ́ : harsh or violent words} {mbi húnda mbéní tɛ́nɛ́ : I ask a certain matter (or question)} - see gí tɛ́nɛ́, fa tɛ́nɛ́, lɛkɛ tɛ́nɛ́, sára tɛ́nɛ́, taá tɛ́nɛ́, tɛ́nɛ́ ... ɛkɛ pɛpɛ, tɛ́nɛ́ nzoní, tɛ́nɛ́ tí Nzapá - ngbanga is related, but lacks the emphasis on speech found in tɛ́nɛ́

tenɛ [tɛnɛ, tene, tɛn, ten, tɛ] V : to say, to tell {í ɛkɛ tenɛ tɛ́nɛ́ só na ála : we're telling you this matter} {mɔ tenɛ só bíaní ? : did you really say that?} {ála tenɛ yę ? ; what did they say?} {kpíkara atenɛ tongasó : the pangolin said that, lit. spoke like that} {lo tenɛ, zía lo séngé : he said, leave him alone} {í ɛkɛ tenɛ na í tɛ́nɛ́ tí Nzapá : we're telling you the word of God} - sára tɛ́nɛ́ is the most general expression meaning to speak - sára ísɔrɔ́, causer, and sára ngiá suggest social intercourse, chatting, visiting, etc. - *húnda* is to ask, *toto* and *dé kɔ́ngɔ́* mean to cry out or shout, *dé kíté* means to object, *dé éré* means to name

tέnέ ... εkε pεpε V : to be all right {quand-même mbi yú pεpε, tέnέ aεkε pεpε : even if I don't wear it, it will be all right} - this is used to dispel the impression that offence has been given, as in response to an apology

tέnέ nzoní N : a Protestant neologism : the gospel

tenεtí [tenεtí, tentí, tεtí, tenetí, tentí, tetí] C : a connective of cause, reason, purpose (*Grammar* p. 91-93) : because, because of, on account of, in order to, for {mɔ tenε ngá ndurú tέnέ, tenεtí ázo míngi aεkε kú mbi : make your talk short, because many people are waiting for me} {lo toto tenεtí mɔ lá kɔ́é : he cries for you all the time} {í vɔ na nginza, tenεtí payer impôt : we sell it for money, in order to pay taxes} - syn. *ngbangatí* - see also *tenεtí yę*

tέnέ tí Nzapá N : Protestant expression : the word of God - see *mbétí tí Nzapá*

tenεtí yę Av : for what reason, why {tẹnεtí yę mbi wara mbétí pεpε ? : why did I not receive a letter?} - can also be used post-verbally - syn. *ngbangatí yę*

tenε venε V : to tell a lie - syn. *sára venε*, *sára wátáká*

térέ [térέ, télέ, téré] N : 1. a live body {mɔ sára kɔa na ngangó tí térέ tí mɔ : work with the strength of your body} {sukúla térέ tí mɔ : wash your body, i.e. bathe} {térέ tí lo asɔ lo : his body hurts} {térέ tí susu : the body of a fish} - this is in contrast with *kɔ́á* 2.2 meaning a human corpse, and *kúí* N 2 meaning the dead body of an animal - it is also in contrast with *bέ* which refers in general to the inward parts and to the spiritual or metaphysical being - see *hú térέ* - the major parts of the body are : *li* the head, *lé* the face, *gó* the neck, *kate* the chest, *pεkɔ́* the back, *mabɔ́kɔ* the arm and hand, *yá* the abdomen, *ngbundá* the hips and buttocks, *gέrέ* the leg and foot - *ndó gɔ́* is the shoulder, coude is the elbow, ngobo is the fist, li tí mabɔ́kɔ is the lateral aspect of the shoulder, yá tí mabɔ́kɔ is the palm of the hand, kété mabɔ́kɔ is a finger - on the head and face, kɔ́á li is the hair, ndó lé is the forehead and eyebrow, ngeki lé is an eyebrow, lé is the eye, mέ is the ear, hɔ́ is the nose, dú hɔ́ is a nostril, yángá is the mouth, mέngá or langue is the tongue, pέmbέ are the teeth, póró tí yángá is a lip, mbángbá is the cheek, ngbangba is the lower jaw and chin, kɔ́á tí yángá is the moustache, kɔ́á tí ngbangba is the beard - mε is a breast, kéngé is the penis, korogbó is the scrotum, dondo is the vagina - internally, ndóndó li is the brain, yá is the stomach, fúfú is a lung, bέ is the liver and the seat of the personality, bozó ngonzo is the gall bladder, bozó ínɔ is the bladder - mέnέ is the blood, póró is the skin, bió is the bone, mi is the flesh

2. since tέrέ refers to the external aspect of a body : lateral aspect, side,flank, outside (mɔ sukúla tέrέ ni pεpε : you didn't wash its sides)

3. used in a reflexive or reciprocal sense : each other, one another, oneself (ála fáa tέrέ : they cut (or killed) each other) (ála kpɔ tέrέ tí ála : they stabbed themselves (or each other)) - see bóngbi tέrέ, báa tέrέ, hínga tέrέ, yí tέrέ, fa tέrέ

4. with na 3 : beside, in a close relationship, etc. (mbi dutí na tέrέ tí babá tí mbi : I remained close beside my father) (adu kámba na tέrέ tí mbo : he fastened a cord to the dog) - the second example may also be interpreted as an example of sense 1 - mbáge suggests a much less intimate or essential relationship : in the direction of, towards

terε N : 1. a spider - see voma for a list of insects and arachnids

2. the spider appears as a character in many tales and fables, along with kpíkara, the pangolin - tεrε is a wily character who uses much cunning, but who is sometimes outwitted in unexpected ways, to the delight of audiences

3. a fable, esp. one in which tεrε is a main character - histoire is a more general term for narrative forms of speech, and isɔrɔ́ can have the same meaning, though it is a general term for oral language

tέrέ ... dɔ́ V : to tremble, to shake (tέrέ tí mɔ adɔ́ : you trembled)

tɛ́rɛ́ ... mú wá V : to get or have a fever {tɛ́rɛ́ tí lo amú wá : he has a fever}

tɛ́rɛ́ tí da N : a wall of a building - in traditional building, usually made of mud (pɔtɔpɔ́tɔ) plastered onto a framework of vertical poles (kéké, sara) to which are tied at close intervals thin flexible vines - alternatively, walls are made of sun-dried bricks (moule) - see da

tí V : to fall {ála tí na gɛ́rɛ́ tí lo ; they fell at his feet} {sése tí í atí : our land fell} {lo tí na kutukutu : he fell with an automobile, i.e. had an accident} {ngû tí Gbutu atí na ngangó ; the water at Gbutu falls with violence} {ála tí na sése ; they fell to the ground} {lo tí na hánda : he fell into temptation} - see tí na ndó

tí C : a subordinating connective (Grammar p. 99-116) expressing in general "genitive" relationships : possession, attribution, destination, etc.

1. joining a noun or adjunctive complement to a noun head {da tí mbi : my house} {gɔ́ tí mbo : the neck of the dog} {kótará tí í : our ancestor} {nzɛ tí novembre : the month of November} {mɛ́rɛngɛ́ tí wále só : the child of this woman, or, this female child} {mabɔ́kɔ tí kɔ́li : the hand of a man, or, the right hand} {zo tí sioní : a bad man} {zo tí Bangui : a person of Bangui} {kóbe tí lá kúi ; the evening food} {tɛ́nɛ́ tí politique : a matter about politics} {lá tí kótá bóngbi : the day of the big meeting}

2. governing a noun which is subject or complement of a verb - in this case, the phrase acts exactly as if there were a noun head {lo vɔ tí vingt francs : he bought twenty francs'(worth)} {tí ákɔ́li asɔ ála : men's hurts them}

3. joining a verb complement to a noun head {zo tí gí (ngó) susu : a man who hunts fish} {zo tí sára wɛ̧ ; a man who works iron} {lo hínga lége tí tó ngú : she knows the way to draw water}

4. joining a verb complement to a verb head {ála gá tí tɛ kóbe : they came to eat} {zo ahánda mɔséngé tí fúti nginza tí mɔ : people tempt you for nothing to waste your money} - tɛnɛtí and ngbangatí in this kind of construction are restricted to expressions of purpose or cause

ti [ti, te] N : hand {abáa yąma na ti tí ázo só : he saw meat in the hands of these people} {gouvernement aɛkɛ na ti tí lo : the government is in his hands} - syn. mabɔ́kɔ 1 - ti is used frequently in a metaphorical sense to mean power or authority, as in the second example above

tíkɔ V : to cough - a cough is often used to signal one's presence politely to someone who is not aware of it

tí na ndó V : to fall upon, to attack {vundú atí na ndó mbi : sorrow has fallen upon me} {áturúgu atí na ndó tí kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́ : the soldiers attacked the village} - see related ideas in goe berá na li tí, píka berá

tíngbi V : to join, to unite, to fasten together {mbi gá, mbi tíngbi na lo : I came and joined him} {lo tíngbi yángá ní : he fastened their edges together} - bóngbi means to bring together distinct parts, while tíngbi suggests a kind of fusion - kánga V means to fasten, and du V 1 means to tie

tínga wá V : to light or kindle a fire {mɔ bɔ́i, mɔ sí gígí na ndá péréré, mɔ tínga wá kóé : you the servant, you get out in the morning and light all the fires} - see also zɔ́ and gbí which mean to burn, and míngɔ which means to extinguish

tínga wá N : a match {mɔ vɔ tínga wá, mɔ lɛkɛ wá : you buy matches and fix the fire} - French allumette is more common

tipói N : a sort of carrying hammock or chair in which important people used to be carried on the shoulders of four men

tirer photo** [tiré fotóo] V : to take a photograph - see photo, sukúla photo

tiri V : to fight, to wrestle, to struggle, to contend {ála commencer tí tiri, ála fáa tɛ́rɛ́ : they began to fight, they cut each other} {ála goe tí tiri berá : they went to fight a war} {mɔ gá í tiri : come on, let's fight} - see also píka berá, goe berá na li tí, tí na ndó - if the struggle is verbal rather than physical, papa is used

tiri N : a fight, an act of fighting {alóndó na tiri tí gá : they left the fighting to come} {ála voter na tiri pɛpɛ : don't vote with fighting} títɛnɛ [títɛnɛ, títene, títɛn, títne] C : a subordinating connective expressing only a loose sequential connection between clauses (Grammar p. 116-119) - it can join clauses which otherwise would be hypotactically united, or it can in certain circumstances replace tí or sí - in all three cases, the resulting sentence structure is looser {mbi de títɛnɛ mbi gá wále pɛpɛ = mbi de mbi gá wále pɛpɛ : I am still not a woman} {lo goe títɛnɛ lo báa kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́ = lo goe sí lo báa kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́ : he went and saw the village} {lo goe títɛnɛ lo báa bɔ́tɔ́rɔ́ = lo goe tí báa kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́ : he went to see the village}

tó V : to draw (water), to dip up, to carry in a container {mbi goe tí tó ngú : I went to draw water} {mbi tó sése na lége : I carried dirt to the road (i.e. in a basket)} {lo tó yíngɔ́ na wále : she carried salt to the woman} - yɔ́ V 2 means to carry on the back, shoulder, or head - gbó means to carry in the hand

to V : to send, to dispatch {mbi to mbɛ́tí na mɔ : I sent you a letter} {mbi to na ála mbɛ́tí : I sent them a letter} {lo to ázo tí gí mɛ́rɛngɛ́ : he sent people to hunt for the child} {lo to nginza na mbi : he sent me money} - syn. toka

toka V : to send {ála ɛkɛ sára mbɛ́tí, ála toka na í : they wrote a letter and sent it to us} {lo toka mbi tí tɛnɛ na mɔ : he sent me to tell you} - syn. to

to kɔa V : to send word on ahead, to call to get attention {lo to kɔa na mbéní kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́, sí ála bóngbi : he sent word on ahead to a certain village, and they gathered}

tôle** [tóol] N : sheet or corrugated metal, e.g. galvanized iron or aluminum, esp. as used for roofing

tomate** [tomáte] N : a tomato - used fairly extensively as an ingredient in sauces - see kása

tomba [tomba, tumba] V : 1. to pursue or chase something that is fleeing, so as to overtake it {atomba woga, amú lo : he pursued the antelope and caught it} - can be followed by the expression pɛkɔ́ tí without

substantial change in meaning {áturúgu atomba pεkɔ́ tí ála na ngonda afáa ála míngi : the soldiers pursued after them in the bush and killed many of them}
2. attenuated : to follow in order to catch up {lo tomba pεkɔ́ tí lo, awara lo : he followed him and found him} - see gá na pεkɔ́, goe na pεkɔ́
3. to chase or drive away {lo tomba ábákoyá gbá : he chased away the baboons in vain} - see tomba wále
4. to discharge from work, to fire {lo tomba zo na kusára : he fired a man from his job}

tomba wále V : to divorce one's wife, because of the fact that the home is the husband's - if the wife takes the initiative, the expression is kpé kɔ́li - syn. kę wále, zía wále

tongana [tongana, tɔngana, toŋana, tɔŋana, tangana, tonga, tɔŋa, tonε, tǫna, tąna, tǫą, tąą, tąn, tą] C : a conditional, temporal, and comparative connective (Grammar p. 119-124) : when, if, like, as {tongana mbi tε ngunzá, mbi tε mbéní yí da : when I eat greens, I eat other things with them} {fadé mbi báa tongana mɔ sí na Bangui : I'll see when you get to Bangui} {mɔ gá tongana moniteur : you will become like an instructor} {lo sára tongana ála : he did things in just the same way as a child} - syn. ádu ní - see also tongana yę

tongana yę Av : how {kusára tí mbi tongana yę : how is my work?} {lo sára tongana yę : how is he doing?} - can be used in an emphatic or exclamatory sense {mǫ língbi tí hínga tongana yę!: how in the world can you know!} - this expresses a measure of doubt, like lá wa

tongasó [tongasó, tɔngasó, toŋasó, tɔŋasó, tǫasó, tǫsó] Av : an adjunctive of manner (Grammar p. 57-58) : thus, so, like this, in this manner {mará tí zo tongasó : a kind of people like this} {lo sára tongasó : he did it like this} {tongasó, lo goe : thus, he went away} {tongasó, lo hínga pεpε : so he did not know} - used both post-verbally and pre-clausally - see lége 2

toro V : to dance a certain Yakoma dance at the time of which the upper incisors of girls are chiselled out - see dɔ́dɔ́, lengé tó samba V : to brew beer - see samba

toto V : to cry, to made noise, to cry out, to sob {kɔ́ndɔ atoto : the hen cries, i.e. cackles} {lo toto na ngú lé : he wept with tears} {lo toto alíngbi pɛpɛ : he cried a great deal} {bɔngɔ́ tí mɔ atoto míngi : your dress is making a lot of noise} {lo goe na pɛkɔ́ tí mɔ tí toto na pɛkɔ́ tí mɔ : he followed you to cry after you} {ála toto mɔ ; they are lamenting you, i.e. because you're not here} {í toto yá tí í : we complain of our stomachs} - dé kɔ́ngɔ́ is to shout, érɛ́ ndo is to call out, bima is to complain or moan - see also toto kɔ̂á

toto N : a cry, a shout, a noise, weeping {mbi má toto na gígí ; I hear crying outside, I hear a noise outside} {toto agá na lé tí lo : tears came to his eyes} {zía toto : leave off crying} - ngú lé is tears, kɔ́ngɔ́ is a shout, wúrúwúrú is a tumult, a noise of disorder, a clamor

toto kɔ̂á V : to mourn for a death {ála toto kɔ̂á ; they mourned a death}

toucher** [tusée] to touch {zo alíngbi tí toucher lo pɛpɛ ; no one could touch him} - syn. ndú

tourner** [turnée] V : 1, to turn - used in li ... tourner

2. to stir, to mix by stirring {mɔ túku ngunzá na yá tí ngú, mɔ tourner : you pour the greens into the water, and you stir} - mélanger is a syn. - fúru means to mix with the hands so as to make a homogeneous semi-liquid mass - mɛ́ kóbe means to prepare the staple dough by stirring flour into hot water

tout** [túu] An : all, altogether - used to reinforce the syn. kóé {zo kóé tout : absolutely everyone} {yáká tí mbi kóé akánga tout : my field is all choked up (with weeds)}

tɔ́ V : to cook, especially by boiling - used most often with the object kóbe {lá kóé mbi tɔ́ gí ngunzá : always I cook only greens} {ála goe tí tɔ́ kóbe : they went to cook food} {atɔ́ nzoní ; she cooked it well} - mɛ́ kóbe means to prepare the staple dough, lɛkɛ kóbe and sára kóbe are very general terms meaning to prepare food - yɔ́rɔ 2 means to fry - kpɔrɔ is used of water boiling tọ V : to bud - syn. mbuma

tɔngɔ́rɔ N : a star (ámbéní tɔngɔ́rɔ otá só agoe tongasó, ála tɛnɛ só aɛkɛ póró tí zɛmbɛ tí lo : three stars which go like that, they say that these are the scabbard of his knife)

tɔ́rɔ́ N : the spirit of a dead person, esp. an ancestor, considered to maintain an interest in and authority over the clan - they are thought to live in the wilderness in the territory of the clan, where they must be propitiated with offerings of various sorts - traveling far from the clan territory removes one from their influence - they communicate with the living in dreams, and signal displeasure by bringing calamities, such as sickness or sterility - yingó is the spirit of a living person - lukundú is a witch spirit - see bɛ́ as the seat of the personality

travaux** [travóo, tarawóo] N : the public-works department, which has the special responsibility of building and maintaining roads (giriri mbi sára kɔa na mbunzú tí travaux : I used to work for a white man in the public works department)

trop** [tróo] Av : very much, very well (ála hínga Sango trop : they know Sango very well) - syn. míngi - trop is rather affected, and is used esp. by young people

túku V : to tip over, to dump, to pour, to spill (ngɔ́ ní ayí tí túku : the boat was about to tip over) (mbi túku mbéní samba na lo : I poured him some beer) (mɔ túku kóbe na sɛmbɛ́ : you dump the dough into a dish) (mɔ túku ngú na yá tí filtre : you pour water into a filter) (ngú atúku na sése : the water spilled in the ground) - sá means to pour a liquid

tungu N : lead, solder - syn. mbɔsɔ

turúgu N : a soldier (í sára yí tongana turúgu : we are doing things like soldiers, i.e. with discipline) - see also yɔngɔrɔ ngombe

turúngu N : the navel, the umbilical cord (i.e. the part which remains attached to the child) (zo agirísa zo tí fáa turúngu tí lo, mais lo girísa zo tí carrer pέmbε tí lo pεpε ; a person forgets who cut off his umbilical cord, but he does not forget the person who chipped his teeth (i.e. because the latter operation is done when one is of age to remember)

- U -

ukú [ukú, okú] An : five - see ɔ́kɔ for the number system

úlu [úlu, úru] V : to blow {lo úlu dede tí yąma : he blew on the horn of an animal, i.e. to make music} {lo úlu hɔ̧́ tí lo : he blew his nose} {na midi, ála úlu yí ní : at noon, they blow the thing, i.e. the steam whistle} - hú means to breathe - ia is used only of the wind - píka bíá is used of all but wind instruments, e.g, the drum, the xylophone, or the guitar

úr̃ Av : an ideophone descriptive of flowing {ménɛ́ ayuru na hɔ̧́ tí lo úr̃ : blood flowed from his nose, úr̃}

uru [uru, ulu] V : 1. to jump, to fly {mbi uru na ndó tí dú : I jumped over the hole} {dɔla auru na ndúzú : the moth flies in the air} 2. of animals : to mate {kɔ́li tí yąma auru na ndó wále ní : the male animal mated with the female} - syn. monter 2 - gba is used of human beings

- V -

válá [válá, várá] N : a shield {lo mú likongó tí lo, lo mú válá : he took his spear, he took a shield} - used in traditional warfare - oval, and made either of wickerwork or rawhide - see zɛmbɛ for a list of weapons

vélo** [velóo] N : a bicycle {lo tambéla na vélo : he rode on a bicycle} {lo kpé na vélo míngi : he rode very fast on a bicycle} - the bicycle is a ubiquitous means of travel and a status symbol for the lower and middle classes

vɛkɛ́ N : okra (Hibiscus esculentus L.), a mucilaginous vegetable used in many sauces {mɔ túku kpí tí káráko da, mɔ píka vɛkɛ́, mɔ zía da : you dump in peanut paste, then you pound okra and put it in} - okra is one of the foods which are called dɔngɔ́ yɔngɔ́rɔ - see also kása

vɛnɛ [vɛnɛ, mvɛnɛ] N : a lie {mbi sára vɛnɛ pɛpɛ : I did not tell a lie} {vɛnɛ tí mɔ : your lie, i.e. you have told a lie} {mɔ tɛnɛ vɛnɛ pɛpɛ : don't tell a lie} - syn. mátáká - see sára vɛnɛ, tɛnɛ vɛnɛ

vɛní [vɛní, mvɛní] N : an owner, a master, a mistress (i.e. the feminine of master only) {vɛní tí lengé ní atɛ kɔ́be pɛpɛ ; the mistress of the lengé dance did not eat} {vɛní tí da só na ndo wa ? : where is the owner of this house?} - wa N is an inhabitant, an agent, as well as an owner

vɛní [vɛní, vení, mvɛní, mvení] An : an emphatic adjunctive, used to emphasize any phrase by bringing it to the head of the sentence : -self, it is ... which {lo vɛní sí acommencer berá : he himself started the war} {áSango vɛní aɛkɛ fáa susu na gbánda : it is the Sango who kill fish with nets} {fadé mbi vɛní, mbi ɛkɛ éré ála : I myself, I will call them} {aɛkɛ tongasó vɛní sí ála ɛkɛ sára kɔ́be ní : it is like that that they make the food} {só vɛní sí í kɛ̨ : it is this that we refuse} vieux** [viyée] An : old, as applied to persons - see also mbakɔ́rɔ

ville** [víil] N : a city with a European type municipal administration - only a few of the larger cities have this status, while smaller communities constitute parts of various collectivité units - in colonial days, the maire or mayor was an appointed official, but now he is elected - see république for the administrative structure of the country

ville de Bangui** [vildəbaŋgí] N : a fire engine {amú ville de Bangui otá, agoe míngɔ wá só : they took three fire engines and went and extinguished this fire} - da gbí is a fireman

vin** [vɛ̨ɛ̨] N : European wine - see samba for a list of alcoholic beverages

voilà** [vwalá, walá] I : there now {tɛrɛ atɛnɛ na lo, voilà mbi tɛnɛ na lo awe : the spider said to him, there now, I've told him}

voma N : a fly - other insects and arachnids include dɔla a moth, bobo a termite, gandá a wasp, ngungu a mosquito, ngusú a chigger, a maggot, kpalakongo a scorpion, tɛrɛ a spider, lavú or wotoro a bee, makongó a caterpillar

vɔ V : 1. to buy {lo vɔ ngunzá tí páta osió : she bought four páta's (i.e. twenty francs') worth of greens} {zo wa avɔ na mɔ pendere bɔngɔ́ só ? : who bought you this beautiful dress?} {ita, mɔ gá tí vɔ na mbi, mɔ vɔ : sister, if you've come to buy from me, buy} - this meaning to buy is the more common usage, which contrasts with ká V, to sell - see vɔ ngéré, fúta, payer, nginza, tɛ nginza, franc, páta for other financial concepts

2. to sell {í vɔ tanga ní na nginza tí payer impôt : we sell the rest of it for money to pay taxes} - this usage, syn. with ká, is less common than 1.

vɔkɔ́ [vɔkɔ́, vokó, vukɔ́] V : to be or become black, to be dark, to be dirty {ndo avɔkɔ́ : the place was dark} {tɛ́rɛ́ tí mbi avɔkɔ́ : my body was black, i.e. dirty} - see bɛ́ ... vɔkɔ́ - opp. vurú V

vɔkɔ́ An : black, dark, dirty - can be reduplicated for emphasis {bɔngɔ́ ní aɛkɛ vɔkɔ́ vɔkɔ́ : the cloth waɛ very black} - vɔkɔ́ kété is dark grey or an unsaturated dark shade of some other color - see couleur for the color system - syn. saleté in the sense of dirty - opp. vurú An, propre - see also mbunzú vɔkɔ́, zo vɔkɔ́, vɔkɔ́ lé

vɔkɔ́ lé N : the pupil of the eye - see lé N 1.1

vɔkɔ́ zo N : see zo vɔkɔ́

vɔ ngéré V : to do business, to buy and sell - see vɔ, ká V, fúta, payer, nginza, franc, páta, bon, ngéré, tɛ nginza for other financial and economic concepts

vɔrɔ́ɔ V : to give honor or great deference, to express respect, submission, or pleading, as by kneeling {mbi vɔrɔ́ɔ tɛ́rɛ́ tí mbi na mɔ : I kneel before you to plead with you} - used esp in speaking to or about God - see also sambéla, díkɔ, sepála - see ta tí vɔrɔ́ɔ

vú V : to be or become famous {éré tí ála avú tongana tí ámbéní zo pɛpɛ : their names were not famous like those of other people} - may be related to vurú V

vundú N : a complex emotional reaction and state resulting from misfortune or a real or imagined slight - since misfortune is considered to be caused by malevolent personal agencies, human or otherwise, the disappointment or sorrow (depending on the magnitude of the occasion) is invariably tinged with resentment and a desire to retaliate {tongana zo só afáa íta tí mbi akúí, sí vundú tí mbi awe : when the person who killed (or caused the death of) my brother dies, then my sorrow and resentment will be appeased} {só mɔ sára mbɛ́tí na mbi pɛpɛ, agá yí tí vundú : because you did not write me, it has become an occasion for disappointment and resentment} - the resentment is the central and constant component of vundú - bɛ́ ... sɔ expresses a similar reaction - pɔnɔ́ and sáná express the objective cause of some vundú, i.e. persecution or other suffering caused by personal malevolence - ngonzo is anger - ngiá, siriri express opp. emotions and states - see bɛ́ for a discussion of emotional reactions and states vurú [vurú, vulú] V : to be or become white, to be clean {bɔngɔ́ avurú : the cloth is white, or the cloth is clean} - opp. vɔkɔ́ V - see also bɛ ... vurú

vurú An : white, clean - can be reduplicated for emphasis {vurú póró tí tɛ́rɛ́ tí ála : the white skin of their bodies} - vurú kété means light grey or an unsaturated light tint of another color - see couleur for the color system - syn. propre in the sense of clean - opp. vɔkɔ́, saleté - see vurú ndo, vurú sése, ngú vurú

vurú ndo N : the dry season - syn. burú

vurú sése N : white clay used to whitewash walls - mbamba means a lime whitewash

- W -

wá N : 1. a fire {zía ngú na (ndó tí) wá : put water on the fire i.e. to boil} {lo sára kótá wá : he made a big fire} - the usual cooking fire is a wood fire on the ground between three stones in front of the hut - a similar fire is kept burning all night inside the hut for warmth - a good housekeeper always keeps a small fire going somewhere to be ready for any need - see kéké tí wá, lé tí wá, pindiri (tí wá), tinga wá, zɔ́, gbí, míngɔ

2. heat {ndo aɛkɛ wá míngi : the place is very hot (i.e. in speaking of weather)} {wɛ́ ní amú wá míngi : the iron is very hot} - see gá wá, mú wá, wara wá

wa N : 1. an inhabitant, a citizen, an owner {áwa tí Bangui : the inhabitants of Bangui} {wa tí yí ní agá atɛnɛ, mbi báa kámba tí mbi ká : the owner of the thing came and said, I saw my snare over there} - mbá means one's fellow-citizen or inhabitant, vɛní N means an owner

2. a person characterized by something which is specified by a post-posed complement - see wa búburú, wa hánda, wa ngiba, wa kɔa, wa má bɛ́, wa nzí, wa nzinga, wa zíba - in these cases, the trait specified seems to be more permanently and essentially associated with the person than when zo tí is used with the same complements

wa V : to warn, to rebuke, to admonish, to advise, to counsel, to encourage, to comfort, to console {lo wa ála ngangó pɛpɛ : he did not admonish them severely} {bíá awa bɛ́ tí í : the song comforted us} - this verb covers all the ways in which one person can deal responsibly with another's behavior (especially as regards its ethical qualities) and emotional states and problems - wa bɛ́ tí means to encourage, to comfort

wa An : an interrogative adjunctive (Grammar p. 53) - used esp. in ndo wa, zo wa, and lá wa - in this last case, and also when it is used to put into question a whole sentence, it is often exclamatory and implies a negative answer - hence, it is used as a strong and indignant disclaimer of a false imputation {ka íta mbi sí mbi tɛ̨nɛ só wa ! : is it really I who said that (of course not!)} - yɛ̨ is semantically syn. but much less restricted grammatically

wáá I : an exclamation of amazement

wa bɛ́ tí V : to encourage, to comfort, to console - this is more specific than wa V

wa búburú N : a dumb person - see búburú - zo tí can be substituted for wa

wa hánda N : a tempter, one who entices or teases - see hánda - zo tí can be substituted for wa

wa kɔa N : a Protestant neologism to mean messenger, preacher - see kɔa N 2

wala C : a connective used to join alternative or correlative elements (Grammar p. 124-126) : or, or else {sɔ́ nzoní wala nzoní pɛpɛ : is that good or is it not good?} {li tí ála míngi, wala bale otá, wala bale osió, wala bale ukú : many of them, perhaps thirty, perhaps forty, perhaps fifty} {mɔ goe mbéní ndo, wala mɔ ɛkɛ da bianí ? : have you gone elsewhere, or are you really there?} {mɔ tɛ susu mélanger na ní wala ? : do you eat fish mixed with it, or (not)?}

wále [wále, wáli, wáre, wári] N : 1. woman, as opposed to a man or a child {mbi ɛkɛ mérɛngɛ́, mbi de mbi gá wále pɛpɛ : I am a child, I have not yet become a woman} {mbi éré ákɔ́li, áwále ... : I call upon men, women ...} - opp. kɔ́li 1, mérɛngɛ́ - see also wále tí pitą́

2. a wife {lo mú wále tí lo : he took his wife} {wále tí mbi, na mérɛngɛ́ tí mbi : my wife and my child} - opp. kɔ́li 2 - see also mariage, marier

3. a female, human or animal-used to qualify some other noun {wále tí kɔ́ndɔ abata mérɛngɛ́ tí lo : the hen protects her chicks} - see mérɛngɛ́ (tí) wále, mbakɔ́rɔ wále, pendere wále - opp. kɔ́li 3

wále tí pitą́ N : an adulteress, a prostitute {tongana wále alɔ́ndɔ́ tí kamáta mbéní kɔ́li, atenɛ só agá wále tí pitą́ : if a woman arises to take another man, they say she has become an adulteress} - see sára pitą́ wa má bɛ́ N : a Protestant neologism intended to mean a believer - syn, chrétien

wa ndé N : a stranger, a foreigner - gɛnɛ is a visitor, a guest

wa ngiba N : a leper - see ngiba, buruma - zo tí can be substituted for wa

wángó N : warning, advice, counsel {í mú wángó na ázo títɛnɛ ála manquer pɛpɛ : we give warning to the people so they will not miss} {mbi ɛkɛ mú wángó na ála na lége tí kobéla : I give advice to you concerning sickness} - from wa V

wa nzí N : a thief, a robber, a burglar - see nzí - zo tí can be substituted for wa, in which case the connection between the act and the character of the person is less essential and permanent

wa nzinga N : a poor person - see nzinga

wara [wara, wala] V : to get, to obtain, to receive, to find, to discover {mbi wara mbɛ́tí só mɔ sára na mbi : I got the letter you wrote me} {í wara penser só gí fadesó ? : did we discover this idea just now?} {mɔ wara yę ? : what did you find?} {fadé ála wara fúta tí ála : they will get their wages} {mbi wara na yá tí nzɛ só : I got(it)this month} {fadé mɔ wara mérɛngɛ́ tí mbi : you will find my child} {í wara ángbáa : we found the buffalo} {tongana mbi wara service, sí mbi goe na Bangui : if I find a job, then I'll go to Bangui} {mɔ wara concours tí mɔ : you have obtained (i.e. succeeded in) your examination} - opp. gí V - see wara dé, wara wá, wara yángá tí tɛ kóbe, wara kobéla, wara ngiá

wara dé V : to become cold - syn. gá dé, mú dé, dé V - opp. wara wá

wara kobéla V : to become sick - the name of a specific sickness can be substituted for kobéla - the phrase can be inverted {mbi wara kobéla : I became sick} {kobéla awara mbi : I became sick} - opp. kobéla ... kái

wara lége V : to find or take an opportunity {mbi wara lége tí báa lo : I found an opportunity to see him} - see lége 2, gí lége

wara ngiá V : to be or become happy {ázo awara ngiá na lá ní ká : people became happy on that day}

wara wá V : to become hot - syn. gá wá, mú wá - opp. **wara** dé

wara yángá tí tɛ kóbe V : to have a good appetite - also used in the negative {mbi wara yángá tí tɛ kóbe pɛpɛ : I did not have a good appetite} - syn. yángá ... nzɛrɛ tí tɛ kóbe

wátáká N : a lie {ála sára kótá wátáká : they told a big lie} {mbi tɛnɛ wátáká pɛpɛ : I didn't tell a lie} - syn. vɛnɛ - see **sára wátáká**, tɛnɛ wátáká

wato N : an enemy {wato aɛkɛ zo sɔ́ asára berá na babą́ tí mɔ giriri : an enemy is someone who used to make war on your father} - for opp. terms see ndeko

wa zíba N : a blind person - see zíba

we [we, wɛ] V : 1. to be finished, to be done, to be completed, to be accomplished {téné tí mbi awe : my speech is finished} {kóbe awe : the food is done, i.e. ready to eat}

2. we is also used in paratactic construction with a preceding clause (Grammar p. 160-167), in which case it signals that the action denoted by the preceding verb is fully accomplished and was antecedent to the verbs of the surrounding context {mɔ má awe ? : have you heard (lit, you heard, is it finished)?} {tongana mɔ tourner awe, mɔ zía na sése : when you have finished stirring it, you put it aside} {mɔ sambéla gí Nzapá, awe : pray just to God, that's all} {ka lo tɛnɛ na mbi awe : otherwise he would have told me} {mbi lɛkɛ téné ní awe, sí mbi tɛnɛ na mɔ : I fixed up the matter, and then (when it was finished) I told you} - in this use, a simple past perfect verb is usually all that is needed to gloss the combination of verb plus we

wę́ N : 1. iron - smelted and worked by traditional blacksmiths (ndao) {purú tí lo kóé así gígí, na taá wę́ ní aɛkɛ : the slag had all run out, and the real iron remained} {ála girísa lége tí wę́ awe : they have lost the art of iron working} - see zɛmbɛ for a list of tools and weapons made of iron

2. the bride-price - so called because an important part of the bride-price was traditionally composed of iron bars of specific size and shape - some bars were highly esthetic - syn, mɔsɔrɔ

woga [woga, uga] N : the duiker, and possibly certain other small antelopes of the genus Cephalophus - its size and general appearance may be judged by the fact that in a folk tale it is passed off as a dog

wógará N : a daughter-in-law, in relation to her father-in-law, i.e. this is the term used by a man in referring or speaking to his daughter-in-law - see famille for the kinship system

wótoro [wótoro, wótro, wɔ́trɔ] N : 1. a bee - syn. lavú
2. honey - syn. ngú lavú, mafuta tí wótoro

wɔ́kɔ V : 1. to soften, to be soft, (literally or figuratively) to relent, to tire, to weaken physically {kóbe ní awɔ́kɔ nzoní : the food is nice and soft} {mɔ wɔ́kɔ bɛ́ tí mɔ ma : soften your liver, i.e, relent} {í wɔ́kɔ pɛpɛ : we're not tired} - in the last sense, syn, fatiguer, while nzɛ́ is less physical
2. to decrease - used esp. of a price {ngérê ní awɔ́kɔ kêtê : the price has decreased a bit} - syn. diminuer

wúrúwúrú N : a tumult, a noise of great confusion and disorder {í ɛkɛ voter na wúrúwúrú pɛpɛ : we won't vote with disorderly noise} - toto is a cry, a lament, kɔ́ngɔ́ is a shout

- Y -

yá N : 1. abdomen, stomach, digestive organs, both in the external and internal aspects {yá tí mbi asúku : my abdomen swelled up} {î kángbi áyá ní î bi na ngonda : we separated its internal organs and threw them away} - bɛ́ is the liver and the seat of the personality and all its manifestations, while yá is definitely identified with digestion - see tɛ́rɛ́ 7

2. with an inanimate-complement, and usually introduced by na 3 : in, inside {yá tí da : the inside of the house} {mɔ zía na yá tí sɛmbɛ́ : put it into a dish} {lo píka na yá tí kpu : she pounded it in a mortar} {mbi báa na yá tí mbɛ́tí : I saw it in a letter} {kobéla só ahú na yá tí ngú sɔ́ : this disease is spreading this year} {ngú aole na yá tí burú : the streams dry up in the dry season} {lo báa ndo na yá tí lé tí zo vokɔ́ : he looks into the eyes of a black man}

yabándá* N : a sauce made of greens (kugbé), with or without an oleaginous paste, as of peanuts (kpí) - kása is the more general term for any sauce made to accompany the staple dough (kɔ́be), including those with meat, fish, termites, etc.

yáká N : any cultivated area : a field, a garden, a plot, an orchard, a plantation {kɔ́li agoe na yáká kózo ní : men went to the fields first} {yáká tí mbi akánga kóé : my field is all choked up (with weeds)} {yáká tí café : a coffee plantation} - distinguished from ngonda, which is uncultivated wilderness, and kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́, which is a built-up settled area - see fáa yáká, lú - the usual tools are kpɔ́ka or ngáfɔ́, a hoe, and dɔ́, an ax

yąma [yąma, nyama, yama] N : 1. an animal of any kind, in opp. to zo a human being and yí N an inanimate thing {mbi goe na ngonda mbi kpɔ na kété kété yąma : I go into the bush and spear little animals with it} {kobéla só agá na lége tí mbéní kété kété yąma na yá tí mɔ : this disease comes on account of tiny animals (i.e. parasites) inside you} -

yąma tí ngonda gives a list of wild animals - susu gives a list of fish - voma gives a list of insects and arachnids - ndɛkɛ is a bird - the domestic animals are : mbo the dog, ngása the goat, kóndɔ the chicken, yą́ɔ̧ the cat - cochon the pig, and taba the sheep are much less common, while bágara cattle, mbarata the horse, and lélé the donkey are domesticated almost exclusively by Fulani herdsmen, who are often also butchers - gí yąma describes hunting procedures

2. meat {tongana mɔ ɛkɛ, fadé lo tɛ mbéní yąma : if you were here, he would eat meat (because you would go hunting)} {yąma tí bale ɔ́kɔ, tongana mɔ vɔ, même mɛ́rɛngɛ́ só, tongana lo tɛ, alíngbi na lo pɛpɛ : fifty francs' worth of meat, when you buy it, even this child could eat it and it wouldn't be enough for him} - since hunting is increasingly unproductive and beef is expensive, meat protein is often lacking from the diet - substitutes include bobo the termite, makongó the caterpillar, and kpí oleaginous grains such as peanuts

yąma tí ngonda N : wild animals - these include :

1. carnivora : bámará the lion, zɛ the leopard, b'ɔngɔ́ the hyena, sónzó the African hunting dog, and yą́ɔ̧ which, in addition to referring to the domestic cat, can also mean various kinds of wild cats

2. smaller herbivora, esp. antelopes : báságbó the eland, béta the waterbuck, gólo the giraffe, tágba the kob, zaranga the roan antelope, and dengbe, kpere, lekpa, and woga, all various kinds of small antelopes

3. larger herbivora : dole the elephant, gɔ́gɔ́á or ngbáa the buffalo, mbengé and cochon tí gígí two kinds of wild boars, másarágba the rhinoceros, and kɔnɔ́ the hippopotamus

4. primates : makáko a generic term for monkeys, bákoyá the baboon, ngui the colobus monkey, seko the chimpanzee

5. smaller mammals, as rodents, insectivora, etc. : batá the squirrel, lele the porcupine, kpíkara the pangolin, zarí the ratel

6. reptiles : bakongo the turtle, ngundé the crocodile, ngbɔ́ the snake, kúma the python

yambo* N : perfume, incense - most perfumes are of either European or Muslim origin

yángá N : 1. the mouth {lo zía kóbe na yángá tí mérɛngɛ́ ; she put food into the child's mouth} {toto ade na yángá tí lo ; crying was still in his mouth, i.e. he was still crying} Sango agbó yángá tí mbi mbírímbírí pɛpɛ : Sango has not properly taken hold of my mouth, i.e. I do not speak Sango well} {mbi má gí na yángá tí mbéní zo ; I just heard it from the mouth of someone} - see also *pɔ́rɔ́* *tí* *yángá* the lip - *gí* *yángá*, *má* *yángá*, *yángá* ... *nzɛrɛ* *tí* *tɛ* *kóbe* - see *tɛ́rɛ́* 1
2. a language {yángá tí ámbunzú : the white man's language} {mɔ ɛkɛ fa yángá tí í na ázo ká : you are teaching our language to people over there} {yángá tí Sango : the Sango language} - *gɔ́* refers to the voice, *tɛ́nɛ́* to what is said, speech
3. an opening, a door {mɔ kánga yángá tí da ; close the door of the house} {mɔ kánga yángá tí ta : cover the opening of the pot}
4. the edge of - often used with *na* 3 {lo ɛkɛ na yángá tí ngú ; he was at the edge of the river} {yángá tí yáká ; the edge of the field} {yángá tí zɛmbɛ : the edge of the knife blade}

yángá ... nzɛrɛ tí tɛ kóbe V : to have a good appetite {yángá tí mbi anzɛrɛ tí tɛ kóbe pɛpɛ : I do not have a good appetite} - syn. *wara* *yárgá* *tí* *tɛ* *kóbe*

yangba* N : smallpox - see *kobéla*

yángó N : a fishhook {lo ɛkɛ bi yángó na yángá tí ngú ; he is fishing by the edge of the river (lit. he is throwing the fishhook)} - see *gí* *susu* for a description of fishing techniques

yą̂ʔ [yą̂ʔ, nyąɔ] N : a cat, esp. a domestic cat, but can also refer to a wild cat - see *yąma*, *yąma* *tí* *ngonda* 1

yá tí mabɔ́kɔ N : the palm of the hand - see *mabɔ́kɔ*

yáyú N : heaven, the sky - this is the term used by Christians to refer to the heaven of God - *ndúzú* is the sky, *ía* is the air

yeke Av : slowly, gradually - can be reduplicated {í ɛkɛ lɛkɛ kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́ tí í yeke yeke : we are organizing our country very gradually} - syn. *doucement* yȩ [yȩ, nyɛ, nye] An : an interrogative adjunctive (*Grammar* p. 53-54) : what (lo sára kɔa tí yȩ ? : what work did he do?) (zo yȩ ? : what person, who?) (yí tí yȩ ? : what thing?) (yȩ asɔ mɔ ? : what is hurting you?) (í ɛkɛ báa yȩ ? : what do you see?) - syn. *wa* An is much more restricted grammatically - see also *ngbangatí* *yȩ*, *tɛnɛtí* *yȩ*, *tongana* *yȩ*

yȩ́kpá [yȩ́kpá, nyɛ́kpá] N : lightning - *békpá* is thunder

yɛnɛ́ N : the anus - can also be said dú tí yɛnɛ́ - *ngbundá* means the buttocks

yɛngerɛ V : to sift, as manioc flour (mɔ píka fúku ní kɛ́é awe, mɔ yɛngerɛ : when you have finished pounding the flour, you sift it) - *passer* 2 means to strain, to drain, as well as to sift - *pɛ́* 2 and *diki* mean to winnow

yɛngerɛ N : a sieve - made of very fine wickerwork in the shape of a hemisphere about ten inches in diameter

yí [yí, yé] N : an all- purpose noun of general reference : thing, as opp. to *zo* a person and *yąma* an animal (mbi sára yí só : I did this thing) (yí kóé aɛkɛ nzoní míngi : everything is very nice) (lo tɛ yí tí mbi na mbáná séngé : he ate my things in willful idleness) - only in the expression *yí* *só*, what-you-may-call-him, does yí refer to a person

yí [yí, yé] V : 1. to want, to desire, to like, to love (tongana lo yí, lo húnda lége tí Takorongo : if he desires, let him ask the way to Takorongo) (kɔ́li ayí tí goe : the man wanted to go) (ála kóé ayí tí má lo : they all wanted to hear him) (mbi yí kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́ só míngi : I like this village very much) (ámbéní míngi atɛnɛ, mbi yí zo vɔkɔ́ : many are saying, I like black people) (mbi yí mbéní nginza : I want some money) (bɛ́ tí kɔ́li tí mbi ayí mbi pɛpɛ : my husband doesn't love me) (mbi yí só pɛpɛ : I don't want that) - see *bɛ́* ... *yí*, *yí* *tɛ́rɛ́* - opp. *kȩ*

2. to agree, to accept (í yí, monsieur : we agree, sir) (mbi yí pɛpɛ : I don't agree) - syn. *yí* *da*, *yí* *pȩkɔ́* - see also *yingó* *tí* *Arabe* - opp. *kȩ*

3. followed by tí and a verb, or títɛnɛ and a clause : to be about to (ngɔ́ ní ayí tí túku : the boat was about to capsize) (aú tí mɔ ayí tí kúí : your uncle is about to die) (ayí títɛnɛ ato mbɛ́tí : he is about to send a letter) - see yí tí báa ndo

yí da V : to agree (mbi yí da, monsieur : I agree, sir) - syn. yí 2, yí pɛkɔ́

yingi* V : to shake - pɛ́ means to wave the hand, to winnow, yɛngɛrɛ means to sift

yíngó pɛkɔ́ tí yí N : agreement - see yí 2, yí da, yí pɛkɔ́

yíngó tí Arabe N : the manner in which Arabs are said to respond to a call from a long distance

yíngɔ́ N : any kind of salt (même nginza tí vɔ na yíngɔ́, mbi wara pɛpɛ : even money to buy salt, I don't have) - adorónu is imported rock salt, while są́ and yíngɔ́ tí basánze are terms for traditional salt made from the ashes of certain plants

yingɔ́ N : the spirit of a living person, which resides in the liver (bɛ́) and departs at death - the spirit of a dead person is tɔ́rɔ́, while lukundú is a witchcraft spirit

yingɔ́ tí Nzapá, yingɔ́ vurú N : names used by Christians for the Holy Spirit

yí ɔ́kɔ C : there's just one thing - used to introduce a sentence (mais yí ɔ́kɔ, nginza aɛkɛ pɛpɛ : there's just one thing, there is no money) - see ɔ́kɔ

yí pɛkɔ́ V : to agree - syn. yí 2, yí da

yí só N : an expression used when groping for someone's name : what-you-may-call-it, what's-his-name - used only in the third person (yí só ..., ita tí Kamara : what's-his-name ... the brother of Kamara)

yí tɛ́rɛ́ V : to love one another, to like one another, to feel and express mutual esteem (ála yí tɛ́rɛ́ míngi : they love each other very much) - see yí 1, tɛ́rɛ́ 3 yí tí báa ndo Av : used pre-clausally : a little later, soon afterwards, not long after {mɔ yí tí báa ndo, mɔ zía kpí : a little later, you add paste} {í yí tí báa ndo, dole ní aɛkɛ tambéla na lá kúí : not long after, the elephant was walking about in the evening}

yí tí mɛ́ N : ear ornaments, ear-rings - kísi, lenge, and ngbéréná are other personal ornaments

yí tí ngangó N : violence, persecution - see also sáná, pɔnɔ́

yí tí vundú N : personal injury, suffering resulting from the action of malevolent agencies, persecution {yí tí vundú atí na ndó tí mbi míngi : much suffering has fallen upon me} - vundú esp. emphasizes the resentment and desire for retaliation resulting from such personal injury, and can be associated with sorrow or disappointment - sáná, pɔnɔ́ are approximate syn.

yoró [yoró, yoló, yɔrɔ́, yɔlɔ́] N : medicine, poison, fetish, charm, talisman - any specific material means of obtaining protective, curative, or destructive powers {áBambinga aɛkɛ na yoró tí dole : the Pygmies have medicine (to catch) elephants} {ála tɛnɛ ála ɛkɛ mú kɔ́li gí na kété yoró tí bata tɛ́rɛ́ pɛpɛ ? : aren't they saying that they catch husbands just with the little talismans used for protecting themselves?} {í zía yąma na devant tí yoró tí í : we placed meat before our fetish} {tɛnɛtí yę sí mɔ mú kótá yoró, sí íta tí mbi akúí ? : why did you get powerful medicine, so that my brother died?} {zo tí Nzapá akpé mbito tí yoró pɛpɛ : God's people do not fear fetishes} {ála mú yoró tí kobéla ní tongasó sí alíngbi títɛnɛ akái : you must take the medicine for this sickness in this way so that it can be cured} - the term includes without distinction substances whose effect is good and substances whose effect is bad, and does not distinguish between the natural effects of the application of some substances and magical effects attributed to others - it is used for both traditional and modern medicines - ngaánga is a kind of fetish

yɔ́ V : to carry a load, as on the head, the shoulder, or the back {lo yɔ́ yí na ndó gɔ́ : he carried something on his shoulder} {í dé kéké tí yɔ́ na lo : we chopped down a tree to carry to him} {mbi yɔ́ caisse ní gbá : I tried in vain to carry the crate} - tó means to carry in a container, gbó means to carry in the hand

yɔ V : to be long, either horizontally or vertically - hence, to be far, to be tall {kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́ tí ála ayɔ : their village is far away} {mɔ yɔ na mbi : you are far from me} {kéké só ayɔ míngi : that tree is very tall} - the idea of tallness is more often conveyed by yɔngɔ́rɔ preceded by the copula ɛkɛ

yɔ̨́ [yɔ̨́, nyɔ́, nyó] V : to suck, to drink, to smoke (tobacco) {ála yɔ̨́ samba : they drank beer} {mérɛngɛ́ ayɔ̨́ mɛ tí mamá tí lo : the child sucked its mother's breast} {lo yɔ̨́ mánga : he smoked tobacco} - tɛ means to bite, to eat, mɛnɛ means to swallow, to gulp, nɛ 3 means to chew

yɔngɔ́rɔ An : of space or time : long - hence, far, tall {lo sí na yɔngɔ́rɔ lége : he arrived at a far-away road} {tɛ́nɛ́ tí lo aɛkɛ yɔngɔ́rɔ pɛpɛ : his speech was not long} {zo só aɛkɛ yɔngɔ́rɔ míngi : this man is very tall} {í tambéla na pɛkɔ́ tí lo yɔngɔ́rɔ míngi : we went after him for a very long time} - yɔ is often equivalent to the copula ɛkɛ followed by yɔngɔ́rɔ

yɔngɔ́rɔ ngombe N : a term applied to the African troops used to pacify the country under colonial rule {áturúgu só, aéré ála áyɔngɔ́rɔ ngombe, aɛkɛ Sénégalais : those soldiers who were called yɔngɔ́rɔ ngombe, they were Senegalese} - see turúgu, garde

yɔ́rɔ V 1 : to fry } mɔ zía káráko na wá na yá gbara ní, mɔ yɔ́rɔ : you put the peanuts on the fire in a frying pan, and you fry them} {mɔ túku makongó na wá mɔ yɔ́rɔ ála nzoní, ngbangatí ála fų́ : you dump the caterpillars into a pot and fry them well, so they won't spoil} - tɔ́ means to cook by boiling, zɔ́ can mean to roast

yɔ́rɔ V 2 : 1. to insert, to thrust, to poke in {mbi ɛkɛ gí kéké tí yɔ́rɔ da : I am looking for poles to insert into it (i.e. a roof structure)} {ála yɔ́rɔ mabɔ́kɔ na ndúzú : thrust your hands into the air} - kpɔ means to pierce, pé means to wave the hand

2. to stir - syn. tourner - see also mɛ́ kóbe

yɔ́ yí V : to beg for something, as a beggar - húnda is a general term meaning to ask, sambéla means to pray to a divinity, and vɔrɔ́ɔ can also mean to plead

yú V : to put on (as clothing), to wear {mɔ yú bɔngɔ́ tí mɔ : put on your clothes} {ála yú póró tí gɛ́rɛ́ tí ála : they wore their shoes} {quand même mbi yú pɛpɛ, tɛ́nɛ́ aɛkɛ pɛpɛ : even if I don't wear (it), there is no problem} - see bɔngɔ́

yuru V : 1. to seep, to leak, to run out (as a liquid) {ngú só kóé ayuru da awe : all this water has leaked out of it} {ménɛ́ ayuru na hɔ̨́ tí mɛ́rɛngɛ́ : blood ran out of the child's nose} - sɔa means to flow (as a river), gara means to flow (as blood in the veins), sá means to pour, to spill

2. by extension.: to have diarrhea {lo yuru na lo dɛ́ na yá tí bí : he had diarrhea and he vomited during the night} - sára purú na ménɛ́ means to have dysentery - see kobéla

- Z -

zá V : 1. to shine, to glitter, to be bright {wá azá na yá tí da : the fire shines inside the house} - su is used of the sun
2. to be sharp, to be keen {yángá tí zɛmbɛ azá míngi : the edge of the knife-blade was very sharp} - lɛkɛ 3 is used with the meaning, to sharpen
3. to be in excellent health - used with tɛ́rɛ́ as subject {tɛ́rɛ́ tí mɔ azá sángó : you are in excellent health (lit, your body shines)}

zábolo N : the term is used by Christians to designate the devil

zaranga N : a roan antelope (Hippotragus equinus), one of the most prized game animals in the Central African Republic - see yama tí ngonda

zarí N : a ratel, a nocturnal carnivorous animal resembling a badger (genus Mellivora)

zaza N : a switch made of a twig stripped of leaves {í báa finɔ́o míngi, ngbangatí ála ɛkɛ mú zaza, asɔ na í, apíka í : we experienced much suffering, because they took switches, they hurt us, they beat us} - chicotte is a whip or scourge

zé V : to promise - not as solemnly binding as dé bá, to swear an oath

zéké N : to act of telling someone's fortune, as with cards - mbadi means divination

zé ndc N : a promise - not as solemnly binding as bá, an oath

zɛ N : a leopard, one of the most feared of the beasts of prey - see yama tí ngonda

zɛmbɛ [zɛmbɛ, zembe, zɛmɛ, zeme] N : a knife {babá tí lo amú na lo zɛmbɛ, amú na lo kpɔ́ka, amú na lo dɔ́, amú na lo ríga, amú na lo yí kóé : his father gave him a knife, gave him a hoe, gave him an ax, gave him a throwing knife, gave him everything} - the traditional knife has a symmetrical, two-edged, pointed iron blade six to ten inches long and set into a hilt-type carved wooden handle - it is carried in a leather sheath (póró tí zɛmbɛ), usually bound about the upper arm or fastened to the belt - this single tool and weapon served all cutting and stabbing purposes - iron is called wɛ́ - other tools and weapons having iron parts are : coupe-coupe, kpangbara, nzenze (machete), dɔ́ (ax), kpɔ́ka, ngáfó (hoe), ríga (throwing knife), likongó (spear), kɔkɔra (arrow) - the iron parts of all but the machete (which is imported) were made of native iron by a blacksmith, ndao - other weapons include ngindí a bow, mbanu a cross-bow, ngombe a gun

zí V 1 : to loosen, to untie, to release, to remove (tongana í gá ngangó awe, sí lo língbi títɛnɛ lo zí mabɔ́kɔ na pɛkɔ́ tí í : when we become strong, then she (i.e. France) can remove from our back her (protective and supportive) hand) (lo zí kámba na gɔ́ tí mbo : he untied the cord from the dog's neck) - syn. lungúla - opp. du 1, kánga - see also zí na ngbanga

zí V 2 : to dig a hole, esp. in the ground, for the purpose of inserting something (mɔ zí sése, mɔ sára dú, mɔ lú gɔzɔ da : you dig in the ground, you make a hole, you plant manioc in it) - ása means to dig shallowly with the hands, while zí implies a tool - kɔ́rɔ emphasizes the opening resulting from a boring operation - kpɔ means to puncture - kɔtɔ means to scratch with the fingernails, kpaka means to scrape

zía [zía, zyá, záa, zá] V : 1. to put, to set (mɔ zía ta na wá : set the pot over the fire) (ála zía likongó na lége tí dole : they put (i.e. plant) spears in the path of the elephant) (ála zía mbi na école : they put me in school) (lo zía ála na kánga : he put them in jail) - opp. mú, kamáta, lungúla - see also zía bɛ́, zía ... na sése, zía mbéní da, zía lɔ́rɔ da, zía ngiá na bɛ́ tí

2. to leave, to abandon, to cease (mbi zía yí só kóé : I left all these things) (ála zía lége tí wɛ́ awe : they have abandoned the technique of iron-working) (kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́ só, fadé mbi zía mbi goe : this town, I'll leave it and go away) (lo zía ála tí sára kusára : he left them to do the work) (zía toto : cease crying) - see zía ... na lége, zía tí, zía kɔ́li, zía wále - syn. goe, lɔ́ndɔ́ - opp duti

3. to permit, to allow, to let (mɔ zía í hú tɛ́rɛ́ kété ma : please let us rest awhile) - see zía lége na ... tí

zía bɛ́ V : to set one's heart on - hence :

1. to trust, to commit one's self to, to receive with confidence, to believe (lo zía bɛ́ tí lo na tɛ́nɛ́ tí Nzapá : he trusted God's word) - má ... bɛ́ is the neologism substituted for this standard expression in Protestant literature

zía kɔ́li V : to divorce one's husband - syn. kpé kɔ́li, kę kɔ́li - see also zía wále, mariage, marier

zía lége na ... tí V : to allow, to permit (mbi zía lége na lo tí goe na Bangui : I allowed him to go to Bangui) - syn. zía 3, mú lége na ... tí

zía lɔ́rɔ́ da V : to hurry - see also kpé, kpé lɔ́rɔ́

zía mbéní da, zía mbéní na ndó ní V : to add to, to add some more (só aɛkɛ míngi pɛpɛ, mɔ zía mbéní da ma : that isn't very much, please add some more) - see zía 1

zía ... na lége V : to see someone on his way (mbi zía lo na lége : I saw him on his way) - see zía 2

zía ... na sése V : to set aside (tongana mɔ lungúla na wá, mɔ zía na sése ngbii : when you remove it from the fire, put it aside for a while) - see zía 1

zía ngiá na bɛ́ tí V : to make someone glad, to cause someone joy (mbi zía ngiá na bɛ́ tí ála : I caused them to rejoice) - syn. mú ngiá na bɛ́ tí

zía tí V : to leave off doing, to cease, to stop - syn. zía 2 - arrêter is used when there is no verb following to designate the action being stopped - opp. gá 5

zía wále V : to divorce one's wife - syn. tomba wále, kę wále - see also zía kɔ́li, mariage, marier

zíba [zíba, nzíba] N : blind - wa zíba is a blind person zí na ngbanga V : to acquit (in a trial) - see zí 1, ngbanga - réclamer is to accuse formally

zíngo [zíngo, dzíngo] V : 1. to arouse to waken (lo zíngo ála na musique : he wakened them with music) (lo zíngo kpíkara gbá : he (tried) in vain to arouse the pangolin) - lángɔ́ means to sleep
2. followed by na and a complement denoting a person : to scold, to reprimand (tongana kɔ́li tí mɔ azíngo na mɔ, asɛkɛ ngbanga tí mɔ tí lóndó : if your husband scolds you, it is your business to leave) - súku 2 is stronger

zo [zo, zu, dzo, dzu] N : 1. a person, a human being, in contrast to yama an animal and yí a thing (Boganda atɛnɛ, zo kóé zo : Boganda (i.e. the first president and founding father of the Central African Republic) said, all people are human beings) (sése vɛní amú nginza na zo : it is the land which enriches people) (ázo tí kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́ tí mbi : the people of my village) - tɛ́rɛ́ is the body of a living person, while yingɔ́ is his spirit - kɔ́ɔ́ 2 is the body of a dead person, while tɔ́rɔ́ is his spirit - kɔ́li is a male, wále is a female, adult unless otherwise specified - mérɛngɛ́ is a child, pendere is an adolescent, kpíngba kɔ́li and kpíngba wále refer to mature adults, mbakɔ́rɔ and kótá zo refer to old people - see famille for the kinship system - used in zo kóé, zo wa, kótá zo, zo vɔkɔ́, vɔkɔ́ zo
2. followed by tí and a qualifying complement : a person characterized by ... - see zo tí buruma, zo tí kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́, zo tí lukundú, zo tí nzí, zo tí zɛ, and many other less idiomatic expressions - when wa can be substituted, as in wa nzí, it suggests a more permanent and essential trait than zo tí

zo kóé N : everyone, everybody (mɔ éré zo kóé : call everyone)

zonga [zonga, zɔnga, dzonga] V : to curse (asɛkɛ ngbangatí mɔ tí zonga kógará tí mɔ pɛpɛ : it is not your business to curse your in-laws) - dé bá means to swear an oath

zonga N : a curse - ndá táá mɔ is at once a serious curse and a gross insult - bá is an oath zo tí buruma; zo tí ngiba N : a leper - see buruma - lepers are not traditionally segregated in any way

zo tí kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́ N : a citizen of a community - mbá means a compatriot

zo tí lukundú N : a witch, i.e. a person possessed involuntarily and (sometimes) congenitally by a witch spirit (lukundú) which compels him to harm others without his being necessarily considered responsible - zo tí zɛ is a leopard man

zo tí nzí N : a thief - wa nzí is a syn. suggesting a more permanent and essential trait of character, while zo tí nzí can mean one who has once stolen

zo tí zɛ N : a leopard man - a person who is believed to transform himself at will into a leopard to prey on people at night (tongana zo tí zɛ aɛkɛ na pópó tí i, aɛkɛ nzoní i sí gígí fadé : if there is a leopard man among us, we must go out quickly) - see zɛ - zo tí lukundú is a witch

zo vɔkɔ́ N : a black man, a term readily applied by Africans to themselves (mbi sára yí só ngbangatí mbi ɛkɛ zo vɔkɔ́ : I do this because I am a black man) - can be inverted - opp. mbunzú - see also mbunzú vɔkɔ́

zo wa N : what person, who - used interrogatively (zo wa agá só ? : who is coming?)

zɔ́ V : to burn, to set fire to, to roast (ála goe tí zɔ́ wá na ngonda : they went to set a fire in the bush) (lo zɔ́ charbon : he burned charcoal, i.e. made it by burning wood under controlled circumstances) (mbi súru fɔndɔ, mbi zɔ́, mbi tɛ : I cut off a plantain, I roasted it, I ate it) - this verb implies an element of purpose or volition, so that it is used only of the action of persons - gbí is used of a fire burning of its accord, or of things burning - míngɔ means to extinguish, tínga wá means to light a fire

zɔa* N : an island (sése só ngú angɔ́rɔ ní kóé atíngbi aéré atɛnɛ, zɔa : a piece of land which is surrounded by water meeting (on the other side) is called an island)

zúku V : to bow, to kneel {mbi zúku na sése tí kamáta yí : I knelt on the ground to pick something up} {lo zúku li tí lo : he bowed his head, i.e. to worship} - kuku means to kneel, ba means to bend, dénge means to lean, sambéla means to worship

zuru N : mil, a staple grain in the northern part of the country - syn. bóndó

- Č -

čaʔ I : an exclamation used to urge on a dog : sick 'em! - *dára* and *bimbo* mean to incite a dog, to urge him on

čača N : pieces of roast meat sold as a snack in markets

PRECEDING PAGE BLANK-NOT FILMED

- A -

abandon V : 1. to leave, to leave behind : zía V - see also put
    2. to throw away : bi ... na ngonda V, bi ... na sése V

abdomen N : external and internal aspects : yá N - refers esp. to the digestive organs, esp. the stomach - see also liver

ability N : ndaráa N, malin** N, manière N - see skill

able, be V : língbi V (I am able to read : mbi língbi tí díkɔ mbɛ́tí) - this also means to suffice, to be equal

abort V : have an abortion, a miscarriage : ngɔ ... buba V (she had a miscarriage : ngɔ abuba awe)

abound V : ɛkɛ míngi V (people abounded : ázo aɛkɛ míngi)

about Prep : na lége tí CP - see concerning

about it Prep P : only post-verbally : da Av (I asked him about it : mbi húnda lo da) - usually in a locative sense : there

above Prep, Adv : na li tí CP, na ndó (tí/ní) CP - see over

abstain V : kę V, yí pɛpɛ V - these mean to refuse, to reject

absent, be V : manquer** V - this also means to fail

accept V : yí V, yí da V, yí pɛkɔ́ ní V - see agree

accident N : esp. with vehicle or at work : accident** N

accompany V : 1. come with : gá na V (he accompanied his father : lo gá na babá tí lo) - gá means to come - see also bring
    2. go with : goe na V (he accompanied his father : lo goe na babá tí lo) - see go
    3. return with : kírí na V (he accompanied me back to the village : lo kírí na mbi na kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́) - see return
    4. walk with : tambéla na V - see walk

accomplish V : 1. in an active sense : sára V - see do
2. in a passive sense, meaning to be finished : we V

accuse V : 1. in general : réclamer** V
2. on simple suspicion : pá éré V {he accused me on suspicion : lo pá éré tí mbi} - this means also to slander - see also betray

ache V : sɔ V - see hurt

acquainted, be V : 1. casually : hínga lé tí V {I know him casually : mbi hínga lé tí lo} - this means also to recognize
2. mutually : hínga tɛ́rɛ́ V {they know one another : ála hínga tɛ́rɛ́}
3. intimately : hínga bɛ́ tí V {I know him intimately : mbi hínga bɛ́ tí lo}

acquire V : 1. obtain : wara V
2. buy : vɔ V

acquit V : zí ... na ngbanga V {they acquitted him : ála zí lo na ngbanga}

act V : 1. sára V {he acted badly : lo sára sioní} - see also do, make
2. in a drama : fa pandé V - see show, model

add V : to add more to : zía mbéní da V, zía mbéní na ndó ní V {he added more to it : lo zía mbéní da}

address N : 1. location : addresse** N
2. speech : tɛ́nɛ́ N - this means any kind of utterance

adequate, be V : língbi V - see suffice

adjudicate V : fa ngbanga V - see judge V

administration N : 1. gouvernement** N
2. the Central African Republic is divided into a number of units called préfecture** administered by an appointed civil service officer with broad executive powers called préfet** - each of these units is divided into two or more sub-units called sous-préfecture** administered by a sous-préfet** - each of these in turn is composed of several townships called collectivité** administered by an elected council and président** - each of these is in turn composed of a number of

villages called kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́ - a city is a specially organized municipal unit called ville** with an elected mayor, but most smaller communities still have a chief or headman called respectively makunzi and kapíta

administrative center N : poste** N

administrator N : 1. see administration
2. before independence, the chief officers of the préfecture** (then called région**) and the sous-préfecture (then called district**) were officially called chef de région and chef de district respectively, but were called commandant** unofficially as a carry-over from the days of military occupation and rule

admonish V : wa V - see warn

adolescent N : pendere An - see also child

adopt V : (a child) : bata (mέrεngέ) V, kamáta (mέrεngέ) V

adulteress N : wále tí pitą́ą N - this can also mean prostitute

adultery N : lángó sioní N - this also means fornication

advance V : hǫ́ V, pousser** V, goε na devant V - see also pass, push, go

advice N : wángó N - see warning

advise V : wa V - see warn

affair N : téné N, ngbanga N - see also matter

affect V : 1. general : sára V, with a noun denoting a state, emotion, etc., as subject, and a noun denoting a person as object {fear affects me, i.e. I am afraid : mbito asára mbi} {sickness affects me, i.e. I am sick : kobéla asára mbi} {hunger affects me, i.e. I am hungry : nzala asára mbi} - see also other verbs expressing such states and emotions, and do
2. stronger reaction : gbó V - used in the same constructions as 1 - means to seize

afraid, be V : kpé mbito V - see also fear V for more expressions

after, afterwards Prep, Adv : 1. simple sequence : na ndá (tí/ní) CP,

na pɛkɔ́ (tí/ní) CP {he came afterwards : lo gá na ndá ní} {he came after me : lo gá na pɛkɔ́ tí mbi} - also means behind
2. soon after (wards) : yí tí báa ndo, used pre-clausally {soon afterwards, I threw it away : mbi yí tí báa ndo, mbi bi na ngonda} - see also immediately

afternoon N : 1. early : deux heures** N - see also day
2. late, sunset : lá kúí N
3. in general : na pɛkɔ́ tí kótá lá CP - see noon

again Adv : mbénî An, encore** Av {I went again to the village : mbi goe na kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́ encore} {do it again : mɔ sára mbénî} - they can also be used pre-clausally, and mbénî with a noun means other

agree V : 1. yí V, yí da V, yí pɛkɔ́ ní V - see want
2. hold the same opinion : sára bɛ́ ɔ́kɔ na ndó V {we agree as to this matter : í sára bɛ́ ɔ́kɔ na ndó tɛ́nɛ́ só}

agreement N : yíngó pɛkɔ́ tí (yí) N - see also peace, harmony

ahead Adv : na devant** CP {I'm going ahead : mbi goe na devant}

aid V : aider** V - see help

ailment N : kobéla N, malade** N - terms for disease or sickness as well as personal harm resulting from an accident

aim V : (at the vital spot, in hunting) : báa ndo tí kúí V

air N : ía N - see also sky, heaven

airplane N : avion** N

alight V : 1. of a person, to embark or disembark : ko V
2. of a bird, to alight on a branch : gbó kéké V

alike Adj, Adv : lége ɔ́kɔ N - see same

a little Adv : kété An {I went on a little : mbi hɔ̧́ kété} {let us rest a little : zía í hú tɛ́rɛ́ kété} - see little

all Adj, Adv : dɔ́ɔ́ An, tout** An, or both {all our brothers : íta tí í kɔ́ɔ́} {the people of the whole earth : ázo tí sése kɔ́ɔ́} {absolutely all men : zo kóé tout} - also means whole, entire, entirely

allow V : 1. zía lége na V {I allowed him to go to Bangui : mbi zía lége na lo tí goe na Bangui} - see also put

2. mú lége na V {I allowed him to go to Bangui : mbi mú lége na lo tí goe na Bangui} - see give

almost Adv : gá ndurú V {he almost died : lo gá ndurú tí kúí} - see also be about to

alone Adj : ɔ́kɔ An - see one

already Adv : 1. formerly : ándo Av {I've already told you : mbi tɛnɛ ándo na mɔ}

2. it is finished : we V {I have already done it (lit. I have done, it is finished) : mbi sára awe}

also Adj, Adv : ngá An, kóé An, aussi** An - these are all used with either nouns or verbs, and are interchangeable {he also ate : lo ngá, lo tɛ} {I also will do it : fadé mbi kóé mbi sára} {he came also : lo gá aussi} - koe also means all, whole,entirely

although C : quand même** C - when introducing a sentence, quand même also means even if - used to modify a verb, it means anyway, nevertheless

altogether Adv : kóé An - see entirely

always Adv : lá kóé N {I always eat just greens : lá kóé mbi tɛ gí ngʋnzá} {he changes clothes always : lo changer bɔngɔ́ lá kóé} - this also means every day, daily - reduplicated, it means every single day, forever

amiability N : ngiá N - means also fellowship, joy

among Prep : na pópó tí CP, na milieu** tí CP {among them : na pópó tí ála} - also mean between

amuse V : (a baby) : hánda (mérɛngé) V - see also tempt

amusement N : ngiá N - see also joy, play

ancestor N : 1. collective, usually plural, general : kótara N

2. collective, usually plural, paternal ancestors : babá N - also

means *father*

3. collective, usually plural, maternal ancestors : mamá N - also means *mother*

4. collective plural or individual singular, a maternal or female ancestor, a *grandmother* : tará N

5. individual singular, esp. *grandfather* : kaká N

and C : 1. in all uses : na C {father and mother : babá na mamá} {he came and he saw the village : lo gá na lo báa kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́} - also means *with*, *by*, *toward*, *in*, *from*

2. only in joining sentences : mais** C - also means *but*

3. almost exclusively in French numerals : et** C

and then C : 1. na C, mais** C, et** C - see *and*

2. et puis** C - synonymous with connectives listed in 1

3. sí C {I called him, and then he came : mbi éré lo, sí lo gá} - can also mean *so then*, *so that*

anecdote N : isɔrɔ́ N is a general term for an *utterance*, including a *story*

anger N : ngonzo N - also means *bile*

angry, be V : 1. sára ngonzo V {he was angry : lo sára ngonza}

2. ngonzo ... sára V {he was angry : ngonzo asára lo} - see *affect*

3. ngonzo ... gbó V {he was very angry : ngonzo agbó lo} - this is stronger than 2 - see *seize*

animal N : yąma N - also means *meat*

animal, wild N : yąma yí ngonda N

anklet N : of coiled brass : ngbéréná N - also means *bracelet*, *bell* (for dog)

annoy V : emmerder** V, gêner** V, be V, mú yángá V - see also to *discourage* {he is annoying me : lo ɛkɛ emmerder mbi}

another Adj : mbéní An - see *other*

answer V : 1. (a call) : yí da V - also means to *agree*

2. (a question) : kírí téné V {he answered me : lo kírí téné na mbi}

3. répondre** V is sometimes used

4. kírí V is used when a term denoting the response occurs elsewhere in the environment (I'll find something to answer to your question : fadé mbi wara mbéní yí tí kírí na question tí mɔ) - see return

antelope N : no generic term applies to all antelopes, and the precise zoological identifications of the Sango terms are not always clear - see duiker, eland, hartebeest, kob, roan antelope, sitatunga, waterbuck

anus N : yɛnɛ́ N, dú tí yɛnɛ́ N

any Adj : mbéní An - also means other, some

any more Adv : mbéní ... pɛpɛ Av (I don't want to go there any more : mbi yí tí goe ká mbéní pɛpɛ) - encore** ... pɛpɛ Av is syn.

anything P : mbéní yí N - also means something

anyway Adv : quand même Av, used post-verbally - used pre-clausally, it means if, although

apology N : pardon** N - this means any humble recognition of one's wrongdoing, or of one's obligation or dependence, as to God - it is used as an ingratiating, placating, and apologetic interjection

appear V : 1. to come into view : sí V, sí gígí V (the animal came into view : yąma ní así gígí) (sweat appeared on my body : gbikí así na tɛ́rɛ́ tí mbi) - sí means to arrive, sí gígí means to emerge
2. to seem : báa tongana (he appeared to be dirty : abáa tongana lo ɛkɛ saleté)

appetite N : nzala N - see also desire N

application N : a formal request : demande** N

apportion N : kángbi V - see divide

apprehension N : mbito N - see fear

apprentice N : 1. in general : apprenti** N - this is also used in sense 2
2. a truck driver's flunky : bátá kóngbá N

approach V : gá ndurú V (I approached the house : mbi gá ndurú na da) - see come arbitrate V : fáa ngbangba V - see judge

argue V : papa V - see quarrel V

argument N : papa N - see quarrel N

arid Adj : kúrú N - see dried

arise V : lóndó V - see get up

arm N : mabɔ́kɔ N, ti N - these also mean hand

armpit N : gbɛ́ tí mabɔ́kɔ N

arouse V : zíngo V - also means to waken, to scold

arrange V : 1. lɛkɛ V - see also prepare
  2. to set in order : lɛkɛ na kámba ní V-means to arrange in a row or line

arrest V : arrêter** V - means also to stop

arrival N : síngó N {upon your arrival, I'll see you : síngó tí mɔ, fadé mbi báa mɔ} - from sí to arrive

arrive V : of motion toward a place : sí V, gá V, or both {he arrived in the village : lo sí na kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́} {I arrived at the house : mbi gá na da} {I arrived at the house : mbi gá sí na da} - see also come
  2. of the passage of time : sí V {evening arrived : lá kúí así, or, así na lá kúí}

arrow N : kɔkɔra N - see also bow

as C : tongana C - also means like

ascend V : monter** V

ask V : 1. in general : húnda V
  2. (for something): húnda (yí) V - see also beg, pray
  3. (a question) húnda tɛ́nɛ́ V

assemble V : 1. bóngbi V
  2. (for a common purpose) : bóngbi li tí V, bóngbi tɛ́rɛ́ V - see also meet

assembly N : 1. in general : bóngbi N

2. national legislature : assemblée (legislative)** N

assert V : tɛnɛ V - say

assist V : aider** V - see help

asthma N : kobéla tí kate N - see tuberculosis

astonished, be V : 1. to be surprised : li ... kpé V {they were astonished : li tí ála akpé}

2. with an element of fear : bɛ́ ... gbó V {they were astonished : bɛ́ tí ála agbó} - see seize

at Prep : 1. na C {he is at Bangui : lo ɛkɛ na Bangui} - also means and, but, to, in, from

2. sometimes : na mbáge tí CP {it's like that in Bangui : aɛkɛ tongasó na mbáge tí Bangui} - also means toward, beside

attach V : tíngbi V - see join, fasten

attack V : 1. tí na ndó tí V - this means to fall upon

2. goe berá na li tí V {they attacked the chief : ála goe berá na li tí makunzi} - see fight, war

3. sometimes : attaquer** V

attempt V : tara V, gí lége V - see try

attention N : (in sense of paying attention) : attention** N - see pay attention

at the edge of Prep : na yángá tí CP - see edge

aunt N : 1. mother's sister : mamá N - means also mother

2. mother's older sister : kótá mamá N

3. mother's younger sister : kété mamá N

4. father's sister : omba N

authority N : ti N - means also hand

automobile N : 1. general term : kutukutu N

2. passenger car : auto** N

3. bus : autocar** N, car** N
4. truck : camion** N

avenge V : fúta kulá V - see revenge N - this refers to the retribution occasioned by very grave offenses - see also sorrow, resentment

avoid V : (a person) : kɛ V - this means to refuse, to reject

awaken V : zíngo V - means also to scold

aware, be V : hínga V - see know

away Adv : see far

ax N : dɔ́ N - see tool

- B -

baboon N : bákoyá N - see monkey

baby N : kété mɛ́rɛngɛ́ N - see child

bachelor N:kombáámbá N - a single girl is masía

back N : 1. in general : pɛkɔ́ N - used in expressions for behind, after
    2. lower : ngbundá N, ndá N - also mean hips, buttocks

back up V : kírí na ndá ní V, kírí na pɛkɔ́ V - see return

bad Adj : sioní An {a bad man : zo tí sioní} {it is bad : aɛkɛ sioní}
    {your badness : sioní tí mɔ} - see crooked, good

bag N : 1. an indigenous carrying bag of leather or woven grass : bozó N
    2. a sack : sac** N - also means a sum of a thousand francs

bald, be V : mbɔ́kɔ V {he is bald : li tí lo ambɔ́kɔ} - also means to be
    bruised or ulcerated

ball N : 1. large inflated ball for sports : ballon** N
    2. smaller, solid ball : balle** N
    3. rubber ball, esp. home-made : ndembú N - this means rubber

bamboo N : bambou** N - true bamboo is rare, and the term applies usually
    to the stem of the leaf of a species of fan palm

banana N : bulée N - see also plantain

bark V : as dog : dé kɔ́ngɔ́ V - also means to shout

basin N : kolóngo N - also means a broad platter

basket N : sakpá N - there are a number of kinds of baskets

bathe V : sukúla V, sukúla ngú V, sukúla tɛ́rɛ́ V - see wash up

battle N : berá N - this means war

be V : 1. simple copula : ɛkɛ V, kɛ V {he's a man : lo ɛkɛ kɔ́li} {it (the weather) is cold : aɛkɛ}

2. a marker of progressive action, with another verb : ɛkɛ V, kɛ V {he is eating : lo kɛ tɛ kóbe} - but this can be completely empty of meaning

3. to exist, to be present : du V, dutí V - see sit, dwell

be about to V : 1. gá ndurú V {he was about to die : lo gá ndurú tí kúi} - means also almost - see near

2. yí tí V {he was about to die : lo yí tí kúí} - see want

bead N : 1. in general : lenge N

2. a string of beads worn about the hips : kísi N - see ornament

bear V : 1. to carry : yɔ́ V

2. (fruit or seed) : lé V {the ground doesn't bear fruit : sése alé pɛpɛ} - see seed

3. (a child) : dú V {she bore a child : lc dú mɛ́rɛngɛ́} - also means to beget, to be born

beard N : kɔ́á ngbagba N - see jaw, hair

bear down V : nɛ V - also means to be heavy, to crush, to chew

beat V : 1. hit : píka V

2. defeat : gagner‡* V

3. (drum) : píka (ngɔ́) V

4. (as heart or pulse) : pousser** V, pomper** V - see push

beautiful Adj. : pendere An {beautiful clothes : pendere bɔngɔ́} {a beautiful woman : pendere wále} - also means young

beautiful, be V : (of weather) : gá nzoní V, sára nzoní V, ɛkɛ nzoní V {it is beautiful : aɛkɛ nzoní}

beauty N : pendere An {the beauty of the village : pendere tí kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́}

because, because of C, Prep : 1. ngbangatí C, tɛnɛtí C {it is because of money : aɛkɛ ngbangatí nginza} {thank you because you came : merci tɛnɛtí só mɔ gá} - also means in order to

2. sometimes : na lége tí - usually means by means of

beckon V : 1. in general, to signal with the hand : pɛ́ ti V {I beckoned with my hand to show I could not talk : mbi pɛ́ ti tí mbi ti fa na gígí mbi sára tɛ́nɛ́ pɛpɛ} - can also mean to wave - see winnow
2. to summon : éré na mabɔ́kɔ V

become V : gá V, followed by an appropriate noun or adjunctive {I became big : mbi gá kɛ́tá} {I became a man : mbi gá kɔ́li} - gá nzoní V can have the special meanings to recover, to be comforted, to prosper

bed N : tangé N - gbogbó N is a mat

bee N : lavú N, wɔ́toro N

beef N : bágara N - this also means cattle, bull, cow, calf, ox, steer - see meat

beer N : 1. generic term for alcoholic beverages : samba N
2. imported European beer : bière** N
3. made from grain : biríbiri N
4. made from sprouted corn : lɔkpɔtɔ N
5. mead made from honey : duma N

beeswax N : mafuta tí wɔ́toro N - this can also mean honey

before Prep : na devant tí CP - also means in front of

before Adv : kózo (ní) Av - also means first

beg V : 1. to ask : húnda V
2. as a beggar : yɔ́ yí V

beget V : dú V - also means to bear (a child), to be born

begin V : 1. in general : commencer** V {it'll begin soon : aɛkɛ commencer ándo hiɔ} {he began to work : lo commencer tí sára kɔa}
2. gá V {the animal began to grow : yąma ní agá akɔnɔ} - see come, become
3. (a trip) : mú lége V - see start off

behave V : sára V - see do

behind Prep. : na pɛkɔ́ tí CP - also means after

believe V : 1. to agree to : yí da V - means also to accept, to answer
2. to trust, to commit oneself : zía bɛ́ V - also means to covet, to set one's heart on
3. Protestant neologism for 2 : má na bɛ́ V

believer N : wa má bɛ́ N - a Protestant neologism

bell N : brass bell tied to dog's neck : ngbéréná N - also means brass coiled bracelet

belong V : ɛkɛ tí V {this hat belongs to him : kpoto só aɛkɛ tí lo}

below Prep, Adv : na gbɛ́ tí/ní CP - also means under

bench N : (school or other) : banc** N - also means board (for chopping food)

bend V : 1. ba V {he bent the stick : lo ba kéké ní} - also means to be bent
2. dénge V - means to lean to one side - used with object
3. to break (as a stick): kúngbi V - also means to fold

beneath Prep : na gbɛ́ tí/ní CP - also means under

bent, be V : ba V {his back is bent : pɛkɔ́ tí lo aba} - also means to bend

beside Prep : 1. in rather remote connection : na mbáge tí/ní CP - also means toward
2. in closer relationship : na tɛ́rɛ́ tí/ní CP - also means on the body of

best Adj ; nzoní ahɔ̨ kóé An - nzoní is good

betray V : 1. sára makɔrɔ́ V - also means to slander
2. if money is involved : ká V - also means to sell

betrayal N : makɔrɔ́ N - also means slander

betroth N : make public news of betrothal : fa na gigí V - means to publish

better Adj : nzoní ahɔ̨ An - nzoní means good

between Prep : na pópó tí/ní CP, na milieu** tí/ní CP - also mean among

Bible N : mbɛ́tí tí Nzapá N

bicycle N : vélo** N

big Adj : kótá An (I carried the big crate : mbi yɔ́ kótá caisse ní) - also means wide, thick, great

big, be or become V : kɔnɔ V - also means to grow

bile N : ngonzo N - also means anger

bind V : (with a cord) : kánga (na kámba)V- also means to tie, to shut

bird N : ndɛkɛ N

birth N : dúngó N - from dú V, to bear, to beget

bite V : 1. with incisors : tɛ V - used of man, dog, snake, mosquito - also means to eat

2. with molars : nɛ V - also means to chew, to bear down, to crush, to be heavy

3. as fish : mɛnɛ V - means to swallow, to gulp

bitter, be V : sé V (quinine is bitter : quinine asé)

black Adj : vɔkɔ́ An (a black cloth : vɔkɔ́ bɔngɔ́) - also means dark, dirty - see color

black, be or become V : vɔkɔ́ V (it became black : ndo avɔkɔ́) (my body is black : tɛ́rɛ́ tí mbi avɔkɔ́) - also means to be dark, to be dirty

black man N : zo vɔkɔ́ N, vɔkɔ́ zo N

blacksmith N : ndao N

blade N : 1. flat of blade : lé N (knife blade : lé tí zembɛ) - also means face, eye

2. edge of blade : yángá N (the edge of the knife : yángá tí zembɛ) - also means mouth, edge

bleed V : (mɛ́nɛ́) ... yuru V - yuru means to leak, to seep, to run out (as a liquid)

bless V : pronounce blessing : éré tɛ́nɛ́ nzoní na ndó tí V

blind Adj : zíba N

blind person N : wa zíba N, zo só abáa ndo pɛpɛ N, zo só lé tí lo akûí N, zo tí tatara ndo N

blink V : ké lé V (I blinked : mbi ké lé mbi)

blood N : mɛ́nɛ́ N

bloom V : sára ndɔ́kɔ́ V - ndɔ́kɔ́ is a flower

blow V : 1. as wind : ía V (the wind blew : pupu aía)

2. with mouth : hú mbóo V - also means to exhale

3. (the nose) : ûlu (hɔ́) V

4. (wind instruments) : ûlu V

blue Adj : bleu** An - see color

bluff V : hánda V (they bluffed him to frighten him : ála hánda lo sí lo kpé mbito) - means to tempt, to trick, to entice, to fascinate

board N : (for chopping food) : banc** N - also means bench

boast V : fa baba V, sára baba V, fa tɛ́rɛ́ V - also means to brag - baba means vanity

boat N : 1. dugout canoe : ngɔ́ N

2. a larger boat or ship of European design : bateau** N

body N : 1. living, of man or animal : tɛ́rɛ́ N - also means side, flank

2. dead human : kɔ́á N

3. dead animal : kûí N

boil V : 1. as water : kpɔrɔ V - means to bubble

2. (food) : tɔ́ V - means to cook

bone N : bíó N

book N : mbɛ́tí N - also means paper, document, magazine

bore V : kɔ́rɔ (dû) V - see also dig

bosom friend N : camarade** N, ndeko N - see also companion

born, be V : dû V - usually with parent(s) as subject, sometimes only with the subject marker a- (my mother bore me : mamá tí mbi adû mbi) (I was born : adú mbi) - means to bear (child), to beget

borrow V : húnda bon** V, sára bon** V - also means to buy on credit

both Adj : óse kóé An

bother V : gêner** V, emmerder** V, be V, mú yángá V - see also to discourage, to annoy, to weary

bottle N : 1. European type : bouteille** N
2. a gourd cut open at the small end : ngángá N - see also dipper

bottom N : gbɛ́ N, ndá N - gbɛ́ means the lower part, ndá means lower back, hips, buttocks

bounce V : uru V - means also to jump, to fly

bow N:(a weapon) : gindí N - see also arrow

bow V : 1. (the head) : zúku (li) V - means also to kneel, to worship
2. bend the body : ba V (he bowed low : lo ba na sése) - also means to bend

box N : 1. small, wooden, metal, or cardboard : boîte** N (a post-office box : boîte postale)
2. large case or crate : caisse** N
3. wooden chest for storage : sandúku N
4. suitcase : valise** N

boy N : mɛ́rɛngɛ́ (tí) kɔ́li N-also means son - mɛ́rɛngɛ́ is a child

bracelet N : coiled brass : ngbérɛ́na N - also means anklet, bell (for dog)

brag V : fa baba V, sára baba V - baba means vanity

braid V : 1. (hair) : há (kɔ́á li) V
2. (rope) : há (kámba) V

brain N : ndóndó li N

brave Adj : ngangó An - means strong - see also hero

bread N : mápa N

break V . 1. as a rope : fáa V (he broke the rope : lo fáa kámba) (the rope broke : kámba afáa} - also means cut, kill

2. as a pot : fáa V { he broke the pot : lo fáa ta} {the pot broke : ta afáa}

3. as a stick : kúngbi V {he broke the stick : lo kúngbi kéké} {the stick broke : kéké akúngbi} - also means to fold

break ground V : dé (sése) V - see also make a garden

break wind V : sɔ́sɔ́ V

breast N : 1. part of chest : li bɛ́ N

2. whole chest : kate N

3. breast proper : mɛ N - also means nipple

breath N : mbóo N

breathe V : 1. hú V

2. hú mbóo V - this means to exhale, to blow with the mouth

brew V : (beer) : tó samba V

bribe N : matabísi N, cadeau** N - also mean a gift

brick N : sun-dried block for building : moule** N

bride-price N : 1. mɔsɔrɔ N- this means wealth in general

2. wɛ̧ N -this means basically iron - a large part of the bride-price was traditionally paid in the form of conventionally shaped bars of iron

bridge N : pont** N

bring V : gá na V {bring the knife : gá na zɛmbɛ} - gá is to come

bring back V : kír' na V - kírí means to return

bristle N : 1. as of caterpillar : kíi N - also means thorn

2. hair : kɔ́á N

broad Adj : kótá An - also means big, thick, great, important

bronchitis N : kobéla tí kate N - see tuberculosis

brood V : as a chicken : bóngbi ... na kpángbi tí V - kpángbi is a wing - bóngbi means to gather brook N : ngú N - means water, river, rain, year

broom N : balai** N

brother N : 1. íta (tí) kɔ́li - íta is a sibling - see also sister
    2. older brother : kɔ́tá zo N
    3. younger sibling : ngambe N

brother-in-law N : kɔ́gará N - also means father-in-law, son-in-law

brown Adj : 1. reddish : bingbá An - means red - see color
    2. dark : vɔkɔ́ An - means black, dark - see color

brown V : as food frying : be V - also means to be ripe

bruised, be V : mbɔ́kɔ V - also means to be ulcerated, to be bald

bubble V : kpɔ́rɔ V - used of water boiling (see boil) and of carbonated drinks, etc.

bud V : as a newly planted slip : mbuma V, tɔ V

buffalo N : gɔ́gɔ́á N, ngbáa N, bágara N - bágara is more commonly used of domestic cattle

buffalo bird N : ndɛkɛ tí ngbáa N

build V : sára (da) V

building N : da N - see also house

bull N : kɔ́li bágara N - bágara means cattle, cow, ox, steer, calf, beef, and sometimes buffalo

bunch N : gbá N - see bundle

bundle N : 1. as of grass : gbá N {a bundle of grass : gbá tí péré} {a bundle of arrows : gbá tí kɔkɔra}
    2. a head load : kóngbá N - see also burden

burden N : kóngbá N - see load, bundle

bureaucrat N : mbunzú vɔkɔ́ N - see clerk

burglar N : zo tí nzí N, wa nzí N - mean thief in general burn V : 1. impersonal action of the fire itself or of the thing burned : gbí V {fire burned five houses : wá agbí da ukú} {five houses burned : da ukú agbí}

2. to set fire deliberately : zɔ́ V {he burned the grass : lo zɔ́ péré}

burr N : kpɔ mɔ ngangó N, kíi N, sisi N - see also thorn

burst V : sungba V - used of thunder and of cotton bolls, as well as of other explosive noises or motions

bury V : lú V - also means to plant

bus N : autocar**, car** - see also automobile

bush N : wilderness : ngonda N

bush pig N : mbengé N

business N : affair : tɛ́nɛ́ N, ngbanga N {it is your business : aɛkɛ tɛ́nɛ́ tí mɔ, aɛkɛ ngbanga tí mɔ} - tɛ́nɛ́ also means word

busy, be V : occuper** V

but C : mais** C, na C, mais** na C, et** na C

butcher V : dɔrɔkɔ V {we butchered the animal : í dɔrɔkɔ yąma ní} - see cut

buttock N : ngbundá N, ndá N - see also back, hips

buy V : 1. vɔ V - also means to sell

2. on credit : sára bon** V, húnda bon** V - also mean to borrow

by means of Prep : na lége tí/ní CP - also means through

- C -

cabinet-maker N : charpentier** N - only the more sophisticated use menuisier** N

cackle V : as a chicken : toto V - means to cry

cadaver N : kɔ́á N - means dead human body

calf N : mérɛngɛ́ tí bágara N - bágara means cattle, cow, bull, etc.

call V : 1. to get attention : to kɔa V - also means to send word
    2. to summon someone : éré V, éré ndo V
    3. to name someone : éré V

call for V : demand : éré V, húnda V - húnda means to ask

can V : língbi V - means to suffice, to be able, to be equal

canoe N : dugout : ngɔ́ N

can you beat that? : (mɔ) báa yí awe?

cap N : kpoto N - means a hat

capable, be V : língbi V - means to be able, to suffice, to be equal

capsule N : (of medicine) : quinine** N - see also pill, tablet

capture V : kamáta V - means to take

car N : auto** N - see automobile

card N : 1. membership : carte** N
    2. identification : carte d'identité** N

care for V : 1. sára na V - means to serve, to work for, to use
    2. (as a sick person) : soigner** V - means also to treat medically

carpenter N : charpentier** N

carry V : 1. (in container) : tó V - means draw water, dip up liquid, carry dirt in basket, etc.

2. (on head, back, or shoulders) : yɔ́ V
3. (in hand) : gbó V - means to grasp
4. (a baby) : kánga (mérɛngɛ́) na pɛkɔ́ V - see to tie

carry on V : (in an agitated manner) : déma tɛ́rɛ́ V

cartridge N : cartouche** N

carve : (a figure) : lɛkɛ pandé V

case N : a crate : caisse** N, sometimes sandúku N - see box

cast V : throw : bi V

castrate V : lungúla korogbó V - korogbó is the scrotum

cat N : yą̂ʔ N - usually domestic, but may also refer to a wildcat

catch V : 1. to seize, as with hand or trap : gbó V
2. to take : kamáta V
3. to chase and catch : tomba V

catch fire V : gbí V - see burn

catch sight of V : báa V - see see

catechist N : a religious lay leader or instructor : catéchiste** N

caterpillar N : makongó N

Catholic N : catholique** N

cattle N : bágara N - means beef, bull, cow, calf, ox, steer, and sometimes buffalo - various modifiers make the meaning more specific as to age and sex - see male, female, child

caught, be V : (in a cord snare) : gbó (kámba) V - see seize

cause V : (to do) : sára {he caused him to fall : lo sára sí lo tí} - see make, do, affect

cause to disappear V : húnzi V - see finish, hide

cease V : 1. to stop : arrêter** V
2. with a verbal complement denoting the action stopped : zía V {he ceased to chase animals : lo zía tí tomba yąma} - also means to leave,

to abandon, to put

celebrate V : sára matánga V

celebration N : matánga N - see also holiday

certain, a Adj : ɔ́kɔ An, mbéní An (I saw a certain man : mbi báa mɛ́rɛngɛ́ ɔ́kɔ, mbi báa mbéni mɛ́rɛngɛ́) - ɔ́kɔ means one, mbéní means other

certainly Adv : bíakú Av, bíaní Av - can be used either pre-clausally or post-verbally - either can be reduplicated for emphasis - means also truly

certificate N : certificat** N - without further specification, refers to the certificate awarded upon successful passing of the examinations marking the completion of the six-year elementary education program

chaff N : (of grain) : kakó N - see also husk

chance N : lége N - see opportunity - means also path, manner, way

change V : changer** V (he changed clothes : lo changer bɔngɔ́) (people's dispositions change : bɛ́ tí zo achanger)

change one's mind V : lɛkɛ bɛ́ V - also means to repent

chapel N : chapelle** N, da tí Nzapá N - see church

character N : bɛ́ N - also means disposition, liver

charcoal N : charbon** N

charm N : (protective) : yoró N - see medicine, talisman, fetish

chase V : tomba V - means to pursue, to drive away

chat V : general terms : causer** V, sára isɔrɔ́ V, sára tɛ́nɛ́ V

2. with emphasis on good fellowship : sára ngiá - see have fun, play

chauffeur N : chauffeur** N

cheek N:mbángbá N

cheetah N ngóro N (?)

chest N : 1. part of anatomy : kate N

2. wooden box : sandúku N

chicken N : kɔ́ndɔ N - complements are added to specify hen, rooster

chief N : in traditional and colonial power structures, the head of a village : makunzi N - see also headman

chigger N : ngusú N - also means maggot

child N : 1. non-adult, human or animal : mérɛngé N - means baby, infant, youth, adolescent - complements specify sex - boy, girl
2. in kinship sense : mérɛngé N - see also son, daughter

chimpanzee N : seko N

chin N : ngbagba N - also means lower jaw

choose V : choisir** V, éré ... na pópó tí/ní V, gí ... na pópó tí/ní V, kamáta ... na pɔ́tó tí/ní V, mú ... na pópó tí/ní V - see call, seek, take

chop V : (a tree) : dé (kéké) V - see cut

Christian N : 1. general terms : chrétien** N, mérɛngé tí Nzapá N
2. a church member in good standing (among Protestants) : membre** N

church N : 1. a congregation of people : église** N
2. a building : da tí Nzapá N, chapelle** N, église** N (among Catholics chiefly), mission** N (among less sophisticated speakers)
3. a denomination : église tí catholique** N, église tí père** N refer to the Catholic church - église tí protestant** N, église tí anglais** N refer to the Protestant church - mission** N can substitute for église** N in these expressions

cigarette N : cigarette** N - mánga N is a more general term for tobacco - see smoke

circle V : ngɔ́rɔ V - see surround

circumcise V : fáa ganzá V - the same term also applies to female excision of the clitoris

circumsion N : ganzá N - this term applies to the entire set of ceremonies constituting the rites of passage for both sexes, including the physical operation, a dance, and a certain amount of formal instruction

city N : 1. general term for a settled community : kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́ N
2. a municipal administrative unit : ville** N

civilized, be or become V : civiliser** V {a woman who is civilized ... : mbéní wále so aciviliser ...} {a civilized person : zo tí civiliser}

civil servant N : fonctionnaire** N - see also bureaucrat

claw N : (of animal) : nzɛnɛ́ N - also means a fingernail

clay N : 1. mud : pɔtɔpɔ́tɔ N - also means mush, gruel
2. for making pots : ndóo N

clean Adj : propre** An, vurú An, saleté** pɛpɛ An - vurú means white, saleté means dirty

clean V : sukúla V - means esp. to wash

clean, be V : vurú V - means to be white

cleave V (together) : gbó tɛ́rɛ́ V - see seize

clergy N : 1. Protestant ordained pastor : pasteur** N
2. Catholic ordained priest : père** N

clerk N : an office employee, esp. in a government office : mbunzú vɔkɔ́ N - see bureaucrat

climb V : monter** V

close Adj : ndurú An - means also short

close V : kánga V - means also to tie, to fasten, to be closed

closed, be V : kánga V - means also to tie, to fasten, to close

cloth, clothing N : bɔngɔ́ N

cloud N : mbínda N - also means fog

coagulate V : gbó V, coller** V - see seize, harden, set, be firm

coal N : 1. glowing : lé tí wá N
2. embers : píndírí N
3. charcoal : charbon** N

coffee N : café** N

cogitate V : hạ́ V, b'anda V - see think

cold N : 1. a disease : kɔ́rɔ́ N
    2. temperature : dé N

cold, be or become : 1. general : dé V {the water is cold, or the water is becoming cold : ngú adé}
    2. to be cold (of weather) : ndo aɛkɛ dé (míngi), dé aɛkɛ (míngi), asára dé (míngi), dé alíngbi pɛpɛ - the last expression and the others with míngi are very emphatic expressions : it is very cold
    3. to become cold : gá dé V, mú dé V, wara dé V

collect V : bóngbi V - see also to gather, to assemble

colobus monkey N : ngui N - see also monkey

color N : 1. couleur** N
    2. the color system is as follows :
    red, orange, deep yellow, reddish brown are bingbá An - the same term followed by kété is a less intense shade of red, orange, or yellow, e.g. pink - reduplicated, it is bright red - black, dark gray, dark green, dark blue, purple, dark brown are vɔkɔ́ An - the same term followed by kété is gray or grayish shades of other colors - reduplicated, it is pitch black - white, light gray, light yellow, and other pastel tints are vurú An - followed by kété, the same term means light gray, and other pastel tints - reduplicated, it means bright white - more sophisticated speakers use French terms also

comb V : sɔa V

comb N : sɔa li N

come V : gá V {come here : mɔ gá na ndo só} - see also arrive, enter, bring, accompany, follow, approach

come into view V : sí gígí V - see appear

come out V : sí gígí V - see emerge

comfort V : wa (bɛ tí) V - see also warn, advise comforted, be V : bɛ́ ... gá nzoní V (I comforted him, so that he was comforted : mbi wa bɛ́ tí lo, sí bɛ́ tí lo agá nzoní)

command V : commander** V - means also to rule, to supervise

commence V : commencer** V - see begin

commercial center N : galá N - see also market

commit oneself to V : zía bɛ́ na - see trust, believe, covet, set one's heart on

community N : any organized and settled human community : kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́ N - hence, this means homestead, village, home, town, city, tribal community, nation - see also land, wilderness, field

companion N : 1. bosom friend : camarade** N, ndeko N
2. compatriot : mbá N
3. co-worker : fɔ́ N
4. friend : ndeko N
5. person having the same name as oneself : ndoé N
6. lover, mistress : ndeko N

compassion N : mawa N - also means pity, misery

compatriot N : mbá N - see companion

compel V : forcer** V - see also impel, propel, force, persuade

complain V : 1. to groan, to moan : bima V
2. to cry out : toto V
3. to protest, to object : dé kíté V - this last implies a more rational approach

complete Adj : kóé An - see all, entire

completed, be V : we V - see finished

compose V : (differences) : lɛkɛ tɛ́nɛ́ V, gá sóngó V, sára sóngó V, sára bɛ́ ɔ́kɔ V - see also reconcile, agree, have fellowship

comrade N : camarade** N, ndeko N - see companion

conceal V : hónde V - see hide

conceit N : baba N - see vanity

conceive V : become pregnant : mɛ́ ngɔ V - ngɔ is a foetus

concerning Prep : na lége tí CP - see also by means of, through

conclude V : on the basis of observation and reflexion : báa ... tɛnɛ V (I concluded that he had come : mbi báa mbi tɛnɛ lo gá awe)

concord N : siriri N - see peace

condemn V : 1. kɛ̨ V - means also refuse, reject
 2. fa ngbanga V - means also judge

conference N : conférence** N

confident, be : hínga ... tɛnɛ V (I was confident that he was there : mbi hínga mbi tɛnɛ lo ɛkɛ ká) - see be sure

connect V : tíngbi V - see join

conquer V : gagner** V - see defeat, wage war

conqueror N : lombé N - see hero

consequence N : fúta N - see recompense, retribution, wages

conserve V : bata V - means to keep, to protect

consider V : 1. penser** V, hą́ V, b'ànda V, gí bɛ́ V, báa V - see also to think, to ponder, to see
 2. hínga ... tɛnɛ V, báa ... tongana V - see also be confident

console V : wa bɛ́ V - see comfort, warn

constitute V : sára V - see make

consult V : 1. to ask : húndɛ V
 2. (worshipfully) : díkɔ V - see also read, count, pray, worship

container N : 1. small and deep : kopo N
 2. broad and shallow, a basin or platter : kolóngo N
 3. dish : sɛmbɛ́ N
 4. frying pan : gbara (búba) N
 5. pot, pan : ta N

6. basket : sakpá N
7. see also box, crate, chest

contemplate V : báa V - see see

contend V : 1. verbally : papa V - see quarrel
2. physically : tiri V - see fight

contest N : gbíma ndɔkɔ N - esp. a foot race

continue V : 1. continuer** V {continue your work : mɔ continuer kɔa tí mɔ} {continue to work : mɔ continuer tí sára kɔa}
2. ngbá V - means also to remain

control N : 1. ngangó An - see strength, power
2. ti N - see hand, authority

control V : exercise self-control : gbó tɛ́rɛ́ V - see seize, body

converse V : sára isɔrɔ́ V, sára tɛ́nɛ́ V, causer** V - see also to talk, to chat

cook V : 1. boil : tɔ́ V
2. fry : yɔ́rɔ V
3. roast : zɔ́ V - see burn

copulate V : 1. of human beings : gbá V - either sex may be the subject, the other then being the object
2. of animals : uru na ndó V, monter** (na ndó) V - only the male may be the subject, while the female is the object

cord N : kámba N - also means rope, string, vine, snare

cordiality N : ngiá N, bɛ́ ɔ́kɔ N - see also fellowship

corpse N : human dead body : kɔ́á N

correctly Adv : mbírímbírí An - also means straight, right

corrosion N : sɔ́kɔ N - see rust

corrugated metal N : tôle** N - see roofing

cost N : ngéré N - means also value, price costly Adj : cher** An - see expensive

cotton N : coton** N, tende N

cough V : tíkɔ V

counsel V : wa V - means also to warn, to comfort

count V : díkɔ V - see also read, consult, pray, worship

country N : 1. nation : kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́ N - see community
  2. land : sése N - see earth
  3. not a settled community : ngonda N - see wilderness

courthouse N : da tí ngbanga N - see judgment

cover V : (as a pot) : kánga V - see shut, tie

covet V : 1. zía bɛ́ V - means also to believe, to trust, to set one's heart on
  2. crave, desire : ɛkɛ na nzala V

cow N : wále (tí) bágara N - bágara means cattle, beef, bull, calf, ox, steer, etc. - see female

co-wife N : sambá N - see also wife

co-worker N : fɔ́ N - see companion

crave V : ɛkɛ na nzala V - see desire, covet

craving N : nzala N - see desire

crawl V : hára V

crazy Adj : búbá An - means foolish, senseless

crazy, be V : be demented : li ... tourner** V

create V : sára V - see make

creep V : hára V - also means to crawl

creeper N : a vine : kámba N - also means a cord, a snare

crocodile N : ngundé N

crooked Adj : kíríkiri An - this suggests something twisted, with several bends - see also be crooked

crooked, be V : ba V - also means to be bent, usually with a single major curvature

crop N : food crop : kóbe N

cross V : (as a river, etc.) : fáa {cross the river : fáa ngú} {cross the road : fáa lége} - also means to cut, to kill, to break

cross-bow N : mbanu N - see also bow

cross-roads N : croisement** N, sángbi lége N

crush V : 1. (as with roller) : nɛ V, nɛka V - nɛ means to bear down, to be heavy, to chew
2. to pound : pɛtɛ V

crushed, be V : ri V - this is the state resulting from nɛ to crush

curse V : zonga V

curse N : zonga N

cunning N : ndaráa N, manière** N - see skill

cure V : kái ... kobéla V - see heal

cushion N : kóli N

custom N : lége N - see manner

cut V : 1. fáa V {cut the grass : fáa péré} {cut up the onions : fáa yá tí oignon} {cut the rope : fáa kámba} - also means to kill, to break
2. split : súru V
3. chop : dé V
4. butcher : dɔrɔkɔ V

- D -

daily Adv : lá kóé N - means also always - reduplicated, it means forever

dam N : (built to catch fish) : ngbingbi N - see fish V

dance N : 1. general term : dɔ́dɔ́ N

  2. particular African dances : lengé N, ganzá N, sumári N

  3. European dances : coller** N, malínga N, nylon** N

dance V : dɔ́ (dɔ́dɔ́) V - the name of any dance can be used as the object - see also kick

dark Adj : vɔkɔ́ An - also means black, dirty

darkness N : time of darkness (not an abstract term) : bíngo N

date N : lá N, date** N - dates are expressed in French : names of days of the week, months of the year, and numbers - see also day, sun

daughter N : mɛ́rɛngɛ́ (tí) wále N - also means girl - see child

daughter-in-law N : term applied by a man to his daughter-in-law : wógará N

day N : 1. in all senses : lá N - also means sun - see also today, tomorrow, yesterday, always, date

  2. in counting days : lángó N {I stayed three days : mbi dutí lángó otá} - also means sleep

daylight N : lá N - also means sun, day

daytime N : lá N - also means sun, day

deafness N : mbongí N

deaf person N : wa mbongí N

death N : 1. in general : kɔ́á N {death took him : kɔ́á amú lo} {I am not afraid of death : mbito tí kɔ́á amú mbi pɛpɛ} - also means a dead human body

  2. an instance or act of death : kúi N {he paid damages for her death :

lo payer kúí tí lo} {there were ten deaths : kúí aɛkɛ bale ɔ́kɔ} - also means a dead animal body

debt N : 1.social obligation, esp. in traditional terms : kɔ́dá N
2. commercial debt : bon** N - see borrow, loan, buy on credit, incur debt

decide V : penser** V, choisir** V, tɛnɛ V - see think, choose, say

declare V : tɛnɛ V - see say

decompose V : foutu** V - see rot

decorate V : lɛkɛ pendere V, sára nzoní V

decrease V : diminuer** V

decree N : ndiá N - see law

decree V : lú ndiá V - see legislate

deep, be V : linda V - means also go down

defeat V : 1. gagner** V, hɔ̨́ V - see pass, win, conquer
2. overwhelm : kara V, hɔ̨́ ndó tí V - see overcome

defecate V : 1. literal : sára purú V
2. euphemism : goe (na) ngonda V - also means to urinate

defiled Adj : as a result of death : ngóngóá N - applies to the place where death occurs

delay N : hold back : hínga V

delight N : ngiá N - see joy - also means cordiality, fellowship

demand V : 1. ask : húnda V
2. call for : éré V

demented, be V : li ... tourner** V {he is demented : li tí lo atourner} - see also crazy, foolish

demolish V : 1. (a house) : lungúla ... na sése V
2 (something else, e.g. furniture) : kángbi yá ní V, kángbi pópó ní V

demonstrate V : fa V - means to show, to teach, to reveal demur V : dé kíté V - means to object, to doubt

deny V : (an accusation) : bɛlɛ (tɛ́nɛ́) V

depart V : 1. lóndó V - means also to rise
2. goe V - means also to go
3. zía V - means also to leave, to abandon
4. quitter** V - means also to leave

depend V : dépendre** V {that depends on you : só adépendre mɔ}

descend V : 1. linda V - means also to go down, to be deep
2. descendre** V

desire N : nzala N - means any kind of desire : appetite, lust, craving, hunger, thirst, urge

desire V : yí V - see want, like, love

desist V : zía V - see cease, leave

desk N : bureau** N

destroy V : buba V, foutu** V - mean to spoil, to ruin

develop V : 1. to grow : kɔnɔ V, mą́į V - see be big
2. (photographs) : sukúla (photo**) V - means also to wash

devil N : zábolo N

devious Adj : kiríkiri An - means crooked, evil

die V : kúí V

die N : (for gambling) : pátárá N - see gamble

different Adj : ndé An - reduplicated, it means various - see also other

difficulty N : ngangó An - see hard, strong

dig V : 1. shallowly, with hands : ása V
2. more deeply, with tool : zí V - the end purpose is usually to insert something into the hole
3. to pierce, to bore : kɔ́rɔ V

dignitary N : kótá zo N - means also elder, important person diminish V : diminuer** V - see also decrease

dip V : (liquid) : tó V - see also carry in container

dipper N : made of a half-gourd, and used for dipping and drinking water : kangú N

dirt N : saleté** An

dirty Adj : saleté** An, vɔkɔ́ An

disappointment N : vundú N - invariably colored by resentment and a desire for retaliation, since it is felt to be caused by personal ill-will or a personal insult or injury - when the injury is very great, as in death, sorrow is mixed with the resentment

discard V : bi ... na ngonda V - means to throw away

discern V : (another's thoughts and motives) : hínga bɛ́ tí V - see to know, to be acquainted intimately

discharge V : (from a job) : tomba (na kusára) (he discharged two men from work : lo tomba ázo óse na kusára) - see chase

discourage V : be V - see also annoy, bother

discover V : wara V - means to find, to get, to obtain

disembark V : ko V - means also to embark, to alight

disfigured, be V : mbɔ́kɔ V - means also to be bruised, to be ulcerated, to be bald

dish N : sɛmbɛ́ N

disorder N : kíríkiri An - means also crooked, evil

disorderly Adv : kíríkiri An, modifying a verb - also means perversely

dispatch V : to V, toka V - see to send

disposition N : temperament : bɛ́ N - means liver, personality, character

dispute V : papa V - see quarrel V

dispute N : papa N, tɛ́nɛ́ N - see also palaver, matter, affair ditch N : caniveau** N

divide V : kángbi V - see also cut

divination N : mbadi N - to practise divination is báa mbadi V, sára mbadi V - see also fortune telling

divorce V : 1. on husband's initiative : kę wále V, zía wále V, tomba wále V - see also reject, leave, chase
2. on wife's initiative : kę kɔ́li V, zía kɔ́li V, kpé kɔ́li V - see also run

do V : sára - means to act, to behave, to make

do again V : kírí V, followed by another verb {I said it again : mbi kírí mbi tɛnɛ} - see also again

doctor N : (medical) : docteur** N

document N : mbɛ́tí N, papier** N - see also paper

dog N : mbo N

done, be : we V - see finished

donkey N : lélé N

door N : yángá (tí da) N - means also mouth, opening, language

doubt N : kíté N - means also objection, expostulation - used esp. in dé kíté to doubt, to object

doubt V : dé kíté V - means also to object

doubtless Adv : manquer** pɛpɛ V - means : it cannot fail

dough N : made of manioc or mil flour, the staple food : kóbe N

down Adv : na gbɛ́ ní CP - also means under

drag V : gbɔ́tɔ V, kóso V - see also pull

drain V : (to separate solid from liquid) : passer** V - also means to strain, to sift, to pass

draw V : (liquid) : tó V - see carry in container dream N : súmá N, mosúmá N - dreams are one of the principal means by which shades of the ancestors communicate with the living

dream V : báa li V, báa súmá V

dried Adj : kúrú N {dried fish : kúrú tí susu} {dried meat : kúrú tí yąma} {dry land : kúrú sése} - see dry

drink V : yǫ̂ V - means also to suck, to smoke (tobacco)

drive V : (an automobile, an airplane, etc.) : conduire** V

driver N : (of a truck, etc.) : chauffeur** N

drop V : zía ... tí V - this means to permit to fall

drum N : ngɔ N

dry V : ole V - see also dried

dry season N : burú N, vurú ndo N

duiker N : (and possibly certain other small antelopes of the genus Cephalophus) : woga N

dumbness N : búburú N

dumb person N : wa búburú N

dump V : túku V - see tip,spill, pour

during Prep : tongana C - means when

duty N : tɛ́nɛ́ N, ngbanga N - see also matter, affair, business

dust N : pupu sése N

dwell V : lángó V - also means to sleep, to remain - see also to establish residence

dysentery, have V : sára purú na mɛ́nɛ́ V

- E -

each, each and every one Adj : ɔ́kɔ ɔ́kɔ An - see one

each other P : tɛ́rɛ́ N, used after a verb {they like each other : ála yí tɛ́rɛ́} - also means one another, selves

ear N : mɛ́ N

earhole N : dú tí mɛ́ N

earn V : 1. wara V - means also to get, to receive
2. tɛ (nginza) V - means to eat

earth N : sése N - also means soil, land, globe

easy Adj : ngangɔ́ pɛpɛ An - means not hard, weak

eat V : tɛ V - means also to bite with the incisors - tɛ kóbe V means to eat a full meal - see dough, food

edge N : yángá N - used esp. with na C - means also mouth, door, language

egg N : párá N - a chicken egg is párá kɔ́ndɔ N

eight Adj : miombe An

eland N : specifically, Derby's : báságbó N

elbow N : coude** N - see arm

elder N : kótá zo N - means an older person, a dignitary

elephant N : dole N

embark V : ko V - also means to alight, to disembark

embers N : píndírí N

embroil V : ngbúru V, followed by an object denoting a person

emerge V : sí gígí V - also means to appear, to come out

emotions N : see disposition, personality

employment N : kɔa N, kusára N - also means work enclosure N : 1. an area, usually inside a village : bála N

2. the fence or hedge surrounding the enclosure : gbágbá N

encounter V : 1. meet : té V

2. socially : báa V, báa lé tí V, báa tɛ́rɛ́ V - mean to see

encourage V : wa (bɛ́ tí) V - means also to comfort, to warn, to counsel

end N : ndá N - means also hips, lower back, buttocks, meaning

enemy N : wato N

enormous Adj : kótá kótá - see big

enough, be V : língbi V - see to suffice, to equal, to be able

enter V : li V, linda V - linda means also to go down

entice V : hánda V - means also to tempt, to bluff

entire Adj : kőe̋ - means all, whole

entirely Adv : kőe̋ An - means wholly, altogether

enumerate V : díkɔ V - see count, read, consult, pray

envy V : zía bɛ́ V - see also to covet, set one's heart on, believe

equal, be V : língbi V - means also to suffice, to be able

erase V : mbo V - means to wipe

erect V : to build : sára (da) V - see make, do

err V : dó gɛ́rɛ́ V - means to stub one's toe, to stumble

escape V : kp̣e V - means to run

especially Adv : ahǫ̋ kőe̋ - means it passes all

establish V : sára V - see build, make, do

European person N : mbunzú N

even, even if C : même** C, quand même** C - quand même** means also although, nevertheless

evening N : 1. sunset : lá kűí N

2. after sunset : bí N - means night

ever Adv : lá ɔ́kɔ N, mbɛ́ní lá N - see *one day*

every Adj : kóé An - means also *all*, *whole*

everybody, everyone P : zo kóé N

every day Adv : lǎ kóé N - means also *always* - reduplicated, it means every single day, *forever*

everything P : kóé An, kóé N

every which way Adv : kíríkiri An - means *crooked*, *disorderly*, *evil*

evil Adj : 1. sioní An - means bad

2. *crooked*, *perverse*, *devious* : kíríkiri An

examine V : (visually) : báa V - means to *see*

exceed V : 1. hǫ̂ ndó V - means to *surpass*, to *overcome*

2. língbi pɛpɛ V - means either to exceed or to be insufficient, since língbi means to be *equal*, to *suffice* exactly

excell V : hǫ̂ V - means to *pass*, to *surpass*, to *win*

exchange V : changer** V - means also to *change*

excrement N : purú N - see also *defecate*

excuse V : pardonner** V - also means to *forgive*

excuse N : pardon** N - also means an *apology*, an ingratiating plea

exhale V : 1. hú mbóo V - this means to *breathe*, to *blow* with mouth

2. audibly : gío bɛ́ V - means to *sigh*, to *gasp*, esp. in dying

exhaust V : (a supply of something) : húnzi V - means to *finish*, to *cause to disappear*

exhausted, be V : húnzi,V, we V - see *finished*

exist V : du V - see to *be*

expect V : kú V - means to *wait*, to *hope*

expensive Adj : cher** An - means also *costly*

expensive, be : ngéré ... ɛke ngangó V - this means the price is *hard*, i.e. high experience V : báa V, dutí na V - see to see, to sit

expire V : gío bɛ́ V - means to exhale audibly, to sigh, to gasp, as in dying

explain V : 1. fa V - means to show, to teach, to demonstrate
    2. more fully : fa ndá tí V - means to explain the meaning

expostulate V : dé kíté V - means to object, to doubt

expostulation N : kíté N - means also doubt, objection

extinguish V : míngɔ V

eye N : lé N - also means face, surface, presence

eye brow N : ngeki lé N

eye lash N : kɔ́á lé N

- F -

fabric N : bɔngɔ́ N - also means clothing

fabricate V : sára V - also means do, act, behave, make, affect

face N : lé N - also mean eye

face to face Adv : lé na lé N

fail V : manquer** V - with the negative marker pɛpɛ, it means doubtless

fall V : tí V

fame N : húngó N - from hú V to spread

familiar, be V : hínga kóé V - also means to understand

family N : famille** N - see also sibling, brother, sister, father, mother, aunt, uncle, grandfather, grandmother, child, son, daughter, ancestor, husband, wife, father-in-law, brother-in-law, son-in-law, daughter-in-law, grandchild - the plural is used in a collective sense to mean the members of the family

famous, be or become V : 1. vú V (their names were not famous : éré tí ála avú pɛpɛ) - possibly related to vurú be white
2. hú V - means also to spread

fan palm N : 1. koróngo N
2. a false bamboo : bambou** N

far Adj, Adv : yɔngɔ́rɔ An - also means long, tall

far, be V : yɔ́ V - also means to be long

fascinate V : hánda V - means to entice, to lure, to tempt, to tease

fast Adv : fadé Av, híɔ Av - see also soon

fasten V : 1. tíngbi V - means to join, to unite
2. kánga V - means to tie, to close

fat N : mafuta N - means oil, grease

fat Adj : mafuta N

father N : biological, social, or honorific : babá N - also means father's brothers, and members of father's clan - see family, uncle

father-in-law N : kógará N - this refers to all male in-laws, and is used reciprocally

fear N : mbito N - this means apprehension, fright, dread, terror- used with verbs meaning to affect and to seize, depending on the strength of the feeling

fear V : kpé mbito V - see also to run

feather N : kɔ́á tɔ́ ndɛkɛ N - kɔ́á is hair

featherbedding N : mbáná N - means laziness, malingering, willful idleness

feeder stream N : mɛ́rɛngɛ́ tí ngú N - lit. child of river

feel, feel that V : báa V - means to see

feel about V : (as blind person) : tatara ndo V - means to grope

fellowship N : 1. cordiality : ngiá N - means also amiability, fun, joy, amusement

2. bɛ́ ɔ́kɔ N - means unity of feeling - see also peace

fellowship, have V : sára bɛ́ ɔ́kɔ V - see also reconcile

female N : wále N - means also woman, wife

fence N : gbágbá N - means also hedge, enclosure

ferment V : kpí V - also means to sour, to be sour

ferry N : bac** N

festival N : matánga N - see also holiday, celebration

fetish N : 1. general term : yoró N - means also medicine, talisman, charm, poison

2. a particular fetish : ngaánga N

fever N : kobéla tí wá N - see sickness, heat fever, get or have V : tɛ́rɛ́ ... mú wá V {he has a fever : tɛ́rɛ́ tí lo amú wá}

fib N : vɛnɛ N, wátáká N - see lie

field N : yáká N - also means garden, plantation, plot, any cultivated area
2. prescribed size for cotton field, in the days of compulsory cultivation : piquet** N

fight V : 1. physically : tiri V - also means to wrestle, to strive, to contend, to struggle
2. verbal : papa V - means to quarrel, to dispute
3. war, battle : píka berá V
4. attack : goe berá na li tí V, tí na ndó V, attaquer** V

fight N : tiri N - more properly fighting, a noun of action

fill V : sí V - also means to be full

find V : wara V - means also to get, to obtain, to receive

finger N : kété mabɔ́kɔ N - see hand

fingernail N : nzɛnɛ́ N, nzɛnɛ́ tí mabɔ́kɔ N - also means claw

finish V : 1. bring to completion : sára sí awe V
2. exhaust a supply : húnzi V - means also to cause to disappear

finished, be V : 1. to be completed : we V {my speech is finished :tɛ́nɛ́ tí mbi awe} action antecedent to the context and denoted by a preceding verb
2. to be exhausted : húnzi V - means also to cause to disappear

fire N : wá N - also means heat, hot

fire V : discharge : tomba na kusára V

fire engine N : ville de Bangui** N

fireman N : da gbí N - see house, burn

firewood N : kéké tí wá N

firm, be or become V : gbó V, coller** V - also mean to harden, to set, to jell, to coagulate first Adj, Adv : kózo (ní) An

fish N : 1. all kinds : susu N
    2. Nile perch : capitaine** N
    3. small fish used in making sauces : gugúrú N
    4. fresh fish : finí susu N
    5. dried fish : kúrú tí susu N

fish V : gí susu V - see hunt

fishhook N : yángó N

fist N · ngobo N, coup-de-poing** N

fit V : língbi na V - also means to suffice, to be equal, to be able

five Adj : ukú An

five francs N : páta N

fix V : lɛkɛ V - a very general verb meaning to prepare, to repair, arrange, to organize, to establish

flank N : tɛ́rɛ́ N - also means body

flat Adj : applied to dishes and land : kpángbálá An

flee V : 1. run : kpé V
    2. flee for fear : kpé mbito V

flesh N : in opp. to bone or blood : mi N, mi tɛ́rɛ́ N

fling V : throw : bi V

flood N : mɔa N

flour N : fúku N - applies specifically to edible flour or meal of manioc or mil, but also means powder in general

flow V : as a river : sɔa V
    2. as blood in the veins : gara V
    3. leak : yuru V

flower N : ndɔ́kɔ́ N - see also bloom

flunky N : 1. domestic : kété bɔ́i N, marmiton** N

2. truck driver's apprentice : apprenti** N, bata kóngbá N

fly N : voma N

fly V : uru V - also means to jump, to hop

foam N : fúlu N - also means froth

foetus N : ngɔ N - see also conceive, abort

fog N : mbínda N - also means cloud

fold V : 1. as clothes : ngombi V

2. bend, break, as a stick : kúngbi (yá ní) V

follow V : 1. emphasizing the person being followed as goal : gá na pɛkɔ́ V {he followed me : lo gá na pɛkɔ́ tí mbi} - see come

2. emphasizing a close personal relationship between follower and followed - mú pɛkɔ́ V {he followed Jesus, he became a disciple of Jesus : lo mú pɛkɔ́ tí Jesus} - see take

3. emphasizing the point of departure, or the relative detachment of the speaker : goe na pɛkɔ́ V - see go

food N : 1. general : kóbe N

2. the staple dough or mush of mil or manioc flour : kóbe N

3. prepared dishes : kóbe N

4. the sauce which accompanies the dough : kása N

5. various kinds of snacks sold ready to eat : makala N, mangbéré N, čacǎ N, etc.

foolish Adj : búbá An - also means crazy

foolishness N : mbáná N - also means laziness, featherbedding, idleness, malingering

foot N : 1. general : gérɛ́ N - also means leg, paw, wheel, tire

2. sole of foot : séndá tí gérɛ́ N - also means footprint

3. of tree or plant : gondá N

footprint N : sédá tí gérɛ́ N - also means sole of foot

foot race N : gbíma ndɔkɔ N

for Prep : 1. general : na C - means and, but, with, by, in, at, to, from
    2. followed by an expression of goal or purpose : ngbangatí C, tɛnɛtí C

force N : strength : ngangó An - also means hard, violent, strong

force V : forcer** V - see also compel, persuade, impel.

forehead N : ndó lé N

foreskin N : pitó N - see also penis

forest N : 1. tree(s) : kéké N - also means wood, stick, pole
    2. gallery forest : gbakó N

forever Adv : always, daily : lá kóé N - usually reduplicated to mean forever

forget V : girísa V - means to lose, also to be lost, to be forgotten

forgive V : pardonner** V - also means to excuse, to pardon

forgotten, be V : girísa V - also means to be lost, to lose, to forget

formerly Adv : 1. recent past : ándo Av, used post-verbally
    2. remote past : giriri Av, used post-verbally or pre-clausally
    3. first : kózo (ní) An

fornicate V : sára pitą́ą V - also means to commit adultery

fornication N : pitą́ą N - also means adultery

for quite a while Adv : 1. past time orientation : depuis** Av {I have been doing it for quite a while : mbi sára depuis}
    2. neutral or future time orientation : ngbii Av, jusqu'à** Av {cook it for quite a while : mɔ tɔ́ ngbii}

fortune telling N : zéké N {he stole money by fortune telling : lo nzí nginza na zéké} - see also divination

foundation N : (of a house) 1. general : gɛ́rɛ́ tí da N - see foot
    2. kɔtɔ N - a traditional form made of beaten earth and about a foot high, formerly prevalent among some peoples, e.g. the Kąrę

four Adj : osió An

frame N : (of roof) : gángárá N - see roof franc N : franc** N - in counting francs, French numerals are usually used - see also five francs

free Adj : séngé An - see without

friend N : ndeko N - see companion

fright N : mbito N - see fear

fritter N : made of European flour, fried in deep fat, and sold with a filling of either hot pepper or sugar : makala N - see snack

frock N : boubou** N - means a long, full-bodied shirt such as is worn by many Muslims

frog N : kɔ́ngba N, bíanga N

from Prep : na C - also means and, but, to, for, at, in, with, by

from it Adv : used only post-verbally : da Av - also means to it, in it, there

front N : devant** N - usually used in na devant (tí/ní) CP in front

froth N : fúlu N - esp. froth coming from the mouth - also means foam

fruit N : (of plants) : lé N, lé tí kéké N, léngó N - léngó means harvest, yield - lé means seed

fry V : yɔ́rɔ V - see also cook

frying pan N : gbara N, gbara búba N

full, be V : sí V - also means to fill

fun N : ngiá N - also means play, fellowship, cordiality, joy

fur N : kɔ́á N - means hair

futilely Adv : gbá Av - means in vain

fuzz N : (as on caterpillar) : 1. kíi N - means also thorn, bristle
2. kɔ́á N - means also hair

- G -

gad about V : fɔnɔ V

gain V : 1. win : gagner** V

2. earn : wara V, tɛ (nginza) V - see also receive, eat

gallery forest N : gbakó N - these forest strips along rivers provide the only large trees in the savanna region

gamble V : (with dice) : píka pátárá V

gap N : dú N - means a hole

garden N : yáká N - means a field, a plantation, a plot, an orchard

garlic N : ail** N

garment N : bɔngɔ́ N - also means cloth

gasp V : gío bɛ́ V - also means to exhale audibly, to sigh, as in expiring

gather V : 1. general : bóngbi V - means to assemble, to meet

2. gather together for common purpose : bóngbi li tí V, bóngbi tɛ́rɛ́ V

3. pick up scattered items : lɔ V

gathering N : bóngbi N - means an assembly, meeting

gentleman N : monsieur** N - also means Mr., sir

gently Adv : 1. softly, quietly : doucement** Av - can be reduplicated

2. slowly, gradually : yeke yeke Av

genuine Adj : taá An - means true

germinate V : kó V

get V : 1. to take : mú V, kamáta V

2. to find, to obtain, to receive : wara V

get up V : arise : lóndó V

gift N : cadeau** N, matabísi N - also means a tip, a bribe giraffe N : kólo N

girl N : 1. mérɛngɛ́ (tí) wále N - see also woman, child, daughter
2. unmarried : see unmarried girl

give V : 1. general : mú V - means also to receive, to take
2. (food) : fú (kóbe) V - means to break a mouthful from the mass of dough and shape it with the fingers before putting it into the mouth - parents do this for their small children, hence the meaning of to give

give birth V : bear, beget : dú V - means also to be born

give heed V : 1. má V - means to hear
2. pay attention, listen : gengi mɛ́ V

gladness N : ngiá - means also joy, fun, fellowship, cordiality

glass N : (a pane or sheet) : tatara N - means also mirror

gnash teeth V : tɛ pɛ́mbɛ́ V - see to bite, tooth

go V : 1. to walk : tambéla V - used also of machinery operating
2. goe V - means also to leave

go across V : (a river, etc.) : fáa V - means to cut, to kill, to break, to cross

go around V : ngɔ́rɔ V - means to surround, to circle

goat N : ngása N

go back V : kírí V - means to return

God N : Nzapá N - originally probably a traditional sky-god

go down V : linda V - means also to be deep

good Adj : 1. nzoní An - a very general term meaning also nice
2. better : nzoní ahɔ̨́
3. best : nzoní ahɔ̨́ kóé

good-by, good luck I : 1. from person remaining to person going : goe nzoní
2. from person going to person remaining : dutí nzoní
3. see greeting

goods N : possessions, merchandise : kóngbá N - also means load, burden, bundle

go on V : hɔ̨́ V - also means to pass

gospel N : tɛ́nɛ́ nzoní N - a Protestant neologism

go up V : monter** - see climb

gourd N : 1. made into bottle : ngángá N
    2. made into dipper : kangú N

govern N : commander** V - also means to command, to order, to rule, to supervise

government N : gouvernement** N - see also administration

grab V : gbó V - see also seize

gradually Adv : slowly, gently : yeke yeke Av

granary N : gɔgɔrɔ N

grandchild N : áta N - also means grandmother

grandfather N : kaká N - also means male ancestor

grandmother N : áta N, tará N - the terms are also used to mark respect in addressing an older woman - áta also means grandchild

grant V : agree : yí V, yí da V, yí pɛkɔ́ V - also mean want, accept
    2. give : mú V - also means take

grasp V : 1. seize : gbó V
    2. understand : hínga ndá V

grass N : 1. generic term : péré N
    2. roofing grass : bebé N
    3. reed : sɔsɔngɔ N
    4. coarse, tough grass used to make baskets : nzanza N

gratuity N : cadeau** N, matabísi N - mean gift, tip, bribe

gray Adj : 1. dark : vɔkɔ́ kété An - see black, color
    2. light : vurú kété An - see white, color

grease N : mafuta N - also means oil, fat

great Adj : big, important : kótá An

green Adj : vɔkɔ́ kété An, vert** An - see color

greens N : various wild or cultivated edible leaves ; gbụtu N, gúsá N, dawai N, kɔkɔ N, ngunẓá N, ngágo N

greet V : bara V

greeting N : 1. upon first meeting : bara o, (mbi) bara mɔ (nzoní)
2. after first greeting ; mɔ ɛkɛ (séngé) ?
3. upon parting, the person remaining to the person going : (mɔ) goe nzoní (o)
4. upon parting, the person going to the person remaining : (mɔ) dutí nzoní (o)

grieve V : sɔ bɛ́ V (this thing grieves me : yí só asɔ bɛ́ tí mbi) - see hurt, sorrow

grip V : seize : gbó V

groan V : complain, moan ; bima V

grope V : (as a blind person) : tatara ndo V

ground N : sése N - also means earth, soil, land

grow V : 1. develop : mậɨ V - refers to maturation ; to mature
2. to grow up, be big ; kɔnɔ V - refers esp. to physical growth in size

growth N : kɔ́nɔ́ngɔ́ N - see also size

gruel N : thin mush : pɔtɔpɔ́tɔ N - also means mud

guard V : bata V - means to keep, to protect

guile N : malin** N, manière** N - also mean skill, ability

guinea fowl N : kombá N

guitar N : traditional : kunde N

gulp V : mɛnɛ V - means to swallow whole gun N : ngombe N

gunpowder N : mbúlú N - see also powder

- H -

hair N : 1. general term ; kɔ́á N - also means *fur*, *fuzz*, *bristle*, *feather*
2. of head ; kɔ́á (tí) li N
3. *eye lash* : kɔ́á lé N
4. *beard* : kɔ́á ngbagba N
5. *moustache* : kɔ́á yángá N
6. body hair ; kɔ́á tí tɛ́rɛ́

half, halfway point N ; moitié** N

half-heartedly, act V ; sára na mabɔ́kɔ óse V

hand N : 1. mabɔ́kɔ N, ti N - also means *arm*, *handle*, *wrist* - ti is used to refer to the grasping or holding action of the hand, hence to *authority* or *power*
2. right ; gati N, mabɔ́kɔ tí kɔ́li N
3. left : koti N, mabɔ́kɔ tí wále N

handsome Adj ; pendere An - means also *beautiful*, *young*

hang V : (to execute) ; tó gɔ́ lo na kámba V

happen V : 1. *arrive* ; sí V
2. *pass* : passer** V

happiness N ; ngiá N - also means *joy*, *fun*, *fellowship*, *cordiality*

happy, be or become V : wara ngiá V

hard Adj : 1. ngangó An - also means *strong*
2. kpíngbángó N - see *harden*

harden V : 1. kpíngba V - can also mean to *mature*
2. *set*, *jell*, *thicken* ; gbó V, coller** V

hardness N : ngangó An - also means *strength*

hare N ; ndarangba N - also means *rabbit* harm V : sɔ V - see hurt

harmonize V : sára sóngó V, sára bɛ́ ɔ́kɔ V - see also reconcile, compose

harmony N : (interpersonal) : siriri N - see peace

hartebeest N : kángá N - also applies to the sassaby and related antelopes of the genera Alcephalus and Damaliscus

harvest N : léngó (tí yáká) N - see also fruit, yield

hat N : kpoto N, chapeau** N

hatchet N : dɔ́ N - means an ax - see also tool

have V : possess : ɛkɛ na V {one has a hat : lo ɛkɛ na kpoto}

have a good appetite V : wara yángá tí tɛ kóbe V, yángá ... nzɛrɛ tí tɛ kóbe V - both can be used in the negative

have fellowship V : sára ngiá V - means to chat, to play, to have fun

he P : lo P - also means she, him, her, his, hers - see I for the pronominal system

head N : li N - also means top

headkerchief N : síliki N

hear V : má V - means also to listen, to pay attention, to understand

heart N : 1. anatomical : coeur** N

2. seat of personality : bɛ́ N - means the liver

heat N : wá N - also means fire

heat V : chauffer** V

heaven N : yáyú N - see also sky, air

heaviness N : nɛ́ngó N - also means weight, thickness

heavy, be V : nɛ V - means also to bear down, to crush, to chew

hedge N : gbágbá N - means also a fence, an enclosure

help V : aider** V - also means to aid, to assist hemp N : marijuana ; mbange N

hen N : (wále) kɔ́ndɔ N - see chicken

her, hers P ; see he

here Adv : ge Av, na ndo só CP

hero N : lombé N - means a valiant man, a conqueror

hide V ; hónde V

high Adj : long : yɔngɔ́rɔ An

highway N ; lége N - means a path, a road, a way

hill N : hɔ́tɔ́ N - means also mountain

him P : see he

hinder V : 1. kánga V - also means to obstruct, to tie, to fasten
2. prevent : gbánzi V

hippopotamus N : kɔnɔ́ N

hip N : ngbundá N, ndá N - means also lower back, buttocks

his P : see he

hit V ; píka V - means to strike, to pound, to beat

hoe N : traditional agricultural tool ; kpɔ́kɔ N, ngáfó N - made by the blacksmith of iron - see tool

hoe-handle N : kóngo N - also means mallet for pounding manioc

hog N : cochon** N - see pig

hold V : grip, seize ; gbó V

hold back V ; refrain, stop short, delay ; nínga V

hole N : dú N

holiday N : 1. legal or religious ; fête** N
2. celebration, festival : matánga N
3. vacation ; vacances** N, congé** N

home N : 1. house : da N
    2. homestead, settlement : kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́ N - see community

homestead N : kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́ N - see community

honey N : ngú lavú N, mafuta tí wótoro N - the latter can also be beeswax - see bee

honor V : 1. gonda V - means to praise a person
    2. sepála V - means to praise God

hope V : kú V - means also to wait

horn N : (of animal) : dede N, nzá N - also used of musical horn

horse N : mbarata N

hospital N : hôpital** N

hot, be or become V : 1. general : gá wá V, mú wá V, wara wá V
    2. of weather : sára wá V, ndo aɛkɛ wá V

hour N : heure** N - see time

house N : da N - means any kind of building

how Adv : tongana yɛ̨ CP

how many, how much Adj : ɔ́kɛ An

huge Adj : kótá míngi An - see big, important

human being N : zo N - see person

hundred N : ngbangbu N

hunger N : nzala N - means any kind of desire, appetite, urge, thirst

hungry, be : 1. nzala ... sára V
    2. stronger : kúí nzala V - means to starve, to die of hunger

hunt V : 1. general : gí V - means to seek, to search, to hunt for, to investigate
    2. (game) : gí yąma V
    3. fish : gí susu V

hurl V : bi V - means to throw

hurry V : zía lɔ́rɔ́ da V - see speed

hurt V : sɔ V {my head hurts : li tí mbi asɔ} {this sore hurts me : ká só asɔ mbi} - also means to ache, to pain, to harm

husband N : kɔ́li N - usually with a specifying complement - also means man, male

hush V : 1. kái V
2. to be quiet : dutí kpó V

hush I : su I - means stop what you are about to do - addressed to a child

husk N : (of grain) ; kakó N - also means pod, or any part of grain that is discarded, chaff

hyena N : b'ɔngɔ́ N

- I -

I P : mbi P - mbi P - means also me, my, mine - the pronominal system is as follows :

	Singular	Plural
1.	mbi	í (Protestant missions áni)
2.	mɔ	ála (Catholic missions *é)
3.	lo	ála (missions í)

idle, be V : dutí V, dutí séngé V - see sit, without

idleness N : 1. laziness : goigói N

2. willful idleness, malingering : mbáná N

if C : 1. tongana C - also means when, like

2. ádu ní, ádu títεnε - used pre-clausally in conditions contrary to fact

ignite V : 1. (fire, things) : gbí V - see burn

2. set fire : zɔ́ V - also means to burn, to roast

illness N : kobéla N, malade** N - see also ailment

illustration N : photo** N - means primarily a photograph, a picture

immediately Adv : 1. fafadesó Av - used pre-clausally or post-verbally - this is fadesó now reduplicated

2. fafadé Av - used pre-clausally only, as an emphatic future marker - this is fadé the future marker reduplicated

3. see also soon

impel V : pousser** V - means also to push, to propel, to compel, to incite

important Adj : kótá An - means also big, superior

imprison V : kánga V - also means to tie, to shut, to fasten

impure Adj : see defiled

in Prep 1. general : na C - means also and, but, to, for, at, from, with, by

2. inside : na yá CP

in addition to Prep : na ndó tí/ní CP, na li tí/ní CP - also mean over, above

inadequate, be V : língbi pɛpɛ V - lingbi means to suffice, to be equal, to be able

in back of Prep : na pɛkɔ́ (tí/ní) CP - also behind, after

incense N : yambo N - also means perfume

incisor N : kété pɛ́mbɛ́ N - see also tooth

incite V : 1. general : pousser** V - means to push, to impel, to propel
2. (an animal, e.g. a dog) : dará V

increase N : (in agriculture) : léngó N - see harvest, yield, fruit

incur debt V : sára bon** V - also means buy on credit, borrow

indiscriminately Adv : kíríkiri An - see crooked, disorderly

indeed Adv : bíakú Av, bíaní Av - see truly, certainly

infant N : kété mɛ́rɛngɛ́ N - see child

in front of Prep : 1. in general : na devant** (tí/ní) CP - see before

2. (of persons) : na gbɛ́ lé CP, na lé tí/ní CP
3. (as of a parade) : na li tí/ní CP - means also on top of

ingenuity N : ndaráa N - means also skill, wisdom

inhabitant N : zo tí (kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́) N, wa tí (kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́) N - with an object rather than the name of a community, wa means owner - with the name of a trait or quality, wa means a person characterized by that trait

injection N : (hypodermic) : piqûre** N

ink N : encre** N, ngú tí mbɛ́tí N - the latter is not common

in order to Prep : tí C, ngbangatí C, tɛnɛtí C, followed by a verb

inquire V : ask : húnda V

insert V : yɔ́rɔ V - also means to thrust inside Prep, Adv : na yá tí/ní CP

instead of Prep : na place** tí CP - means in the place of

institute V : sára V - see make

instructor N : 1. general : moniteur** N - see teacher
    2. religious, catechist : catechiste** N

insufficient, be V : língbi pɛpɛ V - língbi means to suffice, to be equal, to be able

intelligence N : ndaráa N - also means skill, wisdom - see personality

interfere vocally V : bi yángá V

intestines N : yá N - see abdomen, stomach

in that place Adv : da Av - also means to that place, from that place, there - used post-verbally only

in the center of Prep : na ndó bé CP - this suggests the middle of a flat surface, as a table

in the manner of Prep : na lége tí CP - also means by means of, concerning

in the midst of Prep : na pópó CP, na milieu** CP

into it Adv : da Av - means also in that place, to that place, from that place, there - used only post-verbally

invite V : 1. call : éré V - means also to summon
    2. ask : húnda V

iror V : passer** V

iron N : wɛ̨́ N

island N:zɔa N

issue N : tɛ́nɛ́ N, ngbanga N - see also affair, matter, problem

itch N : scabies : sárá N

- J -

jail N : kánga N, da tí kánga N - see shut, imprison

jaw N : (lower) : ngbagba N - means the whole mandible, the chin

jell V : set, harden : gbó V, coller** V

job N : kusára N, kɔa N - see work

join V : (things together) : tíngbi V - means also to fasten, to unite

journey V : tambéla V - see walk, travel

joy N : ngiá N - arises out of good interpersonal relationships : fellowship, cordiality, fun

judge V : fáa ngbanga V - means to arbitrate, to make a judicial decision

jug N : a demi-john : dame-jeanne** N - holds five to twenty quarts

jump V : uru V - also means to fly

just Adj : mbírimbírí An - also means straight, right

just Adv : only : gí Au - precedes the word which it modifies

just a little more : (temporal expression) : ngbá kété V - used pre-clausally

just a moment later : (temporal expression) : yí tí báa ndo V - use pre-clausally

just any Adj : (in the sense of : without proper credentials, not properly selected, indiscriminate) : kírikiri An (not just anyone should take this medicine : zo kírikiri alíngbi tí mú yoró só pɛpɛ)

justly Adv : mbírimbírí An - also means straight, right

just now Adv : fafadesó Av - this is fadesó reduplicated - it is used pre-clausally - also means immediately

- K -

keen, be V : zá V - also means to be sharp, to shine

keep V : bata V - means to preserve, to conserve, to protect, to watch

kettle N : ta N - see also pot

key N : clé** N, mérɛngɛ́ tí clé** N

kick V : dɔ́ V - also means to stamp, to stub one's toe, to stumble, to dance, to shake, to tremble

kid V : hánda V - also means to entice, to tempt, to bluff

kill V : 1. general : fáa V - also means to cut, to break
    2. (animals, in hunting) : píka V - also means to hit, to beat, to strike

kind N : sort : qualité** N, mará N - the latter is a general classificatory term meaning also type, tribe

kindle V : tínga wá V - see also burn

king N : gbíá N - see also chief

kitchen flunky N : kété bɔ́i N, marmiton** N

knee N : genou** N, kuní N - the latter is less common

kneel V : kuku V, zúku V - the latter means also to bow

knife N : 1. general : zɛmbɛ N - see tool
    2. throwing knife : ríga N
    3. machete : coupe-coupe** N, kpangbala N, nzenze N

knock down V : kinda V - means also to trip

know V : 1. general : hínga V
    2. thoroughly : hínga kóé V
    3. know how : hínga lége V

kob N : a medium-sized antelope of the genus Adenota : tágba N

- L -

labor N : kusára N, kɔa N - see work

labor V : 1. general : sára kusára V, sára kɔa V - see work
2. have labor pains : góá ... tɛ V (she is having labor pains : góá atɛ lo)

laborer N : 1. general : zo tí kusára N
2. unskilled : manoeuvre** N

lacking, be V : manquer** V - also means to be absent, to fail

lady N : 1. married : madame** N - also means madam, Mrs.
2. single : mademoiselle** N - also means Miss

lake N : ngú N - means also water, river, rain, year

lament V : 1. to complain : bima V - means to moan, to groan
2. to cry, to mourn : toto V

lamp N : lampe** N, wá N - the latter refers to fire or any kind of light or heat

land N : sése N - also means earth, soil

language N : yángá N - also means mouth, opening, door, edge

lantern N : lamp : lampe** N

large Adj : kótá An - see big, important, great, wide, thick

large amount N : (of money) : kótá An, míngi An - see big, much

last Adj : tí ndá ní CP

late Adv : retard** Av

later Adv : 1. ánde Av, fadé Av, híɔ Av - all used post-verbally - the latter two also mean quickly, soon
2. na pɛkɔ́ (tí/ní) CP, na ndá (tí/ní) CP - used pre-clausally - also

mean next - without na, mean subsequently, following

laterite, lateritic plateau N : lakéré N - by extension, means any large flat rock on which women pound manioc to make flour

laugh V : 1. general : hé ngiá V
2. laugh at, mock : hé V, followed by an object

law N : ndiá N - also means ordinance, degree, rule

lay V : zía V - also means put, leave, permit

lay leader N : (in a Christian context) : catéchiste** N - see instructor

lay waste V : buba V, foutu** V - also means to spoil, to rot, to ruin

laziness N : 1. simple inertia or idleness : goigói N
2. malicious, willful, dishonest laziness : mbáná N

lead V : fa lége V - see also show, teach, demonstrate

leaf : (of plant, or of paper) :kugbé N

leak V : yuru V - also means to seep

lean V : 1. stoop : ba V - see bend
2. to one side : dénge V

leap V : uru V - also means to jump, to fly

learn V : manda V

leave V : 1. to go : goe V
2. depart : quitter** V, lóndó V - this last means to arise
3. abandon : zía V - also means to put, to relinquish
4. mú lége V - means to start off
5. often a combination of lóndó and goe, or mú lége and goe

left hand N : gati N, mabóko tí wále N

leftover N : tanga N, ndámbu N - see remainder

left over, be V : ngbá V - see also remain, continue

left side N : mbáge tí wále N

leg N : gɛ́rɛ́ N - also means foot

legislate V : lú ndiá V - also means to decree, to ordain

legislator N : député** N

lend V : gɛngi V (?) - see listen

leopard N : zɛ N

leopard man N : zo tí zɛ N

leper N : zo tí buruma N, zo tí ngiba N, wa ngiba N

leprosy N : buruma N, ngiba N

let V : permit : zía V, zía lége na V - see also put

letter N : lettre** N, mbɛ́tí N - the latter also means paper, book

lid N : (of kettle) : yí tí kánga yángá tí ta wę N

lie V : 1. recline : sɛ́ tɛ́rɛ́ V
    2. sleep, rest : lángó V
    3. tell untruth : sára vɛnɛ V, tɛnɛ vɛnɛ V, sára wátáká V, tɛnɛ wátáká V

lie N : vɛnɛ N, wátáká N

life N : finí N

lift V : mú na ndúzú V, gbó na ndúzú V, yó V - see also carry

light N : wá N, lumière** N - the first means also fire, heat

light V : Kindle : tínga wá V, sára wá V

like V : yí V - see also want, love

like Prep : tongana C - also means when, if

like this Adv : tongasó Av - also means thus, so

lime N : made by roasting oyster shells : mbamba N

lion N : bámará N

lip N : póró tí yángá N - see mouth

liquid N : ngú N - primarily means water - see also honey, tear, rain, latex, ink, milk, pus, semen

listen V : pay attention : má V, gɛngi mɛ́ V - the first means to hear

little Adj : kété An - also means small, narrow, thin

little by little Adv : yeke yeke Av - means gradually, slowly

little later, a Adv : yí tí báa ndo V - used pre-clausally

live V : 1. exist : du V
2. reside : dutí V, lángó V - see sit, sleep, dwell
3. establish permanent residence : sára kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́ V

liver N:both anatomically and as seat of the personality : bɛ́ N

lizard N : 1. gray : katá N
2. monitor lizard : mbáráwárá N

load N : a one-man load : kóngbá N - also means bundle, burden, package, goods, possessions, merchandise

loaded, be V : yɔ́ kóngbá V - see carry

loan, take out V : sára bon** V, hûnda bon** V - see also borrow, buy on credit

lobe N : (of ear) : mɛ́ N - also means ear

lock N : clé** N, mamá tí clé** N

long Adj : 1. spatially : yɔngɔ́rɔ An - also means tall, far
2. temporally : yɔngɔ́rɔ An, used after a verb

long, ve V : yɔ V - either horizontally or vertically : be far, be tall

long time Adv : jusqu'à** Av, ngbii Av - used post-verbally - ngbii can be reduplicated, or both can be used together for emphasis

long time ago Adv : giriri Av - see also formerly

look V : 1. see : báa V
2. hunt for : gí V
3. look for a way : gí lége V
4. look here! : (mɔ) báa V

look like V : resemble : kpa V

loosen V : zí V - means also to untie, to release, to remove

lose V : 1 general : girísa V - means also to be lost, to forget, to be forgotten
   2. (a relative by death) : perdre** V

lost, be V : girísa V - also means to lose, to forget, to be forgotten

love V : 1. like : yí V - also means to want
   2. stronger : bɛ́ ... yí V
   3. mutually : yí tɛ́rɛ́ V

lover N : esp. illegitimate : ndeko N - means also friend, mistress

lower V : zía na gbɛ́ ní V, descendre** na sése V, ba na sése V - the first means to put, the last means to bend

lower part N : gbɛ́ N - used in expressions like under, below

lung N : fúfú N

lure V : hánda V - also means to tempt, to entice, to bluff, to kid

lust N : nzala N - means any kind or degree of desire

- M -

machete N : coupe-coupe** N, kpangbala N, nzenze N - see tool

madam N : madame** N - also means Mrs., lady

magazine N : (a journal) : mbɛ́tí N - also means paper, book, letter

maggot N : ngusú N - also means chigger

maize N : nzo N, gbánza N

make V : 1. sára - this is a very general verb meaning to do, to act, to behave, to manufacture, to fabricate, to create, to build, to establish, etc. - many more specific meanings are determined by the object or complement
2. manufacture, fabricate : lɛkɛ V - also means to prepare, to repair, to arrange, to organize

make a fool of V : buba V - also means to spoil, to ruin

make a garden V : fáa yáká V - see cut, field

make a mistake V : dɔ́ gɛ́rɛ́ V - see to err

make fun of V : mock : hé V

make garden V : fáa yáká V - see field, garden, cut

make signs V : (with the hand) : pɛ́ (tí) V - also means to beckon, to signal, to winnow, to wave

make war V : tiri V, píka berá V - see fight, wage war

make worthless V : buba V - means also to ruin, to make a fool of

male Adj : kɔ́li N - used as a specifying complement of some more general noun denoting a person or an animal - also means man, husband

malingering N : mbáná N - see laziness, foolishness

mallet N : (for pounding manioc) : kóngo N - also means hoe handle

man N : 1. generic term, human being : zo N
2. male : kɔ́li N - also means husband

manage V : to make out, to get along : démerder** V, débrouiller** V

mango N : mángo N

manioc N : gɔzɔ N - this is the staple food of most of the population

manner N : 1. way, custom : lége V - also means path, means
2. skill, ingenuity : malin** N, manière N, ndaráa N - alsc mean intelligence, ability

manufacture V : sára V, lɛkɛ V - see make, fabricate, prepare

many Adj : míngi An - also means much, very

mar V : foutu** V - also means to spoil, to ruin

marijuana N : mbange N

market, market-place N : galá N, marché** N

market town N : galá . - also means a commercial center

marriage N : mariage** N - also means spouse

marry V : 1. general : marier** V, sára mariage** V
2. of man : mú wále V, kamáta wále V - see take
3. of woman : mú kɔ́li V, kamáta kɔ́li V, goe na da tí kɔ́li V - see take, go

mash V : pound, crush : petɛ V

master N : vɛní N - also means owner

masturbate V : ndú térɛ tí ... vɛní na mbáná V - see touch, body

mat N : esp. a sleeping mat : gbogbó N - also means a bed

match N : (to light a fire) : allumette** N, tínga wa N

mate N : 1. either sex : mariage** N - also means spouse
2. husband : kɔ́li - also means man, male
3. wife : wále - also means woman, female

matter N : 1. thing : yí N
2. an affair, an issue, a problem : tɛ́nɛ́ N, ngbanga N - the first also means word, saying, utterance, speech - the latter also means dispute

mature V : 1. kpíngba V - this means to harden, to be hard
2. grow : mą̈į̈ V - means also to develop
3. of a person : lé kpíngba V

mature man N : kpíngba kɔ́li N

mature person N : kpíngba zo N

mature woman N : kpíngba wále N

mayor N : (of a city, with municipal organization) : maire** N

mead N : fermented drink made from honey : duma N - see beer

meal N : flour made of mil or manioc : fúku N - see also powder

mean Adj : sioní An - also means bad, evil

mean V : yí tí tɛnɛ V, ɛkɛ títɛnɛ V

meaning N : ndá N - also means end, back, bottom

means N : lége N, moyen** N - see also manner, path, way

meantime, in the Prep : depuis** C - also means for a long while

measure V : háa V

meat N : yąma N - also means animal

medicine N : yoró N - this term does not differentiate natural and supernatural effects, nor good or bad aims or results - also means fetish, charm, talisman, poison

medicine man N : zo tí yoró N, monganga N

meditate V : hą́ V, b'anda V - see also think, ponder

meet V : 1. general : té V - see also gather
2. personally, socially : báa V, báa lé tí V, báa tɛ́rɛ́ V - see encounter

meeting N : bóngbi N - also means gathering, assembly melody N : gɔ́ N - also means neck, throat, voice, tune

member N : (of a Protestant church) : membre** N - see also Christian

menstrual period N : bángó nzɛ N

menstrual period, have V : báa nzɛ - see see, month

merchandise N : kóngbá N - also means goods, possessions, load

mercy N : mawa N - also means pity, misery

message N : kɔa N

messenger N : wa kɔa N - a Protestant neologism for preacher

metal, sheet N : tôle** N - see roofing

mid-day N : kótá lá N, midi** N - see noon

middle N : milieu** N, pópó N, bé N - all used mostly with na in CP meaning in the center of, in the midst, among, between

midnight N : bé bí N, midi** tí bí N

midst, in the Prep : na milieu** (tí/ní) CP, na pópó (tí/ní) CP - see also among, between

militia, militiaman N : garde** N

milk N : 1. mother's : ngú tí mɛ N
2. animal, used for human nutrition, canned, powdered, etc : lait** N

mine P : see I

minister N : 1. Protestant pastor : pasteur** N
2. Catholic priest : père** N

mirror N : tatara N - also means pane, sheet of glass

miscarriage, have V : ngɔ ... buba V - see abort

misery N : mawa N - also means pity, mercy, suffering

misery, cause V : sára mawa V - also means to have pity

mislay V : lose : girísa

Miss : mademoiselle** N - also means lady, unmarried

miss V : manquer** V - also means to be absent, to fail

mission N : mission** N

mistress N : 1. feminine of master : vɛní N, wa N - see owner
    2. feminine of lover : ndeko N - also means friend, companion

mix V : 1. general : mélanger** V
    2. stir with implement : tourner** V - also means to turn
    3. stir flour into water to make dough : mɛ́ kɔ́be V
    4. with hands so as to produce a homogeneous mass or liquid : furu V
    5. with the feet, as mud for making bricks : dɔ́ V - also means to kick, to stamp

moan V : to complain : bima V

mock V : hé V - also means laugh at, ridicule

model N : pandé N - also means pattern

molar N : kótá pɛ́mbɛ́ N - see tooth

moment N : heure** N - see time

money N : nginza N - see also franc, five francs

monitor lizard N : mbáráwárá N

monkey N : 1. general term : makáko N
    2. baboon : bákoyá N
    3. colobus : ngui N
    4. red monkey : bíngba makáko N
    5. chimpanzee : sekɔ N

month N : mois** N, nzɛ N - the latter means moon

moon N : nzɛ N - also means month

more Adj : mbéní An - means also other, some

mores N : lége N - see custom, manner, path, way

morning N : 1. before sunrise : ndá ade V

2. after sunrise : ndá péréré N

mortar N : (in which food is pounded) : kpu N

mosquito N : ngungu N

most of all Adv : ahɔ̨ kóé V

moth N : kɔla N

mother N : biological, social, or honorific : mamá N - also means mother's sisters, and members of mother's clan - see family, aunt

mount V : monter** V - also means to climb

mountain N : hɔ́tɔ́ N - also means hill

mouse N : deko N - also means rat

moustache N : kɔ́á yángá N - see hair

mouth N : yángá N - also means opening, door, edge, language

move over V : pousser** V - also means to push, to propel, to impel

Mr. N : monsieur** N - also means sir, gentleman

Mrs. N : madame** N - also means madam, lady

much An : míngi An - also means many, very

mucilaginous Adj : dɔngɔ́ An, dɔngɔ́ yɔngɔ́rɔ An - applied to certain vegetables, e.g. okra

mud N : pɔtɔpɔ́tɔ N - means any soft mushy substance, e.g. mush, gruel

mush N : 1. soft : pɔtɔpɔ́tɔ N - also means mud, gruel

2. stiff dough, made of manioc or mil flour : kóbe N - also means food

mushroom N : gugú N

must V : il faut que** V, used as a sort of "impersonal"

my P : see I

- N -

nail N : 1. carpenter's : pointe** N
    2. fingernail : nzɛnɛ́ N, nzɛnɛ́ tí mabɔ́kɔ N - also means claw

nail V : (roofing to a house) : píka V - also means to hit, to pound, to beat

naked Adj : séngé An - see without

name N : éré N

name V : éré V, dé éré V - also mean to call, to summon, to invite

nap N : lángó N - also means sleep

nape of neck N : ndó gɔ́ N

narrow Adj : kété An - also means small, thin, little

nation N : kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́ N - means any kind of organized community

navel N : turúngu N - also means umbilical cord

near, nearby Adj, Adv : ndurú An - also means short

neck N : gɔ́ N - also means throat, voice, tune

need V : yí V - means also want, like, love

needle N : sóá N

Negro N : zo vɔkɔ́ N, vɔkɔ́ zo N - also mean black man

net N : large net used for hunting or fishing : gbánda N

never Adv : lá ɔ́kɔ pɛpɛ N

nevertheless C : quand même** C - also means even if, though, anyway

new Adj : finí An

news N : 1. general : tɛ́nɛ́ N - also means word, saying, affair
    2. specific : nouvelle** N

next C : 1. general : et puis** C, na C, mais** C - also mean and, but
2. with strong sequential component : encore** C, na pɛkɔ́ ní CP, na ndá ní CP - mean again, after, behind

nice Adj : nzoní An - means good

nicely Adv : nzoní Av - used after a verb - also means well

night N : bí N

night-time N : bíngo N

Nile perch N : capitaine** N - see fish

nine Adj : ngombáya An

no I : non** I - see also not

noise N : 1. tumult : wúrúwúrú N
2. voices : téné míngi N - see saying, word, utterance
3. cry : toto N
4. shout : kɔ́ngɔ́ N

none P : ɔ́kɔ pɛpɛ An

noon N : kótá lá N, midi** N - see sun, day

no one P : zo ɔ́kɔ pɛpɛ N

noose N : kámba N - also means cord, snare

nose N : hɔ̨ N

not Adv : pɛpɛ SP - used at the end of the sentence

not any, not a single one, not at all P : ɔ́kɔ pɛpɛ An - also means none

nothing P : yí ɔ́kɔ pɛpɛ N

notice V : báa V - means to see

now Adv : fadesó Av - used either pre-clausally or post-verbally - reduplicated it means immediately

number N : numéro** N

nurse N : infirmier** N

nurse V : bata V, soigner** V, sára na V - see also care for, keep, serve

- O -

oar N : káj N - also means paddle

oath N : 1. as in court : bá N - see also swear
    2. a curse : zonga N - see also curse V

obdurate, be V : li ... (ɛkɛ) ngangó V - also means to be stupid

obey V : má yángá V - see also hear, listen, mouth

object V : ké kíté V - also to doubt, to expostulate

objection N : kíté N - also means a doubt

obligated, be V : língbi V - this meaning is not frequent - see to suffice, to be able, be equal

obligation N : a social debt : kɔ́dá N

oblige V : compel : forcer** V - also means to persuade

observe V : báa V - means to see

obstruct V : kánga lége V - see shut, path

obstructed, be or become V : kánga V - also means to be shut, to tie, to fasten, to obstruct

obtain V : wara V - also means to get, to find

o'clock N : heure** N - see time

odor N : fɛ̨ N

of Prep : 1. in all kinds of "genitive" relationships : tí C
    2. after húnda to ask : na C

offer V : mú V - means to give, to take

office N : bureau** N

often Adv : míngi An - also means much, many, very oil N : mafuta N - also means fat and grease

okra N : vɛkɛ́ N

old Adj : 1. of objects : ngbéré An
    2. of persons : vieux** An, mbakɔ́rɔ N
    3. old man : kɔ́tá kɔ́li N, kángba N
    4. old woman : kɔ́tá wále N, mbakɔ́rɔ wále N

on account of Prep : tɛnɛtí C, ngbangatí C - also mean in order to, for, because of

once Adv : 1. (frequency) : lége ɔ́kɔ N - see time, times
    2. (time) : mbéní lá N

one Adj : ɔ́kɔ An

one another P : tɛ́rɛ́ N, used after a verb - also means body, each other, selves

one day Adv : mbéní lá N, lá ɔ́kɔ N - means once upon a time

onion N : oignon** N

on it Adv : da Av - used post-verbally only - means also to that place, in that place, etc.

only Adj : 1. one : ɔ́kɔ An
    2. just : gí Au

on top of Prep : na ndó tí CP, na li tí CP - also mean above, over

open V : lungúla V - also means to untie

opening N : yángá N - also means mouth, door, edge, language

opportunity N : lége N - also means path, way, manner, means

opportunity, find V : wara lége V

or C : wala C - rarely na C

orange N : orange** N

orange Adj : bingbá An - also means red - see color

orchard N : yáká N - means field, garden, or any cultivated area order V : commander** V - means to command, to rule

ordinance N : ndiá N - also means law, rule

ordinary Adj : séngé An - see without

organize V : lɛkɛ V - also means to prepare, to arrange

ornament N : 1. bead, string of beads : lenge N, kísi N
2. bracelet, anklet of brass : ngbéréná N
3. (in ear) : yí tí mɛ́ N

other Adj : mbéní An - also means another, certain, some, any see also different

outside Prep, Adv : na gígí (tí/ní) CP
outside N : gígí N

over Prep : na ndó tí/ní CP - also means on top of, above, in addition to

overcome V : hǫ̂ V, gagner** V - see also pass, win

overlook V : fail to notice : manquer** V - see also be absent

over there Adv : ká Av - see also there

overwhelm V : 1. defeat : gagner** V, hǫ̂ V - see pass, win
2. be too much for : kara V, be V - see also annoy, bother, weary

own Adj : tí C followed by a noun or pronoun

own V : have, possess : ɛkɛ na V

owner N : 1. master, mistress : vɛní N
2. inhabitant : wa N

ox N : bágara N - also means cattle, bull, cow, etc.

oyster N : mbamba N - also means lime made from oyster shells

- P -

package N : kóngbá N - see load, bundle

paddle N : (for a canoe) : kái N - also means an oar

paddle V : (a canoe) : sára kái V

pain N : (usually physical) : finóo N {we experienced much pain : í báa finóo míngi} - see suffering

pain V : sɔ V - see hurt

paint V : 1. to whitewash a building : zía vurú sése na da V, zía mbamba na da V - see whitewash, lime
  2. (a box black) : zía vɔ̌kɔ́ yoró (na sandúku) V

palaver N : tɛ́nɛ́ N, ngbanga N - mean also any contentious problem, a dispute, an affair

palm N : 1. oil palm : mbúrú N
  2. fan palm : koróngo N
  3. false bamboo : bambou** N

palm of hand N : yá tí mabɔ́kɔ N - see hand

palm oil N : bingbá mafuta N, mafuta tí mbúrú N - see palm

palm wine N : kanguya N - see wine

pan N : ta N - see pot, kettle

pane N (of glass) : tatara N - also means mirror

pangolin N : scaly ant-eater (genus Manis) : kpíkara N

paper N : mbɛ́tí N, papier** N - mean also document - mbɛ́tí also means book, letter

pardon V : forgive : pardonner** V

pass V : 1. proceed : passer** V, hɔ̧́ V - see also go, excell
  2. an examination : passer** V

paste N : (made from oleaginous seeds) : kpí N - the word also designates collectively the seeds : peanut, sesame, etc.

pastor N : ordained Protestant minister : pasteur** N

patas monkey N : bingbá makáko N - also called red monkey - see monkey

path N : lége N - also means road, way, manner, custom, opportunity - also enters into CP meaning by means of, on account of

patient, be V : persevere : kánga bɛ́ V - see shut, liver

pattern N : pandé N - see model

paw N : (of animal) : gɛ́rɛ́ N - see foot, leg

pay V : fúta V, payer** V

pay attention V : má V, gɛngi mɛ́ V - see hear, listen

peace N : siriri N, sóngó N - see also harmony, concord - sóngó suggests a prior state of conflict

peanut N : káráko N

pebble N : tɛ́mɛ́ N - also means any kind of stone

penis N : kéngé N - see also scrotum, foreskin

people N : zo N - see person

pepper N : (red) : ndóngé N

perceive V : acoustically : má V - also means to hear, to understand 1.visually or otherwise : báa V - means to see, to understand

perfect Adj : nzoní kóé An - see good

perform V : sára V - see do, act, make

perfume N : yambo N - also means incense

perhaps C : peut-être** C, hínga pɛpɛ V {perhaps he doesn't love you : hínga pɛpɛ, bɛ́ tí lo ayí mɔ pɛpɛ} {perhaps you didn't do your work right : peut-être mɔ sára kɔa tí mɔ mbírímbírí pɛpɛ}

permit V : zía V, zía lége na V, mú lége na V - see leave, let, give persecute V : sára sáná na V - means to cause suffering

persecuted, be V : hú pɔnɔ́ V - means to experience suffering

persecution N : sáná N, pɔnɔ́ N - see suffering

persevere V : kánga bɛ́ V - means to be patient, to resist discouragement

persist V : continuer** V - see also continue, persevere

person N : zo V - a general term for human being

personality N : (the seat of) : bɛ́ N - means the liver - the spirit resides here, and all cognitive, affective, and volitional functions reside here - means also temperament, disposition, character

perspiration N : sweat : gbikí N

persuade V : forcer** V - also means to force, to pressure

perverse Adj : kiríkiri An - means crooked, evil

perversely Adv : kiríkiri An - see disorderly

pester V : emmerder** V - see also to discourage, to annoy, to weary

phallus N : kéngé N - see penis

phone V : píka senga V

photograph V : tirer** photo** V

photograph N : photo** N- also means picture, illustration

pick V : (fruit, etc.) : kɔ́ V - means to pluck

pick out V : choisir** V - see also choose

pick quarrel V : gí tɛ́nɛ́ V

pick up V : gather what has been scattered : lɔ V

picture N : photo** N - means esp. photograph

piece N : 1. remainder : tanga N, ndámbu N
2. a small piece (as of bread) : ndurú An - means short

pig N : 1. domestic : cochon** N

2. bush pig : mbengé N
3. wart hog : cochon** tí gígí N, cochon** tí ngonda N

pill N : medicine : quinine** N - also means capsules, tablets

pillow N : kóli N - also means cushion

pink Adj : 1. intense : bingbá kété An - see red, color
2. light, pastel : vurú kété An - see white

pipe N : (for smoking) : kpókpó N

pitch black, be V : vɔkɔ́ kpitíkpítí V - see black

pity N : mawa N - also means misery

pity V : sára mawa V, mawa ... gbó V - also mean to cause misery

place N : ndo N, place** N

plain N : (grassy, usually low and somewhat swampy) : lando N

plait V : (cord, hair) : há V - see also twist

plant V : lú V - also means to bury

plantain N : fɔndɔ N - see also banana

plantation N : yáká N - also means field, or any cultivated area

platter N : (large, flat, traditionally carved of wood) : kolóngo N - means also basin - see container

play V : 1. sára ngiá V - also means to have fellowship, to chat, to have fun
2. (music) : píka ... bíá V - used of all but wind instruments

plead V : 1. pray : sambéla V, díkɔ V - mean also to consult
2. ask : húnda V
3. as by kneeling : vɔrɔ́ɔ V, vɔrɔ́ɔ t´rɛ́ V - means to respect

please V : nzɛrɛ V - means also to be sweet, to taste good

pleurisy N : kobéla tí kate N - see tuberculosis

plot N : 1. general : a field : yáká N
2. of right size for planting cotton : piquet** N- also means stake

plow V : fáa sése V, dé yáká V - see cut, chop

pluck V : (as leaves or fruit) : kɔ́ V - means to pick

pneumonia N : kobéla tí kate N - see tuberculosis

pocket N : poche** N - see also bag

pocketbook N : poche** N - also means pocket

pod N : kakó N - means husk, chaff, anything which is discarded when grain or seeds are processed

pointed Adj : kété kété An, kɔnɔ pɛpɛ V - see small, grow

pointless Adj : without reason : séngé An

poison N : 1. general : yoró N - see also medicine, fetish, charm, talisman
  2. used in trial by poison : gónda N

pole N : kéké N - also means tree, wood, stick

policeman N : 1. general : police** N
  2. military or state : gendarme** N

pond N : ngú N - also means water, river, rain

ponder V : think : hą́ V, b'anda V, gí bɛ́ V

poor Adj : nzinga N - means poverty

poor person N : wa nzinga N

porcupine N : (bush-tailed) : lele N

possessions N : goods : kɔ́ngbá N - means also load, bundle

possibly C : peut-être** C, hínga pɛpɛ V - see perhaps

post-office N : poste** N

pot N : 1. general : ta N - means also pan, kettle
  2. traditional clay pot : ta tí basánze N
  3. metal kettle : ta wɛ̨́ N
  4. reserved for guests : ta tí vɔrɔ́ɔ N - see respect

pound V : 1. general : píka V - see hit

2. (hard food, to reduce to powder) : sɔsɔ V
3. (soft food, to mash) : pɛtɛ V - also means to crush

pour V : sá V - means also to spill - see also tip

poverty N : nzinga N - see poor

powder N : 1. general, fine powder : fúku N - means also flour
2. gunpowder, ash used medicinally : mbúlú N
3. a red powder made from bark and used to adorn the body in connection with a certain dance : mbíó N
4. dust : pupu sése N
5. sand : mbutu N

power N : 1. general : ngangó An - means strong, hard, strength
2. metaphorically : mabɔ́kɔ N, ti N - mean hand, arm

praise V : 1. a human being : gonda V - see also honor, respect
2. deity : sepála V - this may be a Protestant term only - see also to pray, to worship, to plead

pray V : sambéla V, díkɔ V - see also worship, praise, consult, count, read

preach V : fa tɛ́nɛ́ V - see teach, show, demonstrate, word

preacher N : wakɔa N - a Protestant neologism for messenger

prefer V : mú na pópó V - see also choose

pregnant, become V : mɛ́ ngɔ V - see conceive - see also bear

pregnant woman N : mamá tí ngɔ N - see also foetus, mother

prepare V : sára V, lɛkɛ V - see also make, do, arrange, repair

presence N : lé N, gbɛ́ lé N, devant** N - see also eye, bottom, front

present, be V : du V - means also to exist, to live - see also remain

preserve V : bata V - also means to keep, to conserve, to protect

press V : (clothes) : passer** bɔngɔ́ V - see also pass, clothing

pressure V : to force : forcer** V - also means to persuade, to compel, usually by moral pressure pretty Adj : pendere An - see also beautiful, young

prevent V : gbánzi V, kánga lége V - see also obstruct, shut, hinder, withhold

price N : ngérɛ́ N - means cost, value

pricker N : kíi N - see thorn, burr

pride N : baba N - see also vanity

priest N : (Catholic) ; père** N - see also clergy

print V : píka mbɛ́ti V - also means to type

prison N : kánga N, da tí kánga N - see also jail

problem N : tɛ́nɛ́ N - means also utterance, saying, speech, matter, affair, issue

proceed V : goe V, passer** V, hǫ́ V - mean also to go, to pass, to surpass

proclaim V ; 1. preach : fa tɛ́nɛ́ V
2. publish : fa na gígí V

promise V : zé V - see also swear

promise N : zé ndo N - see also oath

propel V : pousser** V - means also to push, to impel - see force

properly Adv : mbírímbírí An - means straight, right

prosper V : 1. hú V - means to spread
2. gá nzoní V, dutí nzoní V - see also improve, greeting

prostitute N : wále tí pitą̂ą̂ N - means also adulteress

protect V : bata V - means to keep, to preserve, to conserve

proud, be V : li ... kpíngba V

provocation N : gí ngɔlɔ N

provoke V : gí tɛ́nɛ́ V - means also to pick quarrel, to taunt

publish V : fa na gígí V

pull V : 1. drag : gbɔ́tɔ V, kóso V - also means to pull along, etc.
  2. a knife : há zɛmbɛ V

punch N : (with the fist) : coup-de-poing** N

pupil N : 1. of eye : vɔkɔ́ lé N
  2. student : élève** N

purpose N : ndá N - means lower back, end, meaning

purposeless Adj : séngé An - see without

pursue V : tomba V - means to chase - see also follow

pus N : sánzó N, ngú vurú N - the latter term refers to any thick whitish discharge from the body, including semen

push V : pousser** V - means to incite, to urge, to impel, to propel, - see also to force

put V : 1. general : zía V - also means to set, to leave, to cease, to abandon, to permit
  2. put on clothes : yú V - also means to wear

put together V : assemble : bóngbi V, tíngbi V - see also join

python N : kúma N

- Q -

quail N : dɔdɔrɔ N

quarrel V : papa V - means also to argue, to dispute

quarrel N : papa N - an argument, a dispute

quickly Adv : híɔ Av, fadé Av - used only post-verbally - fadé adds the idea of a brief time lapse : soon

quiet, be V : dutí kpó V - see to sit

quiet, become V : kái V - means to hush

quietly Adv : doucement** Av - can be reduplicated for emphasis - also means gently

- R -

rabbit N : ndarangba N - also means hare

race N : 1. foot : gbíma ndɔkɔ N - means a contest
2. canoe : mbandako N

race V : kpé lɔ́rɔ́ V - see run

rag N : bɔngɔ́ N - means cloth, clothing

rain N : ngú N, ngú Nzapá N - the first means any kind of water

rain V : ngú ... píka V - see beat

rainbow N : kɔ́ngɔ́ N

rainfall N : ngú N - means water, rain

rainy season N : ngú N - also means water, rain, year

raise V : mú na ndúzú V, gbó na ndúzú V - mean also to lift

rapidly Adv : híɔ Av, fadé Av - see fast

rat N : deko N - also means mouse

ratel N : zarí N

rat trap N : ngindí N - see snare

reach V : arrive : sí V

read V : díkɔ V, díkɔ mbɛ́tí V - the first means to count, to consult, to pray, to worship

read, be able to V : hínga mbɛ́tí V - see know, book

real Adj : taá Au - means true, genuine

realize V : báa V, hínga V - see see, know

really Adv : bíakú Av, bíaní Av - see certainly, truly

reason N : ndá N - means lower back, end, meaning, purpose rebound V : uru V - means to jump, to fly

rebuke V : wa V - means to warn, to advise, to counsel, to comfort

receive V : 1. take : mű V, kamáta V
  2. get, obtain : wara V - also means to find
  3. (a payment due, as bride-price or wages) : tɛ nginza V - see eat, money

recently Adv : ándo Av - also means formerly

reckon V : díkɔ V - also means to count, to consult, to read

recline V : sɛ́ tɛ́rɛ́ V - see lie, sleep

recognize V : (from the appearance) : hínga lé tí V - also means to be acquainted

recompense N : consequences of one's actions : fúta N - also means salary, wages

recompense V : fúta V, payer** V - also mean to pay

reconcile V : harmonize : lɛkɛ tɛ́nɛ́ V, sára sóngó V, gá sóngó V - the latter two also mean to be reconciled

recover V : (from illness) : ça va** V, kái ... kobéla V, gá nzoní V

red Adj : bingbá An - means also orange, reddish brown - see color

reddish brown Adj : bingbá An - see red, color

red monkey N : patas monkey : bingbá makáko N, makáko tí bingbá N - see monkey

reed N : sɔsɔngɔ N - see grass

refrain V : 1. hold back : nínga V - also means to delay
  2. refuse, reject : kę V, yí pɛpɛ V

refuse V : kę V, yí pɛpɛ V - see also reject, object

reject V : kę V, yí pɛpɛ V - see also refuse, object

rejoice V : sára ngiá V - means also to have fellowship or fun, to chat, to play

rejoice, cause to V : mű ngiá na bɛ́ tí V, zía ngiá na bɛ́ tí V release V : zí V - also means to loosen, to untie

relinquish V : zía V - means to put, to leave, to abandon, to permit

remain V : 1. to sit, to dwell : dutí V - see also exist
    2. to sleep, to dwell : lángó V
    3. to reside, to establish permanent residence : sárá kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́ V
    4. to be left over from the past : ngbá V
    5. to remain for the future, to be not yet begun : de V

remainder N : ndámbu N, tanga N - see also rest, leftover - ndámbu refers primarily to a solid unit or piece rather than to a mass.

remember V : da bɛ́ V with the speaker also as object

remind V : da bɛ́ V with another object than the speaker

remove V : 1. zí V - also means to loosen, to untie
    2. to take away : lungúla V - also means to open

repair V : lɛkɛ V - also means to arrange, to prepare, to organize, to make

repent V : lɛkɛ bɛ́ V - also means to change mind

reply V : kírí tɛ́nɛ́ V - see answer

reprimand V : wa V, zíngo na V, súku na V, in increasing order of severity - see also warn, advise, comfort, arouse, swell

reprove V : wa V - see warn, comfort, advise

republic N : république** V - see also administration

repudiate V : kę V - see also to refuse, to reject, to divorce

request N : formal application : demande** N

request V : 1. call for : éré V - see demand
    2. ask : húnda

rescue V : save : so V

resemble V : kpa (tɛ́rɛ́) V

resentment N : vundú N - since misfortune is considered to result only from personal ill-will, the reaction to misfortune almost invariably includes, along with sorrow or disappointment, a strong component of resentment and a desire for retaliation

reside V : 1. general : dutí V, lángó V - see sit, sleep, dwell
    2. establish permanent residence : sára kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́ V

respect V : 1. honor : vɔrɔ́ɔ V, vɔrɔ́ɔ tɛ́rɛ́ V - see also to kneel
    2. fear, reverence : kpé mbito V

respond V : kírí tɛ́nɛ́ V - see answer

rest N : remainder : tanga N, ndámbu N

rest V : 1. from effort : hú tɛ́rɛ́ V
    2. sleep : lángó V - also means to lie, to remain
    3. recline : sɛ́ tɛ́rɛ́ V

retain V : bata V - means to keep, to preserve, to conserve, to protect

retaliate V : fúta kulá V - also means to avenge - see also resentment

retaliation N : kulá N - see revenge

retribution N : fúta N - see consequences, salary, reward - see also revenge, recompense

retrogress V : kírí na pɛkɔ́ V - see also return

return V : kírí V

return N : kíríngó N - from kírí to return

reveal V : 1. explain : fa ndá tí V
    2. publish : fa na gígí V

revenge V : fúta kulá V - see avenge, retaliate

revenge N : kulá N - any personal injury occasions resentment which cannot be appeased other than by revenge or retaliation

reverence V : kpé mbito V - means to fear - see also respect, honor, praise, worship

reward N : fúta N - means wages, salary, recompense, retribution

rhinoceros N : másarágba N

rice N : lɔ́sɔ N

rich Adj : mɔsɔrɔ N, ɛkɛ na mɔsɔrɔ V

riches N : mɔsɔrɔ N - means *wealth*, *bride*-*price*

ridicule V : hé V - means to *mock*, to *laugh* at

right Adv : mbírímbírí An - means *straight*, *just*, *justly*, *correct*, *correctly*

right away Adv : fafadesó Av - means also *immediately*, *now*

righteous Adj : mbírímbírí An - means *straight*, *right*, *just*, *correct*

right hand N : koti N, mabɔ́kɔ tí kóli N

right now Adv : fafadesó Av - see *immediately*, *now*

right side N : mbáge tí kóli N - see *right* *hand*

ripe, be or become V : be V - means also to *brown*

ripen V : be V - means also to *brown*

rise V : lóndó V - used of animate beings and of the sun, moon, etc. - see also *get* *up*

river N : 1. water : ngú N - means also *stream*, *brook*, *lake*, *pond*, *sea*, *rain*, etc.
    2. *bank* : yángá tí ngú N - see *mouth*, *edge*
    3. *source*, *spring* : li ngú N - see *head*

road N : lége N - see *path*, *way*

roan antelope N : zaranga N - see *antelope*

roast V : (in coals) : zɔ́ V - means also to *set* *fire*, to *burn*

robber N : zo tí nzí N, wa nzí N - see also *thief*

rock N : tɛ́mɛ́ N - see *stone*

roof N : li tí da N - see *head*, *house*

roofing N : 1. *grass* : péré N, bebé N
    2. sheet *metal* : tɔ̂le** N - means also *corrugated* *metal*

room N : yá tí da N - see *stomach*, *house* rooster N : kɔ́li kɔ́ndɔ N - see chicken

rope N : kámba N - see cord

rot V : fṵ́ V - means also to smell - see also spoil

rubber N : 1. raw latex, rubber tree : bángá N
    2 cured rubber, rubber objects : ndembú N

ruin V : foutu** V, buba V - see spoil

rule N : law : ndiá N

rule V : command : commander** V

run V : 1. on foot or wheel : kpé V - means also to run away, to flee
    2. (as a machine) : tambéla V - means to walk
    3. (as a liquid) : yuru V - means to leak, to seep - see also flow

run out V : to exhaust a supply : húnzi V - see also finish

rust N : sɔ́kɔ N - means corrosion in general - used with the verb tɛ to eat

- S -

salary N : fúta N, nginza N - the first means recompense, wages, reward, retribution - the second means money

salt N : 1. generic term : yíngɔ́ N
2. traditional salt made from the ashes of certain plants : sę́ N, yíngɔ́ tí basánze N, yíngɔ́ tí sauvage** N
3. imported rock salt : adorónu N

salutation N : bara N - see greeting

salute V : bera V - see greet

same Adj : lége ɔ́kɔ N - also means together, once, same time, same way

same time Adv : lége ɔ́kɔ N - also means same, once, together, same way

same way Adv : lége ɔ́kɔ N - also means same, same time, together, once

sample N : lógo N - also means taste

sand N : mbutu N - see powder

sandal N : pápa N - see thong, shoe

sauce N : 1. generic term : kása N - accompanies the staple dough - see also food
2. made of greens with or without oleaginous paste : yabándá N

save V : rescue : so V

say V : tenɛ V - means also utter, tell

say a name V : dé éré V - see name

saying : tɛ́nɛ́ N - see word, utterance

scabbard N : (for knife) : pɔ́rɔ́ tí zɛmbɛ N - see skin, knife

scabies N : itch : sárá N

scar N : 1. general, from wound : ká N
2. (ornamental, on cheek) : pópó N

school N : école** N

school, go to V : sára école** V

scold V : wa V, zíngo na V, súku na V, in ascending order of severity - see also warn, arouse, swell, reprimand

scourge N : chicotte** N - see whip

scrape V : kpaka V - see also scratch, dig

scratch V : 1. with fingernails : kɔtɔ V
    2. to scrape with instrument : kpaka V
    3. (oneself, or to dig in ground with hands) : ása V

scrotum N : korogbó N - see also penis

sea N : kótá ngú N - see water, river

search V : gí V - see hunt

search one's heart V : gí bɛ́ V - also means to ponder, to think, to wonder

season N : 1. general : ngói N - a time for doing something
    2. rainy : ngú N - also means water, rain, year
    3. dry : vurú ndo N, burú N

see V : báa V, báa ndo V - also mean to perceive, to understand

seed N : 1. of plant : lé N, lé tí kéké N, léngó N - see also fruit, harvest, yield
    2. food : lé tí kóbe N
    3. edible oily seeds : kpí N - also means the paste made of them
    4. of animals : ngongoa N

see first-hand V : báa V, báa na lé V - see, eye

seek V : gí V - see hunt

seem V : to appear : báa tongana V

see ... on way V : zía ... na lége V (I saw him on his way : mbi zía lo na lége) - see leave

seep V : yuru V - means to leak, to run out seize V : gbó V, kamáta V - see also affect, take - means also to grasp, to grab, to grip

select V : to choose : choisir** V, mú na pópó V

self, selves N : 1. after verb : tɛ́rɛ́ N - means body, each other, another
  2. after noun or pronoun : vɛní An

sell V : ká V, vɔ V - see also to buy

semen N : ngú vurú N, ngú tí kɔ́li N - the first also means pus

send V : to V, toka V

send dog V : (after something) : bi mbo V - see also incite

send word V : to kɔa V - see send, message

senseless Adj : búbá An - see foolish, crazy

sentence V : fáa ngbanga V - see judge

separate V : kángbi V

servant N : 1. personal or domestic : bɔ́i N
  2. slave : ngbáá N
  3. flunky : apprenti** N is a truck driver's flunky, marmiton** N is a kitchen flunky

serve V : sára na V, followed by a person - also means to work for

serve as V : sára V, followed by a noun denoting an office or function - see make, act, behave

sesame N : sindi N

set V : 1. put : zía V - means to leave, to abandon, to permit
  2. harden : gbó V, coller** V - see seize, grasp
  3. (sun) : lá ... kúí V - see die
  4. aside : zía na sése V - see put, ground
  5. fire : zɔ́ V - see burn
  6. heart on : zía bɛ́ V - means also to trust, to covet
  7. in order : lɛkɛ na kámba V - sec arrange

settle V : establish residence : sára kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́ V - see make, community - see also dwell, reside

seven Adj : mbásámbárá An

severity N : ngangó An - also means strong, strength, hard

sew V : fú V

shade N : 1. shadow : gbɛ́ dé N, dé tí N
2. of ancestor, spirit : tɔ́rɔ́ N

shadow N : dé tí N (the shadow of the tree : dé tí kéké) - see cold

shake V : 1. general : yingi V
2. (a sieve) : gbugburu V, yɛngɛrɛ V - see also sift
3. winnow : pɛ́ V, diki V - see also wave
4. tremble : tɛ́rɛ́ ... dɔ́ V - see also kick

shame N : kamelá N

sharp, be V : zá V - also means to shine

sharpen V : lɛkɛ yángá tí V - see repair, edge

shave V : kio V

she P : lo - see he

shea N : 1. tree, nut : báláwá N
2. butter : mafuta tí báláwá N

sheath N : póró tí zɛmbɛ N - see scabbard

sheep N : 1. taba N
2. Protestant usage : ngása Ngbaka - see goat

sheet N : 1. bed : drap** N
paper : kugbé tí mbɛ́tí N

shelter N : temporary shed : kpangba N

shield N : válá N

shine V : 1. (sun) : su V
2.(something else) : zá V - also means to be keen or sharp

shirt N : 1. Eruopean type : chemise** N
    2. flowing Muslim type : boubou** N

shoe N : 1. general term : póró N, póró tí gɛ́rɛ́ N - means skin, leather
    2. European type : paire** N, soulier** N
    3. sandal, thong : pápa N

short Adj : ndurú An - also means near

short time N : kété An, ndurú An - see small, short

shoulder N : ndo (tí) mabɔ́kɔ N - see arm

shout N : kɔ́ngɔ́ N

shout V : dé kɔ́ngɔ́ V

shove V : 1. bi V - means to throw, tc cast
    2. push : pousser** V

show V : teach, demonstrate : fa V, fa lége V - see way

show off V : fa tɛ́rɛ́ V, fa baba V - see vanity

shut V : active or passive sense : kánga V - see tie, fasten

sibling N : 1. general : íta N - also means cousin, relative
    2. brother : íta (tí) kɔ́li N - see male
    3. sister : íta (tí) wále N - see female
    4. older sibling : kótá íta N
    5. older brother : kótá zo N
    6. younger sibling : ngambe N

sick, become V : wara kobéla V - see sickness

sick 'em! I : čaʔ I

sickness N : kobéla N, malade** N - means also ailment, illness

sick on V : dará V - means to incite, to urge

side N : 1. of animate being : tɛ́rɛ́ N - means body, flank
    2. general : mbáge N
    3. chest : katẹ N

sieve N : yɛngɛrɛ N

sift V : 1. strain, drain : passer** V - see pass
2. (as flour) : yɛngèrɛ V - see sieve, shake

sigh V : gío bɛ́ V - means to exhale, to gasp, as in dying

signal V : (with hand) : pɛ́ V - see beckon

significant Adj : kótá An - see important, big

since Prep : depuis** C - see also for quite a while

sing V : hé (bíá) V, sára bíá V - see song

single girl V : of marriageable age : masía N - see unmarried girl

sir N : monsieur** N - also means Mr., gentleman

sisal N : ndunda N

sister N : íta (tí) wále N - see sibling, female

sit V : dutí V - means also to remain, to stay, to dwell

sitatunga N : a small antelope ; lekpa N

six Adj : omaná An

size N : kɔ́nɔ́ngɔ́ N - from kɔnɔ V to grow - also means growth

skill N : ndaráa N, malin** N, manière** N - mean also ingenuity, ability, understanding, wisdom, cunning

skin N : póró N - means also hide, leather, sheath, shoe

skull N : bíó li N - see head

sky N : ndúzú N, lé ndúzú N - see also air, heaven

slag N : (waste from iron smelting) : purú N - means also excrement

slander V : 1. accuse : pá éré V, réclamer** V
2. betray : sára makɔrɔ́ V

slander N : makɔrɔ́ N - means esp. betrayal

slap V : píka V - also means hit, beat

slave N : ngbáá N - see servant

sleep V : lángó V - also means to lie down, to dwell - see recline

sleep N : lángó N - also means nap, day

sleeping sickness N : ngé lángó N

sleepy, be V : lángó ... sára lé tí V - see sleep, affect, eye

slimy Adj : dɔngɔ́ An, dɔngɔ́ yɔngɔ́rɔ An

slowly Adv : 1. yeke Av - often reduplicated - means also gradually
    2. gently : doucement** Av

small Adj : kété An - means also little, small amount, thin, narrow

small amount N : kété An - means small, narrow, thin, little

smallpox N : yangba N

smart, be V : (be able to learn) : li ... wɔ́kɔ V - see head, soften

smell V : fų́ V - both "transitive" and "intransitive" sense

smoke N : gúrú N - also means steam

smoke V : (tobacco) : yɔ̨́ (mánga) V - see drink, suck, tobacco

snack N : besides fruit, people buy at least three kinds of snacks in the markets :
    1. fritter : makala N
    2. portion of manioc crushed in water, wrapped in leaves, and roasted : mangbéré N
    3. strips of roasted meat : čača N

snail N : kalá N

snail shell N : póró tí kalá N

snake N : ngbɔ́ N

snare N : 1. general : kámba N - means a cord
    2. specific : ngindí N, sɔ̨́ N - see fish trap

softly Adv : doucement** Av - also means gently, slowly, quietly so Adv : tongasó Av - see also *thus*

soap N : savon** N

sociability N : ngiá N - also means *fellowship*, *joy*, *fun*

soil N : sése N - see *earth*

solder N : mbɔsɔ N, tungu N - also means *lead*

soldier N : turúgu N, yɔngɔ́rɔ ŋgombe N - the latter term refers to the troops used to pacify the country in colonial days

sole N : (of foot) : séndá tí gɛ́rɛ́ N - see *foot*, *footprint*

solidify V : *set*, *harden* : gbó V, coller** V

some Adj : mbéní An - also means *other*, *another*, *any*

something N : mbéní yí N - see also *anything*

sometime Adv : mbéní lá N - see also *one day*

son N : mɛ́rɛngɛ́ (tí) kɔ́li N - see *child*, *male*

song N : bíá N

son-in-law N : kógará N - also means *father-in-law*, *brother-in-law*

soon Adv : 1. ánde Av - both pre-clausally and post-verbally - has idea of time lapse, no idea of speed

2. fadé Av, híɔ Av, both post-verbal only - have idea of speed as well as time lapse : *fast*, *quickly*

sore N : ká N - also means *wound*

sorrow N : vundú N - cannot be disassociated from resentment and desire to retaliate which always accompany sorrow, since the causes of sorrow are all conceived to be attributable to some personal malice or ill-will

sort N : mará N, qualité** N - also mean *kind*, *type*

so then C : sí C - also means *and then*, *next*

soul N : see *spirit*, *personality*

sour, be or become V : kpí V - means also to ferment

speak V : sára tɛ́nɛ́ V - means also to talk - see also say, tell, chat, converse

spear N : likongó N

speech N : 1. general : tɛ́nɛ́ N - also means word, utterance, affair, matter
2. any kind of oral activity : isɔrɔ́ N - see chat
3. story : histoire** N
4. fable : tɛrɛ N

speed N : lɔ́rɔ́ N - used in expressions meaning to hurry, to race

spend V : 1. (money) : dépenser** V, vɔ na yí V - see buy
2. (time) : sára V - see do, act, behave, make, affect

spider N : tɛrɛ N - a frequent character in fables, also called tɛrɛ́

spill V : 1. pour : sá V
2. tip, dump : túku V

spirit N : 1. of living person : yingɔ́ N
2. of dead person : tɔ́rɔ́ N
3. of witchcraft : lukundú N - see witch

spit V : dé V - also means to vomit, to utter

split V : súrú V - see also cut

spoil V : 1. general : foutu** V, buba V - mean to ruin, to waste, to mar
2. rot : fų́ V - means to smell

spoon, spoonful N : papa N

spouse N : mariage** N - see husband, wife, marriage

spread V : extend domain : hú V - also means to prosper

spring N : (of water) : li ngú N - see head, river

sprout V : germinate : kó V

square V : carrer** V

stake N : post : piquet** N - also means a plot of the right size for planting cotton

stamp V : dɔ́ V - means also to kick, to stub, to stumble, to dance, to shake

stand V : lutí V

star N : tɔngɔ́rɔ N

stare V : báa V - means to see

start V : begin : commencer** V

start off V : (on trip) : mú lége V

starve V : kúí nzala V - see hungry, die

state N : kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́ N - see community

state V : tɛnɛ V - means to say, to tell, to utter

stay V : remain : dutí V - also means to sit, to dwell

steal V : nzí V

steam N : gúrú tí ngú N - see also smoke

steer N : bágara N - means any kind of cattle

stem N : stick, wood : kéké N - also means tree, pole

stick N : 1. general : kéké N - also means tree, pole, wood
2. forked, for building : sara N

stick together V : gbó (tɛ́rɛ́) V - also means cleave (together)

still Adv : encore** Av - also means again

still, be V : dutí kpó V, kái V, bata yángá V - also mean be quiet

still more Adj, Adv : mbéní encore** An - see some, more

stir V : mélanger** V, tourner** V, yɔ́rɔ V - see mix

stomach N : yá N - see also abdomen

stone N : any size : témɛ́ N - pebble, rock

stone V : 1. (throw single stone with accurate aim) : bólo V
2. (throw shower of stones) : gana V

stop! I : su I - addressed to a child to refrain from what he is about to do

stop V : 1. cease : arrêter** V - used without specifying action to be stopped
2. zía V - used when action is specified by another verb - means also to leave, to put, to abandon

stop short V : hold back, refrain : nínga V - also means to delay

store, storehouse N : magasin** N

store-keeper N : (employed) : gérant** N

story N : 1. general, any kind of speech : isɔrɔ́ N
2. history or fiction : histoire** N
3. fable : tɛrɛ N

straight Adj : physically or morally : mbírímbírí An - also means right, just

strain V : (through strainer) : passer** V - means also to pass, to drain, to sift

strange Adj : different : ndé An

stranger N : wa ndé N - see also visitor

straw N : péré N - see grass

stream N : ngú N - means water, river

street N : lége N - means path, road

strength N : ngangó An - also means strong, hard, power, force

strike V : píka V - also means to hit, to beat, to pound

string N : 1. general : kámba N - means any kind of cord
2. of beads : kámba N, lenge N, kísi N

strive V : 1. verbally : papa V - means to quarrel
2. physically : tiri V - means to fight

stroll V : fɔnɔ V - means to walk about, to travel strong Adj : ngangó An - also means hard, violent

struggle V : tiri V - means to fight

stub V : (toe) : dɔ́ (gέrέ) V - means also to kick, to stamp, to stumble

student N : élève** N - means pupil at any academic level

stumble V : dɔ́ (gέrέ) V - means also to kick, to stub, to stamp

stupid, be V : Ií ... (ɛkɛ) ngangó V - also means to be obdurate

submission N : pardon** N - also means apology, excuse

submit V : (as by kneeling) : vɔrɔ́ɔ tέrέ V - see respect, honor

subsequent, subsequently Adj, Adv : (na) ndá ní CP, (na) pɛkɔ́ ní CP - also mean after, later

succeed V : wara V - means also to get, to find, to receive

suit, be suitable V : língbi V - means to suffice

suck V : yɔ̨́ V - means also to drink, to smoke (tobacco)

suddenly Adv : yí tí báa ndo V - used pre-clausally

suffer V : 1. pain : sɔ V, báa finóo V
    2. misery : báa mawa V
    3. persecution, ill-will of others : hú pɔnɔ́ V
    4. burden of toil : báa pási V

suffering N : 1. physical pain : finóo N
    2. pain of burdensome toil : pási N
    3. inflicted by others, as persecution : pɔnɔ́ N, sáná N
    4. misery : mawa N - also means pity
    5. sorrow : vundú N - also means resentment

suffice V : língbi V - means to attain the exact measure, to be sufficient or adequate - also to be able, to be equal - with the negative, can mean either to be insufficient or excessive

sugar cane N : ngbɔ́kɔ́ N

suit case N : valise** N - see also box

summon V : 1. call, invite : éré V - also means to name
2. call after someone : éré ndo V

sun N : lá N - also means day, daylight, daytime

sunset N : lá kúí N - also means afternoon

superior Adj : kótá ahǫ́ An - see big, important

supervise V : commander** V, commander** li tí V - see command, rule

suppose V : báa ... tɛnɛ V - also means consider

sure, be : hínga ... tɛnɛ V - see also to know

surface N : lé N - also means face, eye

surpass V : hǫ́ V - also means to pass, to excell - used in expressions of comparison (he is stronger than I : lo ɛkɛ ngangó ahǫ́ mbi)

surround V : ngɔ́rɔ V - means also to go around, to circle

survive V : ngbá V - means to remain (from the past), to stay

sustain V : bata V - means also to keep, to protect

swallow V : mɛhɛ V - means also to gulp

swear V : (an oath) : dé bá V

sweat N : gbikí N

sweep V : balayer** V

sweet potato N : bábolo N

swell V : súku V - also means to scold severely

swim V : sa (ngú) V

switch N : whip : zaza N

syphilis N : ndavɛkɛ N

- T -

table N : table** N

tablet N : (medicine) : quinine** N - means also capsule, pill

tail N : (of animal) : dambá N

tailor N : tailleur** N

take V : 1. general : kamáta V - also means to seize, to capture, to catch
2. mú V - also means to give

take along V : goe na V - see also go, accompany

take apart V : lungúla V - means also to demolish

take away V : remove : lungúla V, zí V - see loosen, untie

take hold V : kamáta V, gbó V - see seize

take possession V : kamáta V - see take, seize

take to the road V : mú lége V - see start off

tale N : story : histoire** N

talisman N : yoró N - also means medicine, poison, charm, fetish

talk V : sára tɛ́nɛ́ V, sára isɔrɔ́ V - also mean to speak, to chat, to converse

talk N : tɛ́nɛ́ N - also means saying, utterance, speech, matter

tall Adj : yɔngɔ́rɔ An - means long, far

tall, be V : yɔ V - also means to be long, to be far

task N : kusára N, kɔa N - see work

taste V : tara V - means to try

taunt V : gí yángá V - means to provoke, to tease

tax N : (direct income and head tax) : impôt** N

teach V : 1. general : fa V - means also to show, to demonstrate
    2. reading and writing : fa mbɛ́tí V
    3. how to do something : fa lége V
    4. explain : fa ndá tí V

teacher N : (lower grades), instructor : moniteur** N

tear V : súru V - means also to split - see to cut

tear N : (weeping) : ngú lé N - see water, eye

tease V : 1. entice, tempt, lure : hénda V
    2. taunt : gí yángá V

telegraph V : píka senga V - means also to phone

telephone V : píka senga V - means also to telegraph

tell V : tɛnɛ V - means also to say, to utter

temperament N : bɛ́ N - means liver, personality

tempt V : hánda V - means also to entice, to lure, to bluff, to kid, to fascinate, to amuse (a baby)

temptation N : hánda N

tempter N : wa hánda N - used esp. by Protestants in speaking of the devil

ten Adj : (unit of) : bale N

tend V : occuper** V, soigner** V - see care for

termite N : bobo N

terror N : mbito N - see fear

textile N : bɔngɔ́ N - means any kind of cloth or clothing

thank V : mú merci** V

thanks N : merci** N

thank you I : merci** N

that Adj : só An - means also this

the A : ní An is used as a restrictive and/or anaphoric determinant thee P : mɔ P - see I for pronominal system

their P : see they

theirs P : tí ála CP - see they

them P : see they

then C : eh bien** C - see also so then, next

there Adv : 1. general : ká Av in contrast with here

2. anaphoric, post-verbal : da Av - means to that place, in that place, from that place

therefore C : tongasó Av - used pre-clausally - means also thus

there's just one thing : yí ɔ́kɔ N - used pre-clausally

these Adj : só - see this

they P : ála P - see I for the pronominal system

thick Adj : kótá An - means big, wide, important

thicken V : set : gbó V, coller** V - mean also to harden, to grab

thickness N : nɛ́ngó N, kɔ́nɔ́ngó N - mean also size

thief N : zɔ tí nzí N, wa nzí N - mean also robber, burglar

thigh N : kótá gɛ́rɛ́ N - see also leg, foot

thin Adj : kété An - means also small, little, narrow

thin, be or become V : (used only of living beings) : ngɛ V

thine P : tí mɔ CP - see thee

thing N : yí N

think V : 1. general : penser** v

2. consider, ponder, meditate : b'anda V, hą́ V, gí bɛ́ V - see wonder

3. understand : báa V, má V - see also to see, to hear

this Adj : só An - means also these, that, those

thong N : sandal : pápa N - see also shoe

thorn N : 1. general : kíi N - means also pricker
    2. burr : sísi N, kpɔ mɔ ngangó N

thou P : see thee

though C : see although

thousand N : 1. general : kutu N
    2.-franc amount : sac** N

throat N : gɔ́ N - means also neck, voice

through Prep : na lége tí CP - means also by means of, on account of

throw V : bi V - means to cast, to fling, to hurl, to shove

throw a spear at V : bi na likongó V

throw away V : bi na ngonda V

thrust V : insert : yɔ́rɔ V

thumb N : kɔ́tá mabɔ́kɔ N - see hand, finger

thunder N : békpá N

thus Adv : tongasó Av - either pre-clausally or post-verbally - means also so, like this, therefore

thy P : tí mɔ CP - see thee

tie V : 1. kánga V - means also to fasten, to imprison, to close
    2. as a cord : du V

time N : heure** N - in all senses : o'clock, moment, duration, and unit of time

time, times N : lége N followed by a numeral {three times : lége otá}

tip V : (over) : túku V - means also to dump, to pour, to spill

tip N : a gratuity : cadeau** N, matabísi N - also mean gift, bribe

tire N : gɛ́rɛ́ N - also means wheel, foot, leg

tired, be V : fatiguer** V - see also weary

title N : éré N - means name

to Prep : 1. locative : na C - also means and, but, with, by, at, in, from
2. in order to : ngbangatí C, tenetí C, tí C

tobacco N : mánga N

today Adv : lá só N - see day

toe N : kété géré N - see also foot

together Adv : lége ɔ́kɔ N, ɔ́kɔ An - the first also means same, like, same time, same way - the second means one

toil N : 1. work : kusára N, kɔa N
2. suffering : pási N

tomato N : tomate** N

tomorrow Adv : kékéreke Av

tongue N : 1. anatomical : méngá N, langue** N
2. language : yángá N - means also mouth

too Adj, Adv : ngá An - see also

tool N : 1. general : yí tí kusára N
2. specific : see knife, ax, hoe, machete

tooth N : pémbé N

top N : 1. head, cover : li N
2. top surface : ndó N

tortoise N : bakongo N

toss V : bi V - see throw

to that place Adv : da Av - also means in that place, from that place, etc.

touch V : [illegible]dú V, toucher** V

tow V : gbɔ́tɔ V - see pull

toward Prep : na C, na mbáge tí CP - the latter also means beside

town N : kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́ N - see community

township N : collectivité** N - see also administration trap N : (for fish) : ngɔ́lɔ N - also means weir - see also snare

travel V : tambéla V, fɔnɔ V - mean also to walk

treat V : 1. general : sára na V (he treated me badly : lo sára sioní na mbi)
  2. (medically) : soigner** V - see care for

tree N : kéké N - means also wood, stick, pole

tremble V : tɛ́rɛ́ ... dɔ́ V - see also shake, kick

tribe N : mará N - means also sort, kind, type

trip V : kinda V - means also to knock down

trouble N : 1. problem : tɛ́nɛ́ N, ngbanga N - also mean matter, affair
  2. suffering : mawa N, pɔnɔ́ N

truck N : camion** N - see automobile

true Adj : taá Au - also means real, genuine

truly Adv : bíakú Av, bɨ́aní Av - either can be reduplicated - mean also certainly

trunk N : 1. of tree : kéké N - means also tree, wood, pole, stem
  2. of elephant : hɔ̧́ tí dole N - see nose, elephant
  3. for storage : sandúku N - see box

trust V : zía b̧ɛ́ V - means also to set one's heart on, to covet, to believe

truth N : taá tɛ́nɛ́ N - see true, word

try V : 1. taste : tara V
  2. attempt : gí lége V - means to seek a way

tuberculosis N : kobéla tí kate N - also means pneumonia, pleurisy, asthma, bronchitis, or any other severe chest inflammatior accompanied by coughing

tug V : gbɔ́tɔ V - see pull

tune N : gɔ́ N - means neck, throat, voice, melody

turn V : tourner** V - also means to mix, to stir turtle N : bakongo N

twin N : mɛ́rɛngɛ́ tí mía N, mɛ́rɛngɛ́ tí ngbɔ́ N

twist V : (make rope by twisting fiber) : pé kámba V

twisted Adj : kíríkiri An - see crooked

two Adj : óse An

type N : kind, sort : mará N, qualité** N

type V : (on typewriter) : píka mbɛ́tí V - also means to print

- U -

ugly Adj : nzoní pɛpɛ An, pendere pɛpɛ An - see beautiful, good

ulcer N : ká N - see wound

umbilical cord N : turúngu N - also means navel

uncle N : 1. father's brother : babá N also means father
2. father's older brother : kótá babá N
3. father's younger brother : kété babá N
4. mother's brother : aú N. kóya N - also used in respect in addressing a mature man

under, underneath Adj, Adv : na gbɛ́ tí/ní CP - also mean below

understand V : 1. perceive : báa V, má V - mean to see, to hear
2. know : hínga V
3. thoroughly : hínga li tí V, hínga ndá ní V, má ndá tí/ní V, hínga kóé V
4. discern another's thoughts : hínga bɛ́ tí V

understanding N : ndaráa N - also means skill, ability, cunning, wisdom

unfasten V : lungúla V, zí V - mean also open, untie

unite V : bóngbi V, tíngbi V - see also join, assemble

unmarried girl N : masía N - a girl who has never married, but of marriageable age

untie V : zí V - see also loosen, unfasten

until C : jusqu'à** C - also used as Av meaning for a while

untruth N : venɛ N, wátáká N - see lie

up Adv : na ndúzú CP - see sky

upright Adj : mbírímbírí An - means straight, right, just

urge V : pousser** V, dará V - see push, incite urinate V : 1. sára ínɔ V

2. euphemism : goe (na) ngonda V - also means to defecate

urine N : ínɔ N

us P : see we

use V : sára na V - see make, do, act, prepare

useless, make V : foutu** V, buba V - see spoil

utter V : 1. tɛnɛ V - see say

2. dé V - also means to spit, to vomit

utterance N : tɛ́nɛ́ N - means speech, word, saying, affair, matter

- V -

vacation N : 1. from work : congé** N - see also holiday, celebration
2. from school : vacances** N

vaccinate V : súru (ndó tí) mabɔ́kɔ V - see split, arm, shoulder

vagina N : dondo N

valiant man N : lombé N - see hero

valley N : pópó hɔ́tɔ́ N - see middle, hill

value N : ngéré N - also means cost, price

vanity N : baba N, fandara N - see also pride, conceit, show off

vanquish V : gagner** V - see defeat

various Adj : ndé An - also means different - often reduplicated

vegetable N : (edible leaves) : kugbé kása N - see leaf, sauce

very Adv : míngi An - also means much, many

village N : kɔ́tɔ́rɔ́ N - see community

vine N : kámba N - also means cord, snare

violence N : ngangó An, yí tí ngangó N - see also strong, strength, hard

violent, be V : sára ngangó na V - see do, behave, violence

violet Adj : vɔkɔ́ An - means also black - see color

visit V : (in a foreign place) : goe genɛ V - see go, visitor

visitor N : (esp. one from a foreign place) : genɛ N

voice N : gɔ́ N - also means neck, throat, tune

vomit V : dé V, dé na sése V - also means to spit, to utter

- W -

wages N : fúta N, par jour** N - the latter means esp. a daily rate, as for laborers - see also pay

wage war V : píka berá V - see also fight, war, strike

wait V : kú V - means also to hope, to expect

waken V : zíngo V - means also to arouse, to scold

walk V : 1. general : tambéla V - also means to travel, to run (as machinery)
2. to walk about, to stroll, to wander, to gad about : fɔnɔ V

wall N : tɛ́rɛ́ tí da N - see side, house

wallet N : poche** N - also means pocket, pocketbook

wander V : fɔnɔ V - means also walk about

want V : 1. general : yí V - means also desire, like, love, agree
2. casually, without strong feelings : lé ... yí V - see eye, desire
3. with strong feeling : bɛ́ ... yí V - see liver, love

war N : berá V - also means battle

warehouse N : magasin** N, da tí magasin** N - also means store

warn V : wa V - means also to rebuke, to admonish, to reprove, to scold, to advise, to counsel, to comfort, to console, to encourage

warning N : wángó N - from wa V to warn - also means advice, counsel

wart hog N : cochon** tí gígí N, cochon** tí ngonda N

wash V : 1. sukúla V - also means to clean in general
2. wash up, bathe : sukúla ngú V

washcloth N : (indigenous, made of the rind of a wild plant) : ndakóro N

wasp N : gándá N

waste V : buba V, foutu** V - also mean to spoil, to ruin watch V : 1. general : bata V - means to keep, to protect

2. watch out : sára attention** V

3. imperative I : attention** I

watchman N : sentinelle** N

water N : 1. general : ngú N - also means river, rain, year, or any liquid

2. cold : ngú tí dé N

3. hot : ngú tí wá N

4. boiled or boiling : kpɔ́rɔ́ngó ngú N

waterbuck N : a fairly large antelope : béta N

wave V : (the hand) : pɛ́ V - see beckon, signal

way N : 1. path, road, manner : lége N

2. skill : manière** N - also means cunning, ability, wisdom

we P : 1. general : í P - also means us, our, ours - see I for the pronominal system

2. in Protestant literature : áni P - not standard

3. in Catholic material : *é P - the distinction between *é and í is not standard

weak Adj : ngangó pɛpɛ An - also means easy - see strong, not

wealth N : mɔsɔrɔ N - also means bride-price

wear V : yú V - also means to put on clothes

weary V : 1. in transitive sense : be V - see also to annoy, to overcome

2. in intransitive sense : fatiguer** V

weave V : há V - also means to plait, to braid

week N : semaine** N, dimanche** N - the latter is more common, and also means Sunday

weight N : nɛ́ngó N - from nɛ V to bear down, to be heavy - also means heaviness, thickness

weir N : fish trap : ngɔ́lɔ N

well Adj : séngé An - see without

well Adv : nzoní An, bien** Av - see also good

well N : dú ngú N - see also hole, water

well, well then I : bon** I

wet, be or become V : gá ngú V, ɛkɛ ngú V, mouiller** V - see also be, become, water

what Adj, P : yę An, wa An - used in other interrogative expressions also : how, when, where, why, who

what-you-may-call-him N : (used when groping for a name) : yí só N

wheel N : gɛ́rɛ́ N - also means foot, leg, tire

when C : tongana C - also means if, like

when Adv : lá wa N, lá yę N - used interrogatively - see what

where Adv : (na) ndo wa CP, N - see place, what

while C : tongana C - see also when C

while, (for) a Adv : ngbii Av, jusqu'à** Av - see also for a long time

whip N : chicotte** N - see also switch

whiskers N : 1. moustache : kɔ́á yángá N

2. beard : kɔ́á ngbagba N

white Adj : vurú An - also means clean - see color

white, be or become V : vurú V - also means be clean

white man : mbunzú N

whitewash N : 1. white clay : vurú sése N

2. lime : mbamba N - also means oyster

who, whom P : 1. interrogative : zo wa N - see what

2. " relative" : só An - see this, that

whole Adj : kóé An - also means all

wholly Adv : kóé An - also means entirely, altogether

whose P : 1. interrogative : tí zo wa CP - see who

2. "relative" : só An - see who, this

why Adv : tɛnɛtí yę CP, ngbangatí yę CP - see what, for, in order to

wide Adj : kótá An - also means big, important, thick

wife N : 1. wále N - also means woman, female
    2. co-wife : sambá N

wildcat N : yę̂ç N - also means domestic cat

wild dog N : African hunting dog : sónzó N

wilderness N : ngonda N - also means bush, uncultivated area

wiles N : malin** N, manière** N - also mean skill, cunning, ability

will N : see personality

win V : gagner** V - also means to defeat, to overcome

wind N : pupu N - the verb is ía V to blow

wine N : 1. European grape wine : vin** N
    2. palm wine : kanguya N

wing N : (of bird) : kpangbi N

wipe V : mbo V - means also to erase

wire N : (esp. telephone and telegraph) : senga N

wisdom N : ndaráa N - also means skill, ability, cunning

wish V : yí V - also means want, like, love

witch N : zo tí lukundú N - see spirit of witchcraft

with Prep : na C - also means and, but, to, for, at, in, from, by

withhold V : gbánzi V - also means to hinder, to prevent

with respect to Prep : see concerning

without Prep : séngé An means without something suggested by the context : e.g. naked (without clothes), well (without illness, without trouble), worthless (without value), ordinary (without distinction), free (without cost), pointless (without reason or purpose) woman N : wále N - also means wife, female

wonder V : gí bɛ́ V - see also think, ponder

wood N : kéké N - also means tree, stick, pole

word N : tɛ́nɛ́ N - also means saying, utterance, speech, matter, affair, problem

work N : kɔa N, kusára N - also mean job, task

work V : 1. perform a task : sára kɔa V, sára kusára V
2. as a machine : tambéla V - see also to walk, to run

workman N : laborer : zo tí kusára N, manoeuvre** N

worth N : ngéré N - also means value, cost, price

world N : sése N - also means earth, land, soil

worship V : díkɔ V, sambéla V - mean also to pray - see praise, honor, reverence, plead

worthless Adj : 1. séngé An - see without
2. búbá An - also means foolish, crazy

wound N : a sore : ká N

wound V : 1. general : sára ká V
2. with a weapon as subject : tɛ V - means also to bite, to eat
3. stab : kpɔ V - means to pierce, to puncture
4. cut, kill : fáa V
5. hit, beat, slap : píka V

wounded, be V : ká ... wara V, wara ká V - see get, wound

wow I : 1. usually in an absolute usage : babá N - means father
2. either in absolute usage or introducing exclamatory sentence : mon vieux** I

wreck N : (of a bicycle, automobile, etc.) : kúí N - means dead body, corpse

wrestle V : tiri V - means to fight

wrist N : mabɔ́kɔ N - means also hand, arm

write V : sára mbɛ́tí V - see make, paper

wrong Adj : sioní An, kírikiri An - the first means bad, the latter means crooked, perverse

xylophone N : (indigenous) : ngómbá N

- Y -

yam N : 1. domestic : gúí N
    2. wild : ngasá N

year N : ngú N - also means water, river, rain, rainy season

yeast N : 1. for bread : mamá tí mápa N - see mother, bread
    2. for brewing beer : sái N

yell V : dé kɔ́ngɔ́ V - also means to shout

yellow Adj : 1. deep, intense : bingbá An - also means red - see color
    2. light : bingbá kété An - also means light pink
    3. very light : vurú kété An - also means light gray

yes I : oui** I

yesterday Adv : bírí N

yet Adv : encore** Av - also means still

yield N : léngó N - means also fruit, harvest

you P : 1. singular, thee : mɔ P - see I for the pronominal system
    2. plural : ála P - also means your, yours

young Adj : pendere An - also means beautiful, handsome

young, youth N : 1. of animals : mérɛngɛ́ N - see child
    2. adolescent : pendere An - means young, beautiful
    3. man : pendere kɔ́li N
    4. woman : pendere wále N

your, yours P : see you

youth N : young man : pendere kɔ́li N - see also child